

FIRST YEAR

HEHEIE

LATIN









FIRST YEAR

# LATIN

ROBERT J. HENLE, S.J.

---

LOYOLAPRESS.

CHICAGO

This one

BFPZ-BJE-91 NN



BFPZ-BJE-91 NN

# LOYOLAPRESS.

3441 N. ASHLAND AVENUE  
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60657

© 1958

Copyright 1945

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 58-10998

ISBN-13: 978-0-8294-1026-6

ISBN-10: 0-8294-1026-0

Printed in the United States of America.

09 10 11 12 TS 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13



## PREFACE

The book of exercises and readings here presented under the title FIRST YEAR LATIN is part of a complete and integrated four-year high-school Latin course and is to be used in conjunction with a companion volume, LATIN GRAMMAR, of the same series. In addition, workbooks to accompany FIRST YEAR LATIN and SECOND YEAR LATIN are available.

General intellectual values—not factual nor utilitarian—constitute the ultimate aim of this four-year course. The goals of linguistic training and humanistic insight are to be attained through mastery of the language itself and through the study of selected classics. The dominating objective of FIRST YEAR LATIN is a thorough mastery of forms, basic syntax, and vocabulary, as well as ability to read and translate simple sentences.

A few points of variance with many Latin series now in use might be noted. The author does not accept the principle that mastery should be subordinated to the presentation, especially in first year, of material interesting in itself and possessed of some utilitarian value. For a complete discussion of teaching for mastery the instructor should refer to the manual for the Henle Latin Series (first and second years). Such mastery implies habitual knowledge, lasting abilities, accuracy, sureness, and facility in use.

It is rather common practice in Latin textbooks to set down a limited vocabulary for mastery, but to employ many more words in the reading material. FIRST YEAR LATIN limits its vocabulary for use largely to its vocabulary for mastery, and this vocabulary, incidentally, is drawn largely from the Caesar readings that will be taken in second year.

The formal rather than the functional or direct method is favored in the learning of forms; that is, the paradigms are to be thoroughly memorized and then worked into active mastery by immediate and abundant exercise. The textbook provides gen-

erous exercises for private study and for class work, and the matter of one section is repeated in subsequent sections so that there is constant review. It is the teacher's responsibility to assign exercises that fit the needs of his particular class. Only those exercises marked "Essential" are required of all pupils.

It is common knowledge that first-year classes vary considerably in ability. Sufficient material to challenge the abilities of superior pupils is therefore included. Not every class, however, can be expected to complete the forty-two lessons in FIRST YEAR LATIN. Since this textbook is part of a four-year series, adequate provision has been made for classes that cover fewer lessons.

In all cases it is essential that pupils learn to the point of mastery the matter contained in Units One-Seven, or the first twenty-six lessons, in FIRST YEAR LATIN. The textbook for second year has been so constructed that, in addition to reviewing the essentials of first year, SECOND YEAR LATIN explains both new matter and topics that were introduced in Units Eight-Fourteen of FIRST YEAR LATIN. It is believed that all classes, no matter what their rate of learning may be, will find in this textbook a sufficient amount of matter to challenge their abilities and to prepare them adequately for the second year of Latin.

The LATIN PROGRESS TESTS (for first year and second year) may be used either as workbooks or for testing the mastery of pupils. They are objective, require little time, and are excellent for diagnosis and motivation.

The author gladly acknowledges his obligation to Mr. Henry A. Schaefer for the illustration on page 252; to Acme Newspictures, Incorporated, for the illustrations on pages 172 and 384; to G. Bell and Sons for the illustrations on pages 67 and 89; to The Bettmann Archive for the illustrations on pages 18, 26, 45, 106, 130, 152, 273, 379, 410, and 443; to *Compton's Source Materials* for the illustration on page 186, and to *Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia* for the illustration on page 189; to Ewing Galloway for the illustration on page 3; to International News Photos for the illustration on page 291; to the *Jesuit Bulletin* for the illustration on page 12; to Keystone View Company for

the illustrations on pages 347 and 408; to the *Messenger of the Sacred Heart* for the illustration on page 299; to the *New World* for the facsimile of the signature of Pope Pius XII on page 20; to RKO Radio Pictures, Incorporated, for the illustration on page 110; to Underwood and Underwood for the illustration on page 406.

The improvements made in the 1958 printing of LATIN GRAMMAR, FIRST YEAR LATIN, and SECOND YEAR LATIN will not be found to prevent the use of these books and earlier printings in the same classroom.





# CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1
------------------------	---

---

## UNIT ONE

	INTRODUCTION.....	3
LESSON 1	THE FIRST DECLENSION.....	6
	1 The declension of <i>terra</i> .....	6
	2 Rules for gender.....	9
	3 Use of verbs.....	9
	4 The accusative case.....	13
	5 The genitive case.....	16
LESSON 2	THE SECOND DECLENSION.....	17
	1 The declension of <i>serous</i> .....	17
	2 The declension of <i>bellum</i> .....	20
	3 The indirect object.....	22
	4 Use of prepositions.....	24
	5 The predicate noun.....	27
	6 Use of <i>quod</i> , 'because'.....	31
LESSON 3	THE THIRD DECLENSION.....	35
	1 Gender in the third declension . . . . .	35
	2 Rules for nouns like <i>lex</i> and <i>pars</i> .....	36
	3 The declension of <i>lēx</i> .....	36
	4 Appositives.....	38
	5 The expletive <i>there</i> .....	42
	6 The declension of <i>pars</i> .....	44
	7 Review of nouns like <i>lex</i> and <i>pars</i> .....	47
	8 The declension of <i>flumen</i> .....	51
	9 Review of the third declension.....	53
LESSON 4	THE FOURTH DECLENSION.....	56
	1 The declension of <i>portus</i> .....	56
	2 <i>In</i> with the accusative.....	57
LESSON 5	THE FIFTH DECLENSION.....	62
LESSON 6	NOUNS WITH SPECIAL MEANINGS IN THE PLURAL.....	64
	REVIEW OF UNIT ONE.....	70

## UNIT TWO

### LESSON 7 ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND

DECLENSIONS.....	72
1 The declension of <i>magnus, a, urn</i> .....	*11
2 Agreement of adjectives.....	73
3 Predicate adjectives.....	75
4 Use of <i>pro</i> .....	77

### LESSON 8 ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION ... 82

1 The declension of <i>gravis, e</i> .....	82
2 Adjectives governing cases.....	85
3 The declension of <i>Jesus</i> .....	87

### MASTERY REVIEW VOCABULARY NO. 1 [UNITS ONE AND TWO] . 91

## UNIT THREE

### LESSON 9 THE FIRST CONJUGATION.....99

INTRODUCTION.....	99
1 Principal parts: the first conjugation.....	101
2 Present indicative active of <i>laudd</i> .....	102
3 Agreement of verbs.....	105
4 Imperfect indicative active of <i>laudd</i> .....	108
5 Future indicative active of <i>laudd</i> .....	112
6 Questions.....	114
7 The interrogative particle <i>-ne</i> .....	117

### LESSON 10 THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE

INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF <i>MONEO</i> .....	120
---	-----

### LESSON 11 PERSONAL PRONOUNS..... 125

1 Pronouns of the first person.....	125
2 Pronouns of the second person.....	128
3 Pronouns of the third person.....	132
4 Direct reflexive pronouns.....	135

### LESSON 12 PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE OF THE THIRD

CONJUGATION.....	140
1 Principal parts of the third conjugation.....	140
2 Present indicative active of <i>mitto</i> .....	140
3 Imperfect indicative active of <i>mitto</i> .....	143
4 Future indicative active of <i>mitto</i> .....	145

### LESSON 13 PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE OF THE FOURTH

CONJUGATION.....	147
------------------	-----

LESSON 14 PRESENT SYSTEM INDICATIVE OF <i>SUM</i> . . .	151
1 Present, imperfect, and future indicative of <i>sum</i> . . .	151
2 Compounds of <i>sum</i> .....	153
LESSON 15 THE PERFECT SYSTEM ACTIVE .....	155
1 The perfect active stem.....	155
2 The perfect indicative active.....	155
3 Pluperfect and future perfect indicative active . . . . .	160

## UNIT FOUR

LESSON 16 ADDITIONAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS ...	163
1 Declension of <i>puer</i> , <i>ager</i> , and <i>vir</i> .....	163
2 Declension of <i>miser</i> and <i>integer</i> .....	168
3 Possessive adjectives of the first and second persons . . .	173

## UNIT FIVE

LESSON 17 PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION; AGENCY.....	179
1 Active and passive voice.....	179
2 Final personal signs in the passive.....	180
3 Present system passive of the first conjugation ...	181
4 The ablative of agent.....	185
LESSON 18 PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION; ABLATIVE OF MEANS ....	192
1 Present system passive of the second conjugation . . . . .	192
2 The ablative of means.....	194
LESSON 19 PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.....	197
1 Present system passive of the third conjugation . . . . .	197
2 Ablatives of agency and means compared.....	199
LESSON 20 PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION; ACCOMPANIMENT.....	202
1 Present system passive of the fourth conjugation . . . . .	202
2 Ablative of accompaniment.....	203
LESSON 21 THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.....	208
MASTERY REVIEW VOCABULARY NO. 2 [UNITS THREE, FOUR, AND FIVE].....	217

## UNIT SIX

LESSON 22	THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE; PURPOSE CLAUSES .	225
	INTRODUCTION.....	225
	1 The present subjunctive active.....	225
	2 Mood in purpose clauses.....	226
	3 Primary tenses.....	228
	4 Negative purpose clauses.....	230
LESSON 23	THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE ....	235
	1 Imperfect subjunctive active of the four conjugations .	235
	2 Secondary tenses.....	237
	3 Adjectives used as nouns; imperfect subjunctive of <i>sum</i> .	241
LESSON 24	RELATIVE CLAUSES; THE USE OF <i>AD</i> ....	246
	1 <i>CM, WU, quod</i> .....	246
	2 The use of <i>ad</i> .....	253
	3 Relative clauses of purpose.....	258
	4 Purpose clauses introduced by <i>quod</i> .....	263

## UNIT SEVEN

LESSON 25	DIRECT QUESTIONS.....	267
	INTRODUCTION.....	267
	1 Interrogative adverbs.....	267
	2 Interrogative particles.....	269
	3 The interrogative pronoun.....	271
	4 The interrogative adjective.....	274
LESSON 26	THE PERFECT SYSTEM ACTIVE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.....	280
	1 Perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active.....	280
	2 Indirect questions; primary sequence.....	281
	3 Secondary sequence.....	286

## UNIT EIGHT

LESSON 27	THE VOCATIVE; IMPERATIVE MOOD.....	293
	1 The vocative.....	293
	2 Present imperative active.....	296
	3 The subjunctive in wishes and exhortations ....	300
LESSON 28	<i>SUUS</i> AND <i>SUI</i> .....	305
	1 <i>Suus</i> and <i>sui</i> as direct reflexives.....	305
	2 <i>Suus</i> and <i>sui</i> as indirect reflexives.....	309

LESSON 29 THE PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.....	314
1 Present and imperfect subjunctive passive . . . . .	314
2 The perfect system of the passive subjunctive . . . . .	317
3 The ablative of cause.....	319

## UNIT NINE

LESSON 30 THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.....	325
LESSON 31 <i>HIC, HAEC, HOC</i> .....	331
1 The declension of <i>hie, hate, hoc</i> .....	331
2 Uses of <i>hie, haec, hoc</i> .....	332
LESSON 32 THE PREPOSITIONS <i>EX (E), " AB (A),</i> <i>AND DE</i> .....	336
LESSON 33 <i>ILLE AND IS</i> .....	341
LESSON 34 ABLATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS.....	345
1 The ablative of separation.....	345
2 Review of ablative constructions.....	347

## UNIT TEN

LESSON 35 <i>POSSUM</i> ; THE INFINITIVE IN NOUN CONSTRUCTIONS.....	351
1 Indicative of <i>possum</i> .....	351
2 The infinitive as subject, predicate noun, and object . . . . .	352
3 Subjunctive of <i>possum</i> .....	360
4 The infinitive with subject accusative.....	363
LESSON 36 NUMERALS; IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES ....	370
1 Numerals.....	370
2 Adjectives with irregular endings in the genitive and dative singular.....	374

## UNIT ELEVEN

LESSON 37- <i>IO</i> VERBS; RULES FOR TIME.....	381
1 Indicative active of <i>-id</i> verbs.....	381
2 Time when.....	386
3 Subjunctive active of <i>-id</i> verbs.....	389
4 Extent of time and space.....	393
5 Indicative passive of <i>-w</i> verbs.....	398
6 Time within which.....	401
7 Subjunctive passive of <i>-id</i> verbs.....	403

LESSON 38 DATIVE VERBS; THE PASSIVE OF VERBS OF CALLING.....	407
---	-----

## UNIT TWELVE

LESSON 39 THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE ...	412
1 Perfect and future infinitives active.....	412
2 Accusative with the infinitive after verbs of <i>saying, think- ing, seeing, and the like</i> .....	414
3 Accusative with the infinitive after verbs of <i>saying, think- ing, seeing, and the like (continued)</i> .....	420
4 Passive infinitives.....	428

## UNIT THIRTEEN

LESSON 40 THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.....	434
1 Regular comparison of adjectives.....	434
2 Declension of comparative and superlative adjectives .	435
3 The ablative of comparison.....	439
4 Irregular comparatives and superlatives.....	440
LESSON 41 DEPONENT VERBS.....	445
1 Indicative of deponent verbs.....	445
2 Subjunctive of deponent verbs.....	448
3 Perfect participle of deponent verbs.....	450
4 Infinitives of deponent verbs.....	453

## UNIT FOURTEEN

LESSON 42 THE IRREGULAR VERB <i>EO</i> .....	457
1 Indicative of <i>ed</i> .....	457
2 Subjunctive of <i>ed</i> .....	460
3 Infinitives of <i>ed</i> .....	464
MASTERY REVIEW VOCABULARY NO. 3[UNITS SIX-FOURTEEN].	473
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	489
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.....	499
INDEX.....	511

## INTRODUCTION

### *To the Student*

You are now beginning the study of Latin and you will continue it for two or more years. You want to make a success of it just as you do when you take up golf or bridge or build an airplane or work on a job. If you make a success of it, you will come to like Latin and to enjoy reading the great books written in that language. Besides, Latin will give you many things. It will teach you how to work intelligently and systematically; it will teach you what language—man's most wonderful and useful invention—is; it will teach you to speak and write better. You will develop habits of concentration and correct thinking and many other habits which you will be able to appreciate only after you have acquired them.

You have perhaps heard that Latin is hard. We have tried to apply in this book the old Roman principle of war: *Divide et impera*—"Divide and conquer." We have presented Latin in a series of easy steps. If you study each step day by day, Latin will become easier and you will get to like it. But you **MUST** study right from the beginning. Your knowledge of Latin is just like a building. If you don't put down the foundation strongly and firmly, it will be very hard to keep the third story where it belongs.

Your success in Latin will depend on three things: (1) You must study each day's lesson carefully right from the start. (2) You must learn to review for yourself so you won't forget what you have already learned. A good method is to write out a series of questions on each lesson and go over these each night at home before beginning your new lesson. Don't just *look* at the answers or *read* them. Make yourself *recite* the answers and then check them in the book. Gradually, you will have so much to review that you won't be able to go over it all each day. Then do it by turns, one section today and another tomorrow. But whenever

you find you cannot answer one of your questions, mark it down and review it specially every day for a week or so. If you do this regularly, you will soon find that Latin gets easier, and when you come to the examination, you won't have a lot to learn and you won't have to worry a bit. You will find hints on studying vocabulary on page 8 of this book. (3) You must do the exercises carefully. Don't try to get help on an exercise until you are really stuck. **YOU LEARN BY WORKING OUT THE EXERCISES FOR YOURSELF**, just as you learn to swim by blundering about in the water, not by watching someone else set a world's record in the pool. **THE MORE EXERCISES YOU DO, THE MORE QUICKLY YOU WILL MASTER LATIN, AND THE EASIER IT WILL BE LATER ON.** If you really want to learn, you will read and translate more Latin than your teacher assigns.

When your exercises are corrected, be sure to **UNDERSTAND** the corrections. Always try to learn **WHY** a thing is right or wrong. This is the way to develop your mind and to get a firm grasp on what you are learning. In class, too, be sure to understand explanations; when you don't understand, ask questions.

When you study at home, go some place where you will not be disturbed by other people or distracted by the radio. You simply waste time by studying without paying close attention to what you are doing. You will learn **MORE** in **LESS** time if you really concentrate on your work. You have an exercise to do. When you sit down to do it, **DO IT**. Don't fiddle with your papers, don't look out the window. That exercise is a job to be done and you are the one to do it—**NOW**. In this way you will learn how to concentrate, and the power of concentration is **VITAL** to any success. Great lawyers, doctors, engineers, and all successful men need and have the power to concentrate.



# UNIT ONE

## INTRODUCTION

To the right is a picture of a Roman soldier.

1. *He* is stationed in Gaul.<sup>1</sup>
2. *His* commander in chief is Caesar.
3. Caesar once praised *him* for his bravery in fighting against the Gauls.

If you look over these sentences, you will notice that the italicized words all MEAN the Roman soldier. However, they are all spelled in different ways—*he*, *his*, *him*. Why is this? Because in each sentence they have a DIFFERENT WORK to do, and the spelling is changed to show what work the words do.

In the first sentence *he* is the SUBJECT, the person about whom we are speaking. *He* is in the nominative case and has the spelling which is the sign of the SUBJECT.

In the second sentence *his* modifies *commander in chief* and tells us to whom the commander in chief belongs. *His* thus answers the question: Whose? We call this form, *his*, the possessive case because it expresses the possessor, the person to whom something belongs (e. g., *his* book, *his* house, *his* soul).

In the third sentence *him* is the object of the verb *praised*;



---

<sup>1</sup> Gaul was the ancient Roman name for that part of Europe which includes France, Belgium, Switzerland, and Germany west of the Rhine. See map, page 30. Northern Italy between the Alps and the river Po was called "Hither Gaul." Julius Caesar, the great Roman general (100-44 B.C.), brought most of Gaul under Roman control during the Gallic War (58-51 B.C.).

the action is done to *him*. This is the objective case, the case of the object.

If we were teaching a foreigner English and wanted to give him help in selecting the correct form of *he* for each sentence, we might line up all the different forms like this:

CASE	FORM	USE
Nominative	he	as subject
Possessive	his	to express the possessor
Objective	him	as object

This is called the DECLENSION of *he*. We have DECLINED the word *he*; that is, we have given in a simple, orderly way all its different spellings and uses.

Examine the declension of *he*. You will notice that one part of the word is the same in all forms: A-. This is called the STEM, the part which, in declension, REMAINS THE SAME. The last part of the word changes: -e, -w, 4m \ these letters are called the ENDINGS. They show what case the word is and what work it does in the sentence, whether it expresses the subject, the possessor, or the object.

If we were talking about TWO OR MORE soldiers, we would have to say *they, their, them*. This would be the PLURAL, which shows that the word means MORE THAN ONE. (When the word means a SINGLE ONE, it is SINGULAR. Thus *he* is singular.)

Our complete declension, in singular and plural, would look like this:

	CASE	FORM	USE
<b>Singular</b>	{ Nominative	h-e	as subject
	{ Possessive	h-is	to express the possessor
	{ Objective	h-im	as object
<b>Plural</b>	{ Nominative	th-ey	as subject
	{ Possessive	th-eir	to express the possessor
	{ Objective	th-em	as object

Our friend the foreigner would now have a guide to help him

choose the right word for any sentence. He would avoid saying such silly things as "Him is stationed in Gaul."

In English our nouns change very little in declension. We have only three cases, and even in these three our nouns have only slight changes in spelling. Not all nouns have the same endings. Some, like *son*, *dog*, *star*, form their plural by adding *-s*: *sons*, *dogs*, *stars*; some add *-es*: *negroes*, *glasses*, *boxes*; others make no change at all, like *sheep*, *deer*, *trout*. This would be very confusing to our foreigner. We could group all English nouns in classes for him with a model for each class; thus:

		FIRST DECLENSION	SECOND DECLENSION
5.	{ Nominative	son	negro
	{ Possessive	son-'s	negro-'s
	{ Objective	son	negro
P.	{ Nominative	son-s	negro-es
	{ Possessive	son-s'	negro-es'
	{ Objective	son-s	negro-es

We could then tell him that all words like *son* form their cases with the endings of *son*; and so for the other groups.

Now this is just what is done in Latin, to make it easier for us foreigners to learn. All Latin nouns are divided into five main groups called declensions, and in these groups we have a model which shows us the proper endings to use. All we have to find out about a new noun is this: What declension does it belong to? This we can tell from the Latin case called the GENITIVE. The GENITIVE SINGULAR always tells to what declension a noun belongs. And therefore always be sure to learn the genitive singular.

## LESSON 1: THE FIRST DECLENSION

### 1. THE DECLENSION OF *TERRA*

Open your GRAMMAR to No. 31. Here you see the declension of *TERRA*. *Terra* is a model for all Latin nouns that belong to the first declension. Look at the GENITIVE SINGULAR. It ends in -ae.

**ALL NOUNS WHOSE GENITIVE ENDS IN -AE ARE  
IN THE FIRST DECLENSION.**

The STEM of any noun is found by dropping the ending of the Genitive Singular. Thus, genitive: *TERR-AE*; STEM: *TERR-*.

A noun of the first declension is then declined by adding to the STEM the ENDINGS shown for *TERRA*.

You notice that the first five forms are all singular; the rest are plural—look at the MEANINGS.

There are five cases in each number. Study the MEANINGS given for the cases; the USES we shall study very gradually so they will not be too hard for you.

ASSIGNMENT: Memorize the declension of *terra* (GRAMMAR, No. 31).

Before you begin to study the vocabulary on page 7 your teacher will explain the rules for quantity and accent given in the GRAMMAR, Nos. 9-13. Learn these rules and see whether you can tell where the accent belongs in each of the words in the vocabulary.

Whenever nouns are given in vocabularies, both the nominative and genitive are printed. Be sure to learn the GENITIVE, because it tells you to what declension the noun belongs. Can you tell why all the words in the list are like *terra*?

## VOCABULARY

<b>terra, terrae</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{earth} \\ \text{land} \end{array} \right.$
<b>porta, portae</b>	<i>gate</i>
<b>Maria, Mariae</b>	<i>Mary</i>
<b>nauta, nautae</b>	<i>sailor</i>
<b>victōria, victōriae</b>	<i>victory</i>
<b>silva, silvae</b>	<i>forest</i>
<b>glōria, glōriae</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fame} \\ \text{glory} \end{array} \right.$

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The following phrases contain English words related to some of the Latin words in the vocabulary: a *nautical* dictionary; a *sylvan* scene; the *portals* of the palace; rough *terrain*. Can you tell to which words they are related ?



PORTA

## HOW TO MAKE VOCABULARY STUDY EASY

1. Read the words after your teacher, being very careful to pronounce them just as your teacher does.

2. Look carefully at the genitive and the meanings; study them for a few minutes.

3. Place a piece of paper over the English and try to recite the English meanings. Don't look until you have really tried to remember them! Then do the same with the Latin. **BE SURE TO LEARN EVERYTHING THAT IS GIVEN IN THE VOCABULARY.**

4. Repeat this several times before class.

5. Every day review some vocabulary before starting on your new lesson. If you learn each vocabulary very carefully and keep reviewing it, Latin will be easy. You will have *VICTORIA* over Latin and will gain the *GLORIA* which belongs to a good student.

### EXERCISE 1

Decline the words in the vocabulary. Remember they are all like *TERRA*. Therefore:

1. Find the STEM by dropping the -ae of the genitive singular, thus: *glōri*-ae; stem: *glōri*-;

2. Add the ENDINGS of *terra*, thus: *glōri*-a, *glōri*-ae, *glōri*-ae, etc.

### EXERCISE 2

[Essential]

*Tell what cases these forms are and give the meanings:*

- |              |               |              |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. terram    | 8. nautarum   | 15. porta    |
| 2. silvas    | 9. terrae     | 16. silvis   |
| 3. portarum  | 10. victoria  | 17. victoria |
| 4. gloriam   | 11. nautae    | 18. terra    |
| 5. portas    | 12. victoriam | 19. portis   |
| 6. silvam    | 13. gloriae   | 20. nautis   |
| 7. victoriae | 14. Mariae    | 21. porta    |

22. Maria	26. Mariam	30. silvā
23. terrarum	27. silvae	31. silvarum
24. terrā	28. terris	32. nauta
25. silva	29. glōria	33. portae

## EXERCISE 3

1. How can you tell the difference between the nominative and ablative singular of the first declension?
2. How can you find the stem of a Latin noun?
3. How can you tell to what declension a noun belongs?

## 2. RULES FOR GENDER

In English gender is very simple. Nouns naming men or male animals are MASCULINE, as *John, man, sailor* (sailors are usually men), *bull, lion*. Nouns naming women and female animals are FEMININE, as *Mary, woman, waitress, cow, lioness*. Nouns naming things are NEUTER, as *book, lake, beauty, soul*.

BUT IN LATIN nouns naming things are sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine, sometimes neuter. Thus, *terra, ae*, is FEMININE although *land* is a THING and is NEUTER in English.

ASSIGNMENT: Learn the rules for the gender of nouns in the first declension, GRAMMAR, NOS. 32 and 33.

## EXERCISE 4

Explain the gender of the words in the vocabulary on page 7.

## 3. USE OF VERBS

In Latin the pronouns (*I, we, you, he, she, it, they*), when used as subjects of a verb, are not ordinarily expressed separately. THEY ARE CONTAINED IN THE ENDING OF THE VERB. Thus: *drat* means *he, she, or it prays*. *He, she, or it* is contained in the ending -at. *Orant* means *they pray*. *They* is contained in the ending -ant. The ending -at contains THREE

English pronouns. How can you tell which one to use ? When we have been talking about a woman, and then say *drat*, translate *she prays*. If we have been talking about a man, then *ōrat* means *he prays*.



MARIA ORAT.

Use *he*, *she*, or *it* according to the person or thing of which the sentence speaks. (When you can't tell to whom the sentence refers, use *he*.)

**Ōrat.** *He prays.*

**Ōrant.** *They pray.*

**Mariam vident. Ōrat.**

*They see Mary. She is praying.*

When a NOUN is used as the subject, the pronoun is NOT translated in English.

**Nautae drant.** *The sailors pray.*

**Maria ōrat.** *Mary prays.*

Notice that in these sentences the subjects, *nautae* and *Maria*, are in the NOMINATIVE case.

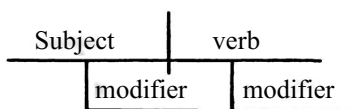
**RULE: THE SUBJECT OF A FINITE VERB IS IN THE NOMINATIVE CASE.**

Notice that when the subject is singular—*Maria*—the singular (*he*, *she*, *it*) form of the verb, *drat*, is used; when the subject is plural—*nautae*—the plural (*they*) form of the verb, *drant*, is used.

**RULE: A FINITE VERB AGREES WITH ITS SUBJECT IN NUMBER (AND PERSON).**

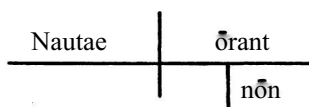


## HOW TO DIAGRAM A LATIN SENTENCE

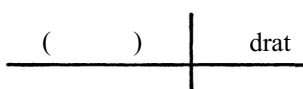


Note that the subject and verb are separated by a straight line carried below the horizontal line. Thus:

Nautae nōn drant.



Ōrat (*subject not expressed*).



## VOCABULARY

<b>drat</b>	<i>he, she, it prays</i>
<b>drant</b>	<i>they pray</i>
<b>videt</b>	<i>he, she, it sees</i>
<b>vident</b>	<i>they see</i>
<b>nōn, adverb</b>	<i>not</i>

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

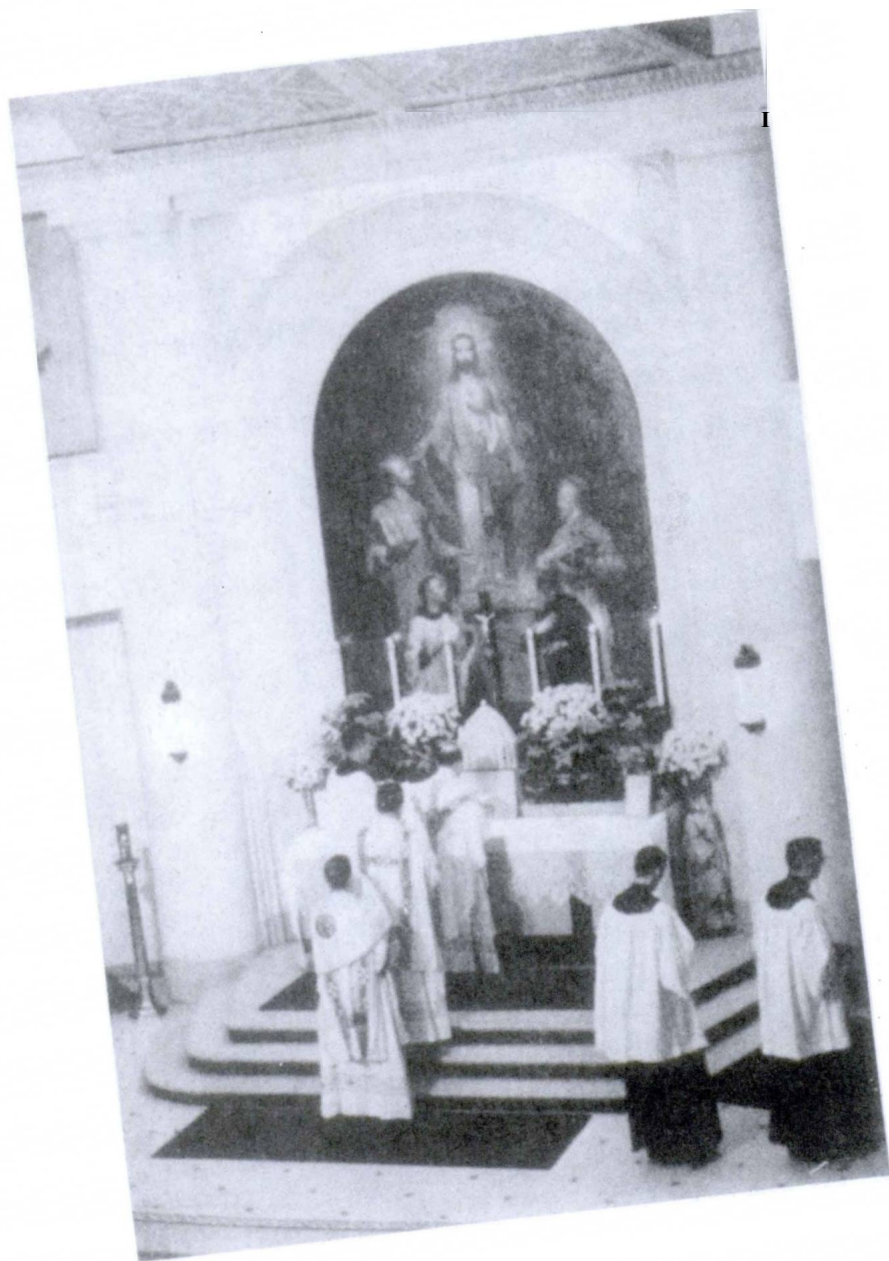
A nowstop flight. The priest then read the *orations*.

## EXERCISE 5

[Essential]

1. Say in English;
2. Diagram Sentences 1, 4, and 10:

1. Maria <sup>drat</sup>orat. 2. Nautae <sup>drant</sup>orant. 3. Nauta drat. 4. Nautae nōn <sup>drant</sup>orant. (*Note. When the sentence contains not we use the helping verb do in English. Thus: The sailors do not pray.*)  
 5. Vident. 6. Nauta videt. 7. Maria videt. 8. Videt. 9. Nautae nōn vident. 10. Non <sup>drat</sup>orat.



## READING NO. 1

## LATIN STILL LIVES!

## THE LANGUAGE OF PRAYER

As the light of the sun moves westward it falls upon chapels and cathedrals, hospitals and camps, where in endless repetition the Sacrifice of the Mass is being offered to God. At every moment, somewhere in the world, a priest stands at the foot of an altar and says, in Latin, "Introlbo ad altare Del," "I shall go in to the altar of God." Latin is the prayerful voice of the Roman Rite, of tens of millions of Catholics. In the universal offering of the Mass, the prophecy of the Old Testament is fulfilled: "From the rising of the sun to the going down thereof, my name is great among the gentiles."

## THE LANGUAGE OF PAPAL TEACHING

When a priest in Chungking receives an official document from Rome, he finds it is written in Latin. From Rome Latin carries the decisions and instructions of the Pope to the whole world, to the bishops of Brazil, to Chicago and South Africa, to Zanzibar and England. Latin, as the official language of the head of Christendom, is today a living and universal force.

## 4. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

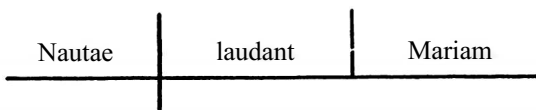
*The sailors praise Mary.*

Nautae Mariam laudant.

In this sentence *Mary* is the DIRECT OBJECT of the verb *praise*. In English *Mary* is in the OBJECTIVE CASE. In Latin the objective case is called the ACCUSATIVE CASE.

<p><b>RULE: THE DIRECT OBJECT OF A TRANSITIVE VERB IS IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.</b></p>
---

## HOW TO DIAGRAM A SENTENCE CONTAINING A DIRECT OBJECT



Note that the verb and the direct object are separated by a straight line that is *not* carried below the horizontal line.

We can tell the direct object in the model sentence by the ACCUSATIVE ENDING -AM. The verb usually, as in the model on page 13, is put LAST in the sentence.

**RULE: THE VERB USUALLY STANDS LAST IN THE SENTENCE.**

### VOCABULARY

<b>laudat</b>	<i>he, she, it praises</i>
<b>laudant</b>	<i>they praise</i>
<b>prōvincia, ae</b>	<i>Province</i>

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*A laudatory speech; a provincial dialect.*

### EXERCISE 6

1. *Say in English;*
2. *Diagram Sentences 1, 3, 6, and 9:*

1. Nautae terram laudant. 2. Nautae provinciā vident.
3. Maria silvas laudat. 4. Nauta silvas videt. 5. Nauta portam videt. 6. Provinciā nōn laudant. 7. Nautae Mariam laudant. 8. Victoriā laudant. 9. Nautae gloriā laudant. 10. Mariam laudat. 11. Provinciā videt.

Note the position of nōn, an adverb modifying the verb laudant, in Exercise 6, Sentence 6.

**RULE: ADVERBS USUALLY STAND IMMEDIATELY  
BEFORE THE WORD THEY MODIFY.**

**EXERCISE 7**

[Essential]

*Say in Latin:*

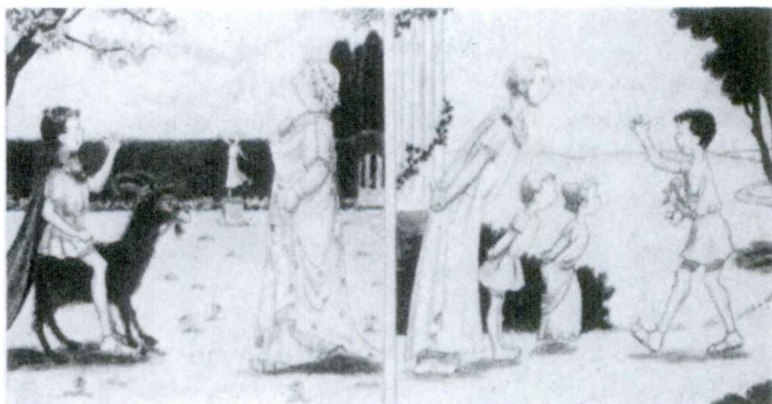
1. They praise Mary. 2. The sailors see the province. 3. The sailors praise glory. 4. He sees the gate. 5. The sailor does not praise the province. 6. They praise the forest. 7. He sees the sailors. 8. She praises the victory. 9. They see the gate. 10. Mary does not praise the sailors. 11. The sailors see land.

**TALKING LATIN NO. 1**

When a Roman met *one* person and wished to say "Hello," he said "Salve!"

When he met *two or more* persons, he said "Salvete!"

Say "Salvē!" to your teacher tomorrow. That will show him you can *talk Latin already*.



**SALVE**

**SALVETE**

## 5. THE GENITIVE CASE

*Mary's glory, glōria Mariae*

*The glory of the province, glōria provinciae*

*The sailors' victory, victōria nautarum*

In these phrases the Latin genitive (underlined) translates the English possessive and the English ^/-phrases.

**RULE: THE POSSESSIVE CASE AND MANY ENGLISH OF-PHRASES ARE TRANSLATED BY THE GENITIVE.**

### EXERCISE 8

[Essential]

*Say in English:*

- |                      |                  |                      |
|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. glōria provinciāe | 3. glōria Mariae | 6. victōria nautarum |
| 2. victōria nautae   | 4. glōria nautae | 7. porta provinciāe  |
| 5. silva provinciāe  |                  |                      |

### EXERCISE 9

*Say in Latin:*

- |                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. the sailor's victory     | 4. Mary's fame                |
| 2. Mary's victory           | 5. the sailors' victory       |
| 3. the gate of the province | 6. the forest of the province |

## LESSON 2: THE SECOND DECLENSION

We are now ready to study the second group of Latin nouns—the SECOND DECLENSION. If you look at the vocabulary below, you will see that the nouns all have -I in the genitive.

**ALL NOUNS WHOSE GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDS  
IN -I BELONG TO THE SECOND DECLENSION.**

HOWEVER, SOME NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION HAVE -US IN THE NOMINATIVE, SOME HAVE -UM. Those nouns of the second declension whose nominative ends in -us are declined like servus, servi and are generally MASCULINE. Those whose nominative ends in -um are declined like bellum, belli and are always NEUTER.

ASSIGNMENT: Learn the rules for gender in the GRAMMAR, Nos. 35 and 38.

### 1. THE DECLENSION OF *SERVUS*

#### VOCABULARY

<b>servus, servi</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{slave} \\ \text{servant} \end{array} \right.$
<b>filius, filii</b>	<i>son</i>
<b>Deus, Dei</b>	<i>God</i>
<b>amicus, amici</b>	<i>friend</i>
<b>Christus, Christi</b>	<i>Christ</i>
<b>Christianus, Christiani</b>	<i>Christian</i>
<b>et, conjunction</b>	<i>and</i>

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *servile* spirit; *amicable* relations; with *filial* affection.



SERVI

ASSIGNMENT: Memorize the declension of *servus*, GRAMMAR, No. 34.

#### EXERCISE 10

Decline all the nouns in the vocabulary (but decline *Deus* only in the singular). Remember:

1. Find the stem by dropping the ending of the genitive singular, -i;
2. Add the endings of *serv-us*, *serv-i*, etc.

#### EXERCISE 11

1. *Tell what forms these are;*
2. *Give the English meaning:*

1. *Deus*
2. *servōs*

3. *filiis*
4. *Christum*

5. *amicus*
6. *Deum*



- |               |              |                   |
|---------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 7. amicis     | 15. filium   | 23. Christianōrum |
| 8. servus     | 16. amici    | 24. filiōs        |
| 9. Christian! | 17. servō    | 25. Christus      |
| 10. amicōs    | 18. filius   | 26. servum        |
| 11. servōrum  | 19. Deō      | 27. Dei           |
| 12. amicum    | 20. servis   | 28. Christo       |
| 13. filiō     | 21. amicōrum | 29. amico         |
| 14. servi     | 22. filii    | 30. filiōrum      |

## EXERCISE 12

*Translate:*

- |                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. glōria Del     | 6. glōria Mariae          |
| 2. amicus servi   | 7. victōria Christianōrum |
| 3. amicus Dei     | 8. servus Dei             |
| 4. victōria Dei   | 9. amicus Christi         |
| 5. glōria Christi | 10. Filius Dei            |

## EXERCISE 13

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Diagram Sentences 2, 3, and 10:*

1. Christian! drant.
2. Amici Dei Christianōs laudant.
3. Christian! Filium Dei laudant.
4. Christian! Mariam laudant.
5. Nautae servos non vident.
6. Servi Christianōs laudant.
7. Christian! servos Dei laudant.
8. Glōriam Dei vident.
9. ChFistiāni Christum laudant.
10. Maria et Christus amicos Dei laudant.
11. Deus terram et silvas videt. Nautas et servos et Christianos videt.
12. Christian! Filium Mariae laudant.

## EXERCISE 14

[Essential]

*Translate into Latin :*

1. Christians praise the Son of Mary. 2. Mary sees the Son of God. 3. Christians praise the victory of Christ. 4. Mary praises God. 5. God praises the glory of Christ. 6. Christ praises the friends of Mary. 7. The servants of Mary praise Christ. 8. The friends of God praise Mary. 9. The sailors do not praise the victory of the slaves. 10. Mary sees the glory of God and the victory of Christ. 11. God sees the earth; He sees the forests.

SERVUS SERVŌRUM DEI<sup>1</sup>

*Pius pp. XII*

2. THE DECLENSION OF *BELLUM*

*bellum, belli, war*

This word has -i in the genitive. Therefore it is in the second declension. But its nominative ends in -um.

**ALL WORDS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION  
WHOSE NOMINATIVE ENDS IN -UM ARE NEUTER  
AND ARE DECLINED LIKE *BELLUM*.**

ASSIGNMENT: Learn the declension of *bellum*, GRAMMAR, No. 37. Note that it is like *servus* except in three cases.

<sup>1</sup> Popes end their letters thus because Christ said: "Whoever wishes to be first among you shall be your slave" (Matthew 20:27).

**HINT: IN ALL NEUTER NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES  
THE ACCUSATIVE IS ALWAYS LIKE  
THE NOMINATIVE.**

## VOCABULARY

<b>bellum, belli</b>	war
<b>caelum, caeli<sup>1</sup></b>	{ sky heaven
<b>rēgnum, rēgni</b>	{ kingdom royal power
<b>praemium, praemil</b>	reward
<b>periculum, pericull</b>	danger
<b>imperium, imperil</b>	{ command power empire

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *belligerent* nation. An *interregnum*. A *premium* was offered.  
His *Imperial* Majesty.

## EXERCISE 15

2. Tell what forms these are;
2. Translate:

- |                |                         |             |                        |
|----------------|-------------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| 1. caeld       | 4. imperio <sup>m</sup> | 7. praemiis | 10. bella              |
| 2. periculdrum | 5. bellis               | 8. rēgni    | 11. rēgno <sup>m</sup> |
| 3. periculis   | 6. periculi             | 9. imperium | 12. praemia            |

## EXERCISE 16

*Translate:*

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. rēgnum Christi     | 5. porta Caeli      |
| 2. periculum servorū  | 6. praemium Mariae  |
| 3. imperium Dei       | 7. periculum amici  |
| 4. praemia Christiani | 8. victōria Christi |

---

<sup>1</sup> When *Caelum* is used to mean the Christian heaven the *c* will be capitalized.

## EXERCISE 17

[Essential]

*Translate; underline the direct objects:*

1. Amici Dēi rēgnum Christi laudant. 2. Maria praeium et victōriam Christi videt. 3. Nautae caelum et terram vident.
4. Deus pericula Christianōrū videt. 5. Deus bella non laudat.
6. Servi Christi imperium Christi laudant. 7. Maria glōriam rēgni Christi videt. 8. Filius Dei praemia Mariae laudat.
9. Nautae pericula belli non laudant.

## EXERCISE 18

## REVIEW

1. Explain the gender of: (a) nauta, (b) porta, (c) rēgnum, (d) Christus, (e) Maria, (f) praeium.
2. Mark the accents on the words in Number 1 and give the rule for each.
3. What is the position of adverbs in Latin? Of verbs?
4. How can you tell the difference between the nominative and ablative singular in the first declension?

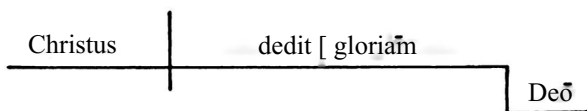
## 3. THE INDIRECT OBJECT

Christus gloriām Deo dedit.*Christ gave glory to God.**Christ gave God glory.*

In these sentences *to God* and *God* are INDIRECT OBJECTS. (*Glory* is the DIRECT object.) The indirect object expresses the person (less frequently the thing) TO OR FOR WHOM something is said, told, given, entrusted, etc.

**RULE: THE INDIRECT OBJECT IS PUT IN THE  
DATIVE CASE.**

## HOW TO DIAGRAM SENTENCES CONTAINING AN INDIRECT OBJECT



### VOCABULARY

<b>dedit</b>	<i>he, she, it gave</i>
<b>dederunt</b>	<i>they gave</i>
<b>gladius, i</b>	<i>sword</i>
<b>sed, conjunction</b>	<i>but</i>

### RELATED ENGLISH WORD

The *gladiator* fought bravely.

### EXERCISE 19

[Essential]

1. Translate;
2. Diagram Sentences 3, 5, and 9:

*Warning.* One Latin sentence has no indirect object. Can you find that sentence?

1. Christus Deo gloriam dedit.
2. Servis gladios non dederunt sed nautis gladios dederunt.
3. Nautae amicis victoriam dederunt.
4. Deus amicis Mariae praemia dedit.
5. Deus Filio regnum dedit.
6. Christian! gloriam Mariae et Filio Mariae dederunt.
7. Deus Christo terram dedit.
8. Nautae gloriam belli laudant sed pericula belli non laudant.
9. Provinciam amico dedit.
10. Deus gloriam et victoriam Christianis dedit.
11. Amico gladium dedit.

### EXERCISE 20

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. God gave a kingdom to Christ.
2. He gave a sword to the friend but not to the slave.
3. The Christians gave glory to God.

4. They did not give the province to the slaves. 5. The Son of God gave heaven to the Christians. 6. Sailors do not praise the dangers of war but they praise victory and the rewards of war. 7. God gave a kingdom and an empire to Christ. 8. The sailors see the sky.

## EXERCISE 21

## REVIEW

*Complete these sentences and translate:*

1. Christiani..... drat. 2. Christiani of..... 3. Maria De..... vid..... 4. Nautae terr..... vid..... 5. Servus Christi Cael..... laud..... 6. Amici Dei Christ..... laud..... 7. Christus De..... vid..... 8. De..... terras vid..... 9. Filius Dei Deum laud..... 10. Maria glōri..... Deo dedit. 11. Servus gladi..... non dedit. 12. Christiani regn..... et imperi..... Christi laudant.

## 4. USE OF PREPOSITIONS

*Cum amicō, with a friend*

Cum is a preposition. It governs the word amicō. (With what? With a friend.) Amico is in the ablative case.

**IN LATIN SOME PREPOSITIONS ARE FOLLOWED  
BY THE ABLATIVE CASE, SOME BY  
THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.**

*Post bellum, after the war*

Bellum is in the ACCUSATIVE case because the preposition post takes the accusative.

*In provinciā, in the province*

Provincia is in the ABLATIVE case because the preposition in, meaning *in* or *on*, takes the ablative case.

## VOCABULARY

oppidum, I	town
Gallia, ae	Gaul
Gallus, i	a Gaul
Rōmānus, i	a Roman
Rōma, ae	Rome
propter, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	on account of
cum, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	with
post, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	(after
	I behind
in, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	{ in
	I on

## NOTE

The abbreviations used are: *prep.*, preposition, *w.*, with. In vocabulary study always learn WHAT CASE A PREPOSITION GOVERNS.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The French are famous for their *Gallic* wit. In the *post-bellum* years.

## EXERCISE 22

[Essential]

1. Translate;

2. Explain the cases of the nouns:

- |                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. in oppidd               | 11. propter victoriā        |
| 2. in silvā                | 12. in portis Rōmāe         |
| 3. cum Gallo               | 13. cum Deo                 |
| 4. cum Marla               | 14. propter praemia Gallorū |
| 5. propter gloriā Rōmāe    | 15. in caelo                |
| 6. post victoriā           | 16. post victoriā Rōmānōrū  |
| 7. in silvis Galliae       | 17. cum amicis              |
| 8. cum nauta               | 18. in silvis               |
| 9. propter pericula oppidi | 19. in portis oppidi        |
| 10. in terra               | 20. cum Rōmānis             |

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 21. in Gallia             | 31. propter periculum    |
| 22. propter gloriam belli | 32. in silvis et oppidis |
| 23. in provinciis         | 33. post periculum       |
| 24. in provincia          | 34. cum Christo          |
| 25. cum servo             | 35. in bello             |
| 26. post bellum           | 36. cum Christianis      |
| 27. cum Romano            | 37. cum Gallis           |
| 28. in regno              | 38. propter bellum       |
| 29. in oppidis            | 39. post oppidum         |
| 30. cum filiis            | 40. in porta             |

**EXERCISE 23**

[Essential]

*Translate:*

- |                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. with Mary     | 4. on account of the war |
| 2. after the war | 5. in the town           |
| 3. with God      | 6. after the danger      |



ROMA



- |                                    |                         |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 7. on account of the reward        | 16. in the forests      |
| 8. with the Son of God             | 17. on land             |
| 9. on account of the Christians    | 18. in the provinces    |
| 10. in heaven                      | 19. with the slave      |
| 11. on account of the kingdom      | 20. in danger           |
| 12. with friends                   | 21. on account of power |
| 13. in Gaul                        | 22. with a Gaul         |
| 14. with the Romans                | 23. behind the town     |
| 15. with the sailors               | 24. on earth            |
| 25. on account of the fame of Rome |                         |

## 5. THE PREDICATE NOUN

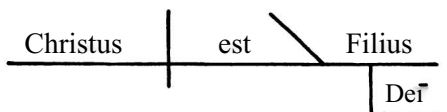
### **Christus est Filius Dei**

*Christ is the Son of God.*

We have seen that transitive verbs take an object in the ACCUSATIVE CASE. In this sentence, however, we have a different kind of verb: *est*, *is*. The verb *to be* (of which *is* is a form) is called a LINKING verb because it *LINKS* two words together. IT DOES NOT TAKE AN ACCUSATIVE OBJECT. A noun linked to the subject is in the NOMINATIVE case. Such a noun is called the PREDICATE NOUN. *Filius* is a predicate noun in this sentence and is therefore in the NOMINATIVE case.

**RULE: AFTER A LINKING VERB THE PREDICATE  
NOUN IS PUT IN THE SAME CASE  
AS THE SUBJECT.**

### HOW TO DIAGRAM A SENTENCE CONTAINING A PREDICATE NOUN



**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the following forms of the verb *I AM* and their meanings:

<b>sum</b>	<i>I am</i>	<b>sumus</b>	<i>we are</i>
<b>es</b>	<i>you (singular) are</i>	<b>estis</b>	<i>you (plural) are</i>
<b>est</b>	<i>he, she, it is</i>	<b>sunt</b>	<i>they are</i>

**FORMS OF THE VERB *SUM* MAY STAND ANYWHERE IN THE SENTENCE.**

**EXERCISE 24**

[Essential]

1. *Translate:*
2. *Diagram Sentences 2, 4, and 7:*

*Warning.* Some of the sentences in this exercise have no predicate noun.

1. "Estis filii Dei" (Words of Christ to His disciples).
2. Christus est Filius Mariae. 3. Christiani! sunt servi Dei.
4. Caelum est praemium Christianorum. 5. Maria est in Caelo cum Deo. 6. Bellum in provincia est. 7. Sumus filii Dei.
8. Amicus Dei es. 9. Galli sunt in Gallia, sed Romani non sunt in Gallia. 10. Galli sunt in oppidis et in silvis. 11. Romani gladios Gallis non dederunt. 12. Silvae in Gallia sunt. 13. Roma non est in Gallia. 14. Propter bellum Galli non sunt amici Romanorum. 15. Gladii sunt in oppido. 16. Nautae estis.
17. Nautae in silvis non sunt. 18. Cum amico in provincia sum.
19. Silvae sunt post oppidum. 20. Nautae sunt Christiani!. 21. In oppido sumus. 22. Romanus servo praemium dedit. 23. Sunt Dei amici. 24. Christianus es sed servus Romani es. 25. In Caelo non estis.

## EXERCISE 25

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Christ is the Son of God. 2. Sailors see the sky but not the land. 3. Christians are servants of Christ. 4. We are friends of God. 5. Mary is with Christ in heaven. 6. The slaves are in the towns and in the forest. 7. Christians praise God on account of the glory of Christ. 8. The Gauls are in Gaul. 9. You are the sons of God. 10. You are a servant of Christ. 11. I am on the earth. 12. Heaven is the reward of the servants of Christ. 13. After the war—the rewards of victory! 14. Romans are in the provinces. 15. Mary is the “Gate of Heaven.” 16. The servants are in the towns. 17. You are not in Gaul.

## TALKING LATIN NO. 2

When a Roman thought something was pretty good (excellent, ‘swell’) he said, “Optimē!” or “Optimum est.” But when something was pretty bad, he remarked in disgust, “Pessimē” or “Pessimum est.” So when your teacher groans “Pessimē!” after your recitation DON’T SMILE HAPPILY.





6. USE OF *QUOD*, 'BECAUSE'

*I am a servant of Christ because Christ is God.*

Servus Christi sum quod Christus Deus est.

*Quod*, *because*, is a conjunction which joins a subordinate clause to a main clause. In this sentence *I am a servant of Christ* is the main clause; *because Christ is God* is a subordinate clause.

## VOCABULARY

*quod*, conj. *because*

*itaque*, conj.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{therefore} \\ \text{and so} \end{array} \right.$

*incolunt* *they inhabit*

*vidētis* *you (plural) see*

*vicērunt* *they conquered*

## NOTE

*Quod* and *itaque* NEVER change their spelling. *Itaque* is used at the beginning of a sentence as an introductory adverb.

## EXERCISE 26

[Essential]

## WHAT YOU SEE ON THE MAP

In *tabulā*<sup>1</sup> *vidētis Rōmam et imperium Rōmānorum. Rōmāni Rōmam incolunt. Prōvinciaſ imperii Rōmānōrum vidētis. Galliam vidētis. Rōmāni Gallōs in bellis vicērunt. Gladii nōn sunt in oppidis Galldrum quod Galli post bellum gladiōs Rōmānis dedērunt. Itaque post victoriāſ Rōmānōrum prōvincia in Galliā est. Prōvinciam Galli et Rōmāni incolunt. Pericula sunt in silvis Galliae, quod Galli nōn sunt amici Rōmānōrum. Galli sunt servi Rōmānōrum, quod Rōmāni Gallōs vicērunt. Itaque Galli imperium Rōmānōrum nōn laudant, sed Rōmāni propter glōriam belli imperium laudant.*

<sup>1</sup> *tabula*, ae: *map*.



## EXERCISE 27

[Essential]

Vidētis Christiānōs. Videſis Mariam et Christum et Deum. Christiān! in terra sunt, sed Christus et Maria in Caeld cum Deō sunt. Pericula Christiānōrū in terra sunt, sed praemia sunt in Caeld. Itaque Christiāni in terrā drant. Maria cum Christiānis drat quod Christiāni filii Mariae sunt. Christiāni Mariam laudant quod Christus est filius Mariae. Christum laudant quod filius Dei est.

## READING NO. 2

## LATIN, THE LANGUAGE OF ROME AND OF THE WORLD

We have seen that Latin is still widely in use in the Catholic Church. But who first spoke Latin and how did it become so important? Latin was the language of the people living in the region called Latium in ancient Italy. (See map, page 166.) Here was the city of Rome. There were dozens of other dialects spoken in Italy, but the language of Rome alone was destined to reach out into the world. For the Romans gradually conquered their neighbors; the soldiers from Rome marched to the southern shores as conquerors; their tread was heard in the Alps and in the African deserts. Gaul (the ancient name of France), Spain, northern Africa, the Mediterranean world—all were bound into one great empire under Rome.

So, just as Spanish and Portuguese have become the languages of South America because Spain and Portugal conquered and colonized there, Latin became the tongue of Gaul, Spain, northern Africa, and of Roman cities throughout the Empire. Even after the fall of the Roman Empire, Latin continued to be spoken in Europe. Throughout the Middle Ages it was the universal language of learning and science. Spanish, French, and Italian are all just modern editions of Latin and still show a close similarity to the ancient mother tongue. This is why one who knows Latin finds it easy to learn these modern languages.

For example, from the word **VICTŌRIA**, which you have had, the modern languages (even ones not derived from Latin) have the following derivatives or cognates P

ENGLISH	<b>Victory</b>	United States, Canada, Great Britain, Ireland, South Africa, New Zealand, Australia
SPANISH	<b>Victoria</b>	Spain, Mexico, Central America, South America
PORTUGUESE	<b>Vitória</b>	Portugal, Brazil
FRENCH	<b>Victoire</b>	France, Belgium, Switzerland, French Canada
ITALIAN	<b>Vittoria</b>	Italy
RUMANIAN	<b>Victorie</b>	Rumania
DUTCH	<b>Victorie</b>	Holland
POLISH	<b>Wiktorya</b>	Poland

Read through the places listed here. Roman words—words that were heard thousands of years ago only in that small region called Latium—are now heard in all these places. Latin, the language of the Romans, has conquered far wider reaches of the world than Rome's generals ever dreamed of.

---

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted with permission from a chart prepared by B. L. Ullman for the American Classical League.



## LESSON 3: THE THIRD DECLENSION

Here are some words which belong to the third declension:

NOMINATIVE	GENITIVE	MEANING
<b>lēx</b>	<b>lēgis</b>	<b>law</b>
<b>homō</b>	<b>hominis</b>	<b>man</b>
<b>vērītās</b>	<b>vērītātis</b>	<b>truth</b>
<b>imperātor</b>	<b>im perātoris</b>	<b>commander</b>

What do you notice about the endings of the nominative? Unlike the first and second declensions, the third declension has NO REGULAR ENDING in the nominative singular. How then will you be able to tell when a word belongs to this declension? (Give the general rule!)

**ALL NOUNS WHOSE GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDS  
IN -IS BELONG TO THE THIRD DECLENSION.**

The STEM is found by dropping the -is of the genitive singular. Thus, genitive: *lēgis*, stem: *leg-*.

### 1. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

Nouns in the third declension may be masculine, feminine, or neuter. We shall study the masculine and feminine nouns first. You can tell whether a noun is masculine or feminine from the rules given in the GRAMMAR, NOS. 46-52.<sup>1</sup> Read these rules carefully and see whether you can determine the gender of the nouns in the vocabularies on pages 39 and 42. Now memorize the rules.

#### EXERCISE 28

Without looking in the GRAMMAR determine the gender for the nouns listed on pages 36, 44, and 51. Give the proper rules.

---

<sup>1</sup> There are many exceptions, to be marked *m.*, *f.*, or *n.*, in the vocabularies.

2. RULES FOR NOUNS LIKE *LĒX* AND *PARS*

Look at Nos. 57 and 58 in the GRAMMAR. YOU will notice that two models are given for the masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension. They have exactly the same endings except in the nominative singular and in the GENITIVE PLURAL.

All masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension are declined like *lĒx* EXCEPT THOSE in the GRAMMAR, NOS. 59-63. All masculine and feminine nouns covered by these rules are declined like *pars*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the rules for nouns declined like *pars*, GRAMMAR, NOS. 59-63.

## EXERCISE 29

Which words on pages 44 and 47 are like *lex*? Like *pars*?

3. THE DECLENSION OF *LEX*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Memorize the declension of *lĒx*, GRAMMAR, No. 57.

## VOCABULARY

(All the words in this vocabulary are like *lex*)

<i>lĒx, lĒgis</i>	<i>law</i>
<i>rĒx, rĒgis</i>	<i>king</i>
<i>dux, ducis</i>	<i>leader</i>
<i>lŭx, lŭcis</i>	<i>light</i>
<i>homō, hominis</i>	<i>man</i>
<i>imperātor, imperātdris</i>	{ <i>commander in chief</i> <i>general</i>
<i>vĕritās, vĕritatis</i>	<i>truth</i>

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *Duke* of York; a *regal* manner; the eternal *verities*; *Lucifer*; a *legal* dispute.

## EXERCISE 30

1. Give the gender and the proper gender rules for each word in the vocabulary.

2. Decline each word in the vocabulary (but decline **vērītās** and **lūx** only in the singular). Follow these rules: (a) Find the declension from the genitive, (b) Find the stem by dropping the genitive ending, (c) Find the proper model (**lēx** or **pars**), (d) Add the endings as in the model.

3. Give the genitive plural of: (a) **lēx**, (b) **dux**, (c) **rēx**, (d) **homo**, (e) **imperator**. Why are all these nouns like **lex**?

## EXERCISE 31

1. *Tell what forms these are;*
2. *Translate:*

- |                       |                        |                      |
|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <b>lēgibus</b>     | 8. <b>homō</b>         | 15. <b>lūcem</b>     |
| 2. <b>rēgum</b>       | 9. <b>imperatorum</b>  | 16. <b>hominibus</b> |
| 3. <b>imperatorum</b> | 10. <b>ducibus</b>     | 17. <b>duce</b>      |
| 4. <b>ducum</b>       | 11. <b>hominum</b>     | 18. <b>vērītate</b>  |
| 5. <b>lūce</b>        | 12. <b>vērītatem</b>   | 19. <b>homine</b>    |
| 6. <b>ducēs</b>       | 13. <b>rēgem</b>       | 20. <b>rēgibus</b>   |
| 7. <b>vērītati</b>    | 14. <b>imperatorem</b> | 21. <b>lēg!</b>      |

## EXERCISE 32

*Translate:*

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <b>lūx vērītatis</b> | 5. <b>rēx Christiāndrum</b> |
| 2. <b>rēx rēgum</b>     | 6. <b>propter legem Dei</b> |
| 3. <b>rēx hominum</b>   | 7. <b>cum rēge</b>          |
| 4. <b>lēx Dei</b>       | 8. <b>propter vērītatem</b> |

## EXERCISE 33

*Translate:*

- |                       |                                    |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. behind the king    | 4. for the commander in chief      |
| 2. for men            | 5. on account of the law of Christ |
| 3. the light of truth | 6. with the leader of the Gauls    |

## EXERCISE 34

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Underline the direct objects:*

1. Christus est Rex Rēgum. 2. Homines lucē vident.  
 3. Nautae sunt homines. (Why is homines nominative?)  
 4. Christiān! vērītātem Christi laudant. 5. Luḡ in silvis nōn est. 6. Rōmāni lēgem et vērītātem Christi nōn laudant. 7. Imperātōrēs Rōmāndrum Galloš vicērunt. 8. Galldrum duceš lēgem et imperium Rōmāndrum nōn laudant. 9. Christus est Rēx hominum quod Deus est. 10. Dux Rōmāndrum in Galliā est quod bellum est in Galliā. (Explain the use of quod.) 11. Rōmāni imperātōri et ducibus praemia dedērunt quod Gallōs vicērunt. (Explain the case of ducibus.) 12. Rōmāni duceš et rēgēs Gallōrum vicērunt.

## EXERCISE 35

*Translate:*

1. The commander in chief does not praise the leaders of the Gauls. 2. Christ is the Light of Men because He gave men truth. 3. The Gauls do not praise the laws of the Romans. 4. Christ is the King of Kings. 5. The leaders of the Romans are in Gaul. And so the kings of the Gauls are servants of the Romans. 6. The general sees the dangers of the war.

## 4. APPOSITIVES

*Christ, the Son of God, is the King of Kings.***Christus, Filius Dei, est Rex Rēgum.***Christians praise Christ, the Son of God.***Christiān! Christum, Filium Dei, laudant.**

In these sentences the word *Son* is a noun which is used to explain the word *Christ*. Such a noun is said to be in **APPOSITION** to the noun it explains and is called an **APPOSITIVE**.

*Son* is in apposition to *Christ* and is an appositive. *Filius* is in apposition to *Christus* and is an appositive. An appositive is frequently set off by commas. Note that *Christus* is in the nominative case because it is the subject of the sentence and that **FILIUS** IS IN THE SAME CASE; that *Christus* is singular and **FILIUS** IS IN THE SAME NUMBER. In the same manner, explain the case and number of *Filius* in the second sentence above. How do you explain the case of *imperator*? (See illustration.)



CAESAR, IMPERATOR  
ROMANORUM

**RULE: AN APPOSITIVE AGREES WITH ITS NOUN  
IN NUMBER AND CASE.**

### VOCABULARY

Caesar, Caesaris	Caesar
salūs, salutis	{ safety welfare salvation
vōx, vōcis	{ voice cry
audīvit	he, she, it heard

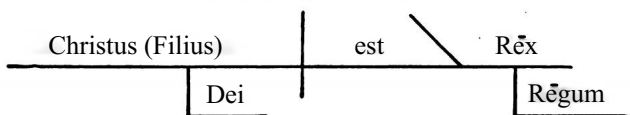
### NOTE

What is the gender of *Caesar*, *vox*, and *salus*? Why? Why is *vōx* like *lēx*?

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Salutary* advice; *vocal* lessons; the *Kaiser*.

### HOW TO DIAGRAM A SENTENCE CONTAINING AN APPOSITIVE



#### EXERCISE 36

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Diagram Sentences 2, 3, and 7:*

1. Galli Caesari, imperātōri Rōmānōrum, praemia nōn dēerunt. 2. Servus vōcem Caesaris imperātōris audivit. 3. Deus, Rēx Caeli et terrae, salūtem hominibus dedit. 4. Caesar, dux Rōmānōrum, vōcēs Gallōrum in silvis audivit. 5. Propter salūtem hominum Christus est homō. 6. Christus, Filius Dei, est Filius Mariae. 7. Galli, servi Rōmānōrum, Rōmānōs nōn laudant. 8. Christianī! Christum, Filium Mariae, laudant.

**Sānctus Jōānnēs,<sup>1</sup> Christi servus,  
vōcem Christi audivit:  
"Ego<sup>2</sup> sum Via<sup>3</sup> et Veritas<sup>4</sup> et Vita."<sup>4</sup>**

#### EXERCISE 37

*Complete and translate:*

1. Christus, Rehominum, in Caelo est. 2. Salus hominum in Christo, Fili Dei, est. 3. Caesar, imperat Rōmānōrum, in Gallia est. 4. Vox Christi, Fili Dei, est vōx Dei. 5. Romāni Caesarem imperatlaudant.

<sup>1</sup> Sānctus Jōānnēs: *Saint John*; i.e., St. John the Evangelist, one of the twelve Apostles, the author of the Fourth Gospel. The sentence quoted was spoken by Christ at the Last Supper the night before He died.

<sup>2</sup> Ego: *I*.

<sup>3</sup> Via, ae: *the Way*.

\*Vita, ae: *the Life*.

## EXERCISE 38

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Christ, the Son of God, is man on account of the salvation of men. 2. He heard the voice of Christ, the son of Mary. 3. Christ, the Son of God, is the King of Kings. 4. God gave a kingdom to Christ, the friend of men. 5. Christians praise Christ, the King and friend of men. 6. Caesar, the general of the Romans, heard the cries of the Gauls. 7. On account of the safety of the province Caesar, the commander in chief, is in Gaul.

## EXERCISE 39

*Name in Latin the objects pictured here:*

## EXERCISE 40

2. Tell what forms these are;

2. Translate:

- |                |              |            |            |
|----------------|--------------|------------|------------|
| 1. imperātorum | 5. rēgum     | 9. hominum | 13. filiis |
| 2. Rōmāndrum   | 6. rēgnum    | 10. duel   | 14. bellis |
| 3. amicum      | 7. vērītatem | 11. amici  | 15. lūcis  |
| 4. periculum   | 8. Christum  | 12. homini | 16. lēgis  |

5. THE EXPLETIVE *THERE**There are dangers in Gaul.**There is a king in Gaul.*

In these sentences *there* is an expletive. It merely introduces the sentence. The real subjects are *dangers* and *king*.

Do not confuse the EXPLETIVE *there* with the ADVERB *there*, as in the sentence,<sup>11</sup> "Were you *there*?" In this sentence *there* is an adverb meaning *in that place*.

The expletive *there* is NOT TRANSLATED in Latin. *There* is and *there are* are expressed in Latin by **EST** or **SUNT**. *There* is not translated. Thus:

**Sunt pericula in Gallia.****Est rex in Gallia.**

## VOCABULARY

virtūs, virtutis	{ courage virtue
miles, militis	soldier
pāx, pācis	peace
via, ae	{ road way
populus, i	{ people nation
mūniverunt	{ they fortified they constructed (w. viam or viās)



## NOTE

1. To what declensions do the nouns in the vocabulary belong? What gender are they? Why?

2. **Mūniverunt** means *they constructed* ONLY when it has **viam** or **viaſ** for its object. Otherwise it means *they fortified*.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Military* measures. *Pacific* intentions. *Popular* government. He came *via* the Panama Canal.

## PROVERB

VŌX POPULI, VŌX DEI<sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE 41

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Sunt pericula in silvis Galliae. 2. Nōn est pāx in Galliā quod Caesar cum militibus in Galliā est. 3. Sunt viae in prōvincia. 4. Populus ducem militum propter virtutem laudat. 5. Rōmāni viaſ in provincia mūniverunt. 6. Est pax in Caēd. 7. Sunt Christiāni in Caēlo. 8. In pāce et in bello Christiāni ōrant. 9. Sunt militeſ in viā. 10. Caesar militibus praemia virtutis dedit quod Gallōs vicērunt. 11. Ducēs Gallōrum oppida mūniverunt.

## EXERCISE 42

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. There are roads in Gaul. 2. There is a war in the province. 3. There are soldiers in the forest. 4. The Romans constructed roads. 5. There is not peace in Gaul because Caesar and the soldiers are in Gaul. 6. On account of the courage of the soldiers

---

<sup>1</sup> In proverbs forms of the verb *to be* (est, sunt, etc.) are frequently omitted. They should be supplied in the translation.

there is peace in the province. 7. They fortified the towns on account of the people's danger. 8. Christ is the Way and the Truth. 9. They praise the virtue of the nation.

### TALKING LATIN NO. 3

When the Romans answered a question, they either repeated the sentence (with or without *nōn*) or used single words like our *yes* and *no*: *ita*, *thus*, *so*, *certē*, *certainly*, *minime*, *least of all*, *by no means*. Your classroom conversation can be made very interesting by the use of these words. For example:

TIME: TODAY

TEACHER. "Did you do your homework?"

You (*brightly*). "Ita!"

TEACHER. "Is it all correct?"

You (*still brightly*). "Certē!"

TIME: TOMORROW

You. "Did you correct our homework?"

TEACHER (*not too brightly*). "Ita."

You. "Was mine correct?"

TEACHER (*grimly*). "MINIME!"

## 6. THE DECLENSION OF *PARS*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review the rules in GRAMMAR, NOS. 59-63. Learn the declension of *pars*, No. 58. Note that it is like *lĕx* except in the nominative singular and the GENITIVE PLURAL.

### VOCABULARY

<b>pars, partis</b>	<i>part</i>
<b>collis, collis, m.</b>	<i>hill</i>
<b>hostis, hostis</b>	<i>enemy</i> (in war)
<b>gēns, gentis</b>	<i>tribe</i>
<b>caedēs, caedis</b>	<i>slaughter</i>

## NOTE

The plural of *hostis* is often used to translate the English singular *enemy*. *Collis* is an exception to the rules for gender; notice that it is masculine.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *gentiles* ; *hostile* actions.

## EXERCISE 43

1. Give the gender and the gender rule for each word in the vocabulary.
2. Give the genitive plural of each word in the vocabulary.
3. Decline (a) *pars*, (b) *hostis*, (c) *gens*.

PAX CHRĪSTĪ IN REĠNO CHRĪSTI

(Motto of Pope Pius XI)

## EXERCISE 44

1. Tell what forms the nouns are;
2. Translate:

1. *pars hostium*
2. *propter caedem gentium*
3. *cum hostibus*
4. *in colle*
5. *post caedem Gallorū*
6. *in oppidis hostium*
7. *in collibus*
8. *rēx gentium*
9. *post collem*
10. *gentibus*
11. *post caedem hostium*



HOSTES ROMANORUM

## EXERCISE 45

*Translate:*

1. on account of the welfare of the tribes
2. part of the leaders and soldiers
3. with the general of the enemy
4. on account of the slaughter of the men
5. on the hill
6. with the enemy
7. in the way
8. the leaders of the tribes

## EXERCISE 46

[Essential]

1. *Translate:*2. *Diagram Sentences 1, 2, 7, and 9:*

1. Dūces Rōmānōrum hostēs in colle vicerunt. 2. Propter caedem militum bellum in Galliā est. 3. Sunt pericula in Galliā quod Galli hostēs Rōmānōrum sunt. 4. Christus est rex populōrum et salūs hominum quod Deus est. 5. Pars hostium in silvis est, sed pars est in colle. 6. In Galliā sunt colicēs et silvae et oppida et viae. 7. Rōmāni rēgēs et gentēs Galliae vicerunt. 8. Propter salutem populi et pacem provinciārum Rōmāni viās mūniverunt. 9. Homines virtutem et veritatem laudant. 10. Post caedem hostium Caesar milites propter virtutem laudat.

## EXERCISE 47

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Part of the enemy is in the towns, but part is on the hill.
2. On account of the slaughter of the leaders of the tribe, the Gauls do not praise Caesar.
3. Christ is the King of tribes and nations.
4. There are hills behind the town.
5. After a victory there is a slaughter of part of the leaders of the tribe.
6. Part of the enemy is in the hills and forests.

## EXERCISE 48

## REVIEW

1. How can you tell the difference between the nominative singular and the ablative singular of the first declension?

2. Give the gender and the proper gender rule for:

nauta	lēx	Christus
praemium	homo	veritas

3. Translate, and give the rule for the case of the italicized words :

Christus, *Filius* Dei, gloriā et *praemium amicis* Dei dedit.

7. REVIEW OF NOUNS LIKE *LEX* AND *PARS*

Review GRAMMAR, NOS. 45-63. Review vocabulary, page 36.

## VOCABULARY

<b>frāter, frātris (fratrum)</b>	<i>brother</i>
<b>pater, patris (patrum)</b>	<i>father</i>
<b>māter, mātris (matrum)</b>	<i>mother</i>
<b>mōns, montis, m.</b>	<i>mountain</i>
<b>clāmor, clāmōris</b>	<b>J</b> <i>shouting</i> <b>[shout]</b>
<b>princeps, principis</b>	<b>J</b> <i>chief</i> <i>[leading man]</i>
<b>occidērunt</b>	<i>they killed</i>

## NOTE

1. The genitive plural of *pater*, *māter*, *frāter* is put in parentheses to remind you that these words are exceptions to the rule for -ium words.

2. Notice that *monē* is an exception to the gender rules.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Paternal* care; the crown *prince*; *maternal* affection; *clamorous* demands; *fraternal* love.

## EXERCISE 49

1. Give the rules for gender for masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension. Give the gender of the third declension nouns in the vocabulary.

2. When are masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension declined like *lex*? Like *pars*?

## EXERCISE 50

*Identify these forms:*

- |            |            |              |
|------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. oppidum | 4. amicorū | 7. principum |
| 2. montium | 5. militum | 8. gentium   |
| 3. nautarū | 6. matrū   | 9. clamdrum  |

## EXERCISE 51

[Essential]

*Z. Tell what case these nouns are;*

2. *Translate;*

3. *Give their nominative and genitive singular and their gender;*

4. *Give the genitive plural of all italicized words:*

- |                                       |                              |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. propter virtutē militum            | 8. in <i>colie</i>           |
| 2. <i>pāx</i> populdrum et gentium    | 9. in <i>montibus</i>        |
| 3. propter clamorē hostium            | 10. post <i>ducem</i>        |
| 4. post caedem patrum et matrū        | 11. cum <i>rēge</i>          |
| 5. propter lucē et veritatē Christi   | 12. <i>vōcēs</i> hominum     |
| 6. cum <i>imp er āt ōre</i> Rōmāndrum | 13. cum <i>parte</i> militum |
| 7. propter salutē fratrum             | 14. cum Caesare              |

## NOTE ON READING LATIN

When you read a Latin sentence you have to puzzle out the meaning. Perhaps you look for the subject and the verb and translate them into English and so gradually find out what the Latin means. But a Roman boy or girl did not have to do this; they could UNDERSTAND the Latin words at once and IN

THE ORDER in which they were spoken or written. They read Latin just as you read English.

Now you can learn to read Latin that way too. It may take you a long time, but if you start now in the right way you will eventually be able to read Latin WITHOUT EVER THINKING OF ENGLISH WORDS. But it takes a lot of the right kind of practice. A football coach makes a boy hold a ball in a certain way, throw it in a certain way—over and over again—until the boy learns how to do it naturally, quickly, and correctly. So you too must practice the right way of reading Latin.

Now here is the way to practice reading Latin.

1. First read each Latin sentence slowly and thoughtfully, trying to understand it. At first you won't understand a thing. But do this each time anyway.

2. Then work out in translation all the words and phrases you didn't understand. At first you will have to work out the whole sentence.

3. Then REREAD the sentence several times, trying to put the MEANING into the Latin and to understand the Latin without thinking of English words. Do this over and over again until you UNDERSTAND the Latin in the Latin order. It will help to read the sentence aloud and to put as much meaning into your voice as possible. (Be sure to pronounce the words correctly I)

If you do this regularly NOW, Latin later on will be much easier and you will have the satisfaction of reading it quickly and easily. Try out this method on Exercise 52.

#### EXERCISE 52

##### 1. **Fratres Estis**

Christus est rēx hominum sed est frāter hominum, et Deus est rēx hominum sed est pater hominum. Itaque hominēs sunt frātrēs. Itaque bellum est caedēs frātrum. Itaque Deus et Christus bellum nōn laudant.

2. **Caedes Galldrum**

Rōmāni partem principum Galldrum occiderunt. Itaque Deus clāmōrem mātrum et patrum et frātrum in silvis et montibus Galliae audivit.

3. **In Gallia**

In Galliā sunt silvae et montēs et collēs. Sunt oppida in collibus, sed pars gentium Galldrum montes et silvas incōlunt.

4. **Christus, Dux Hominum**

Christus est dux hominum quod vēritatē et lēgem et lūcem hominibus dedit. Christus est "Via" et "Veritas."

5. **"Our Tainted Nature's Solitary Boast"—Wordsworth**

Maria est Māter Christi. Sed Christus est Deus quod Filius Dei Patris est. Itaque Maria est Mater Dei. Mariam, Mātrē Dei, Christiān! laudant. Maria est māter hominum quod Christus in cruce<sup>1</sup> Mariam hominibus dedit. Itaque Christiāni sunt filii et servi Mariae. Maria est Porta Caeli.

<b>MILES CHRISTI SUM</b> (Motto of the Archbishop of Indianapolis)
---

**EXERCISE 53**

[Essential]

1. He heard the shouting of the leading men.
2. They killed the chiefs of the tribe.
3. There are dangers in the mountains.
4. The general praises the mothers and fathers of the soldiers.
5. The brothers are with Caesar in Gaul.
6. They fortified the hills on account of the war.
7. The Romans constructed roads in the mountains.

---

<sup>1</sup> in cruce: *on the cross.*



8. THE DECLENSION OF *FLUMĒN*

## VOCABULARY

<b>flūmen, flūminis</b>	<i>river</i>
<b>iter, itineris, n.</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{journey} \\ \text{march} \\ \text{route} \end{array} \right.$
<b>corpus, corporis, n.</b>	<i>body</i>
<b>vulnus, vulneris, n.</b>	<i>wound</i>
<b>agmen, agminis</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{column (of soldiers)} \\ \text{army (on the march)} \end{array} \right.$
<b>nōmen, nōminis</b>	<i>name</i>

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Corporal* needs. An *itinerant* salesman. We *nominated* him for president.

To what declension do all the words in the vocabulary belong? To determine their genders study the rules, GRAMMAR, NOS. 51-52.

Without looking in the GRAMMAR see whether you can work out the declension of *flumēn* from the following hints:

1. *Flūmen* is declined exactly like *lēx* except in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural.

2. In all neuter nouns the accusative is always like the nominative.

3. The nominative singular of *flūmen* you know from the vocabulary. The nominative plural is *flumīn-a*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Now compare your declension with the one in GRAMMAR, NO. 64. Learn the declension of *flūmen* and decline the words in the vocabulary.

## EXERCISE 54

1. *Tell what forms these are;*
2. *Translate:*

- |                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>flūmina</i>    | 3. <i>propter nōmen</i>    |
| 2. <i>in itinere</i> | 4. <i>in nōmine Patris</i> |

- |                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 5. propter nōmen Christi | 12. agmina          |
| 6. nōminum               | 13. in nōmine Dei   |
| 7. nōmen patris          | 14. vulnera militis |
| 8. nōmine                | 15. vulneribus      |
| 9. flūminibus            | 16. iter hostium    |
| 10. in flūmine           | 17. vulnerum        |
| 11. in agmine            | 18. corporibus      |

**EXERCISE 55***Translate:*

- |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. in the river             | 8. on the march              |
| 2. on account of the wounds | 9. after the journey         |
| 3. on the journey           | 10. the name of the river    |
| 4. in the column            | 11. on account of the law    |
| 5. in the name of Mary      | 12. with the generals        |
| 6. in the body              | 13. the safety of the tribes |
| 7. with the army            | 14. on the mountain          |

**EXERCISE 56**

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Propter vulnera miles in agmine nōn est. 2. Imperātor vulnera militum videt. 3. Sunt corpora in flūmine. 4. In Galliā sunt flūmina et silvae. 5. Rōmāni in itinere sunt. 6. Sunt hostēs in silvis et in montibus. Itaque in periculō sumus. 7. Caesar agmen hostium videt. 8. Christian! nomēn Māriæ laudant. 9. Agmen hostium in flumine est. 10. Rōmāni Christiānōs occiderunt quod Christian! nomēn Christi laudant.

**EXERCISE 57**

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. There are bodies and swords in the river. 2. The column is in the mountains. 3. Christians pray in the name of Christ, the Son

of God. 4. There are brothers and fathers in the army. 5. There are dangers on the journey because the enemy is in the hills.

6. After the march they fortified the hill. 7. The route is in the mountains. 8. The sailors see the land and the sky. 9. The king prays on account of the welfare of the kingdom.

## 9. REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review GRAMMAR, NOS. 45-64. Review vocabularies on pages 36, 39, 42, 44, 47, and 51.

### VOCABULARY

<b>mundus, i</b>	<i>world</i>
<b>erat</b>	<i>he, she, it was</i>
<b>erant</b>	<i>they were</i>

### NOTE

Erat and erant (like est and sunt) sometimes mean *there was* and *there were*.

### RELATED ENGLISH WORD

*Mundane* affairs.

### EXERCISE 58

1. Give the genitive and gender and the gender rule;
2. Give the accusative singular;
3. Give the nominative plural;
4. Give the genitive plural:

nōmen	miles	virtūs	vōx
rēx	caedēs	iter	frāter
vērītās	pater	princeps	corpus
māter	flūmen	pars	imperātor
mōns	clāmor	hostis	pāx
agmen	lūx	salūs	vulnus
dux	homō	collis	gēns

## EXERCISE 59

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. "Esis lux mundi" (Words of Christ to His disciples).
2. Propter salutem hominum Christus erat in mundd. 3. Christus lucem et legem et salutem et veritatem hominibus dedit.
4. Caesar, imperator Romanorum, cum militibus in Gallia erat.
5. Christus est salus mundi. 6. Servi nomen regis laudant.
7. Agmen hostium in montibus erat. 8. Propter caedem principum non erat pax. 9. Propter vulnera milites in itinere non erant. 10. Deus, pater hominum, virtutem laudat sed bella et caedem non laudat. 11. Dux voces servorum et clamorem militum audivit. 12. Post bellum corpora erant in collibus et in fluminibus, et imperator clamorem matrum audivit. 13. Christiani! fratres Christi et milites Christi sunt. 14. Romani partem principum Gallorum occiderunt. 15. Gentes et populi Galliae imperium Romanorum non laudant.

## EXERCISE 60

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. In the name of the king. 2. On account of the salvation of men. 3. On the journey. 4. In the mountains and the hills.
5. With the leading men of the tribes. 6. They see the light of the world. 7. After the slaughter of the leaders. 8. There were bodies in the road. 9. On account of the courage of the soldier.
10. He praises the virtues of Christians. 11. In peace and in war. 12. He heard the voice of the general. 13. They killed part of the enemy. 14. They praise the laws of the tribe.
15. Caesar gave rewards to the soldiers. 16. On account of the wounds of the chiefs. 17. The commander in chief heard the shouts of the fathers. 18. The column was in the river. 19. The mothers see the army. 20. On account of the welfare of the nation. 21. He heard the cries of the brothers. 22. God gave

truth to men. 23. On account of the safety of the column.  
 24. On the march. 25. There was a route in the mountains.  
 26. Caesar did not give swords to the chief. 27. The Gauls gave  
 the commander in chief a reward.

## EXERCISE 61

*Write a Latin sentence for each of these pictures:*

**(Compare the Latin sentence beneath the picture on page 10.)**



## LESSON 4: THE FOURTH DECLENSION

### 1. THE DECLENSION OF *PORTUS*

Learn the declension of *portus*, *ūs*, GRAMMAR, NO. 65, and the rule for gender, GRAMMAR, NO. 66. Note that the *-us* is short in the nominative singular but long in other cases.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>adventus, ūs</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{arrival} \\ \text{coming} \end{array} \right.$
<b>equitātus, ūs</b>	<i>cavalry</i>
<b>exercitus, ūs</b>	<i>army</i>
<b>impetus, ūs</b>	<i>attack</i>
<b>metus, ūs</b>	<i>fear</i>
<b>splritus, ūs</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{breath} \\ \text{spirit} \end{array} \right.$
<b>portus, ūs</b>	<i>harbor</i>
<b>senātus, ūs</b>	<i>senate</i>

#### NOTE

1. The *ūs* in the vocabulary stands of course for the full genitive form, *e. g.*, *adventus, us* = *adventus, adventus*.

2. Be sure to note the difference between *portus, ūs* and *porta, ae*.

3. The Roman Senate was an aristocratic governing body somewhat like a combination of the United States Senate and the British House of Lords. In the time of the Republic the Senate was very powerful and really directed Roman policies. Under the emperors it had very little real power.

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *port* of New York. The season of *Advent*. He gave the movement a strong *impetus*.

## EXERCISE 62

1. Give the full genitive of the nouns in the vocabulary.
2. Decline the words in the vocabulary (but **adventus**, **equitatus**, and **metus** only in the singular).
3. Give the ablative singular of the words in the vocabulary.

## EXERCISE 63

2. *Tell what forms these are;*

2, *Translate:*

- |                          |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. post adventum Christi | 10. in provinciā   |
| 2. adventus Caesaris     | 11. senatus        |
| 3. in portu              | 12. lex senatus    |
| 4. portus provinciae     | 13. propter metum  |
| 5. cum equitatu          | 14. amici senatus  |
| 6. in exercitu           | 15. metus Caesaris |
| 7. post equitatum        | 16. impetum        |
| 8. exercitus             | 17. dux equitatus  |
| 9. in senatu             | 18. cum exercitu   |

## EXERCISE 64

*Translate:*

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. on account of fear of danger | 5. with the cavalry of the Gauls |
| 2. in the senate                | 6. the attack of the enemy       |
| 3. with Caesar's army           | 7. with the spirit of God        |
| 4. after the coming of Christ   | 8. in the harbor                 |

2. *IN WITH THE ACCUSATIVE*

The preposition *in* may take either the accusative or the ablative case. (You have already been using it with the ablative.)

1. Whenever there is MOVEMENT or MOTION expressed by the *in*, the ACCUSATIVE is used.

**In silvā veniūt.**

*He came INTO the forest.*

**In hostes impetum fecerunt.**

*They made an attack AGAINST (UPON, ON) the enemy.*

2. When there is no idea of movement or motion, the ABLATIVE is used.

In colle est.  
*He is on the hill.*

In silva est.  
*He is in the forest.*

### VOCABULARY

**in**, *prep. w. abl.*

**in**, *prep. w. acc.*

**nunc**, *adverb*

**autem**, *conj., postpositive*

**fēcērunt**

**vēnit**

**vērērunt**

**P**"  
*on*

*in*  
*into*  
*against*  
*upon*  
*on*

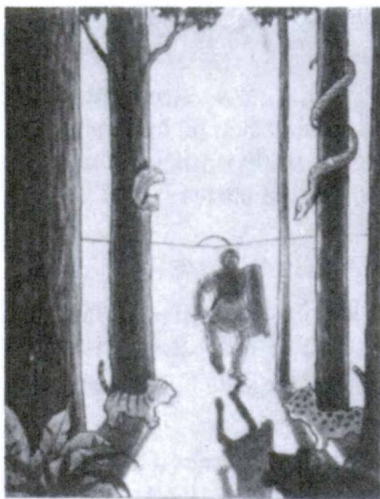
*now*

*however*

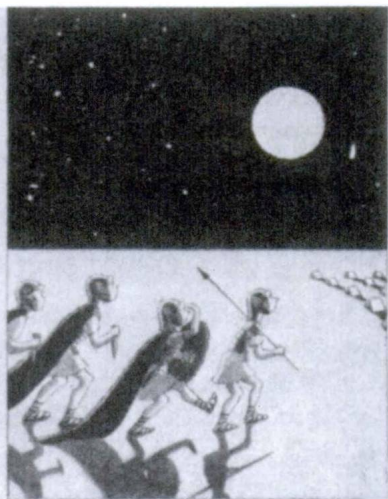
*they made*

*he, she, it came*

*they came*



IN SILVAM VENIT.



IN HOSTES IMPETUM FECERUNT.



## NOTE

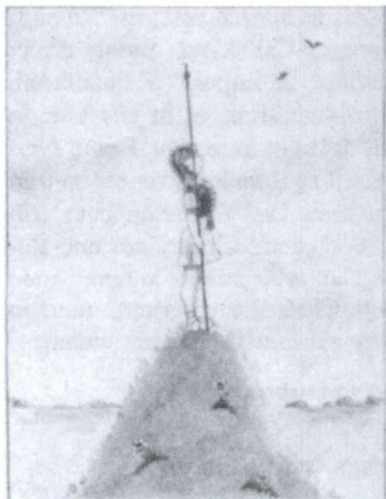
Autem is postpositive. This means that it cannot stand first in a clause but must ALWAYS FOLLOW THE FIRST WORD OR PHRASE OF ITS CLAUSE. (See Sentence 4, Exercise 65.)

## EXERCISE 65

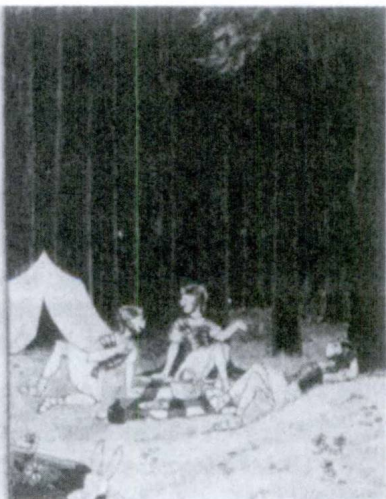
[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Nunc sunt portus in Gallia. (Why is Gallia in the ablative?)
2. Post adventum Romanorum bellum erat in Gallia.
3. Caesar cum equitatu in provinciam venit. (Why is provinciam in the accusative?)
4. Caesar autem cum exercitu non erat.
5. Propter metum Romanorum Galli in silvas venerunt.
6. Nautae portum vident.
7. Senatus Caesarem laudat quod Romani hostes vicerunt.
8. Impetum in hostes fecerunt.



IN COLLE EST.



IN SILVA SUNT.

9. Post adventum equitatus milites impetum in Gallos fecerunt.

10. Galli in colle erant. In Gallos autem Caesaris milites impetum fecerunt. Duces et principes Galldrum occiderunt et Gallos vicerunt. Post bellum, propter metum Caesaris, hostes impetum in Romanos non fecerunt.

11. Galli senatum occiderunt.

#### EXERCISE 66

2. Tell what forms these are;

2. Translate:

- |             |            |             |
|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. portibus | 5. spiritu | 9. portarum |
| 2. portus   | 6. portum  | 10. impetum |
| 3. corpus   | 7. portam  | 11. regum   |
| 4. equitatu | 8. portuum | 12. metum   |

#### EXERCISE 67

#### CAEDES CHRISTIANORUM

Post Christi adventum lux veritatis in mundo erat, sed Romani amici Christi et veritatis non erant. Christiani autem amici Christi erant. Erant multi<sup>1</sup> Christiani in imperio Romanorum. Erant in portibus et in oppidis provinciarum et in silvis et in montibus. Erant in exercitu et in equitatu et in senatu. Erant servi et milites; erant matres et patres, Galli et Romani. Propter metum autem Christi Regis et propter nomen Dei Christianorum Romani Christianos occiderunt. Post caedem Christianorum, Romani non erant amici et servi Dei. Christiani autem, quod Romani Christianos propter legem Christi occiderunt, nunc in Caelo sunt cum Maria et Christo et gloriam Dei Patris vident.

*Answer these questions:*

1. What did Christ give men ?
2. Did the Romans receive Christ's truth at once?

---

<sup>1</sup> multi: many.

3. Were there many Christians in the Roman Empire ?
4. Where were they to be found?
5. What sort of persons were they ?
6. What did the Romans do to the Christians ?

**EXERCISE 68**

[Essential]

**THE CONQUEST OF GAUL**

The Gauls were not friends of Caesar and of the Senate. There\* fore Caesar came into Gaul with the cavalry and the soldiers. The Gauls, however, on account of fear of Caesar, came into the forests and mountains. Caesar's army was in the forests of the enemy, and there were dangers. The Romans, however, made an attack upon the enemy. They killed the leaders and the leading men of the Gauls. They conquered the cavalry and the army of the Gauls, and fortified the harbors and the towns and the hills of Gaul. And so the Senate now praises Caesar on account of the fame of the war and the courage of the soldiers. On account of fear of the soldiers the Gauls are now friends and servants of the Senate.

**EXERCISE 69****GOD IS EVERYWHERE**

"Deus spiritus est." In Caelo et in terra est. Mundum videt. Homines videt. Milites et nautas et servos videt. Matres et patres et fratres et filios videt. Homines propter virtutem laudat sed propter caedem non laudat.

## LESSON 5: THE FIFTH DECLENSION

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the declension of **res**, GRAMMAR, NO. 69 and the rule for gender, GRAMMAR, NO. 70.

### VOCABULARY

<b>rēs, rei</b>	f <i>thing</i> \\ <i>again</i>
<b>fides, fide!</b>	f <i>faith</i> f <i>reliability</i> f <i>faithfulness</i>
<b>acies, aciei</b>	<i>battle line</i>
<b>spēs, spei</b>	<i>hope</i>
<b>posuerunt</b>	( <i>they put</i> <i>they placed</i> )

### NOTE

When **posuerunt** is modified by an in-phrase, the **in** ALWAYS takes the ablative.

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

This is the *real* state of affairs. *Fidelity* to duty.

### EXERCISE 70

1. Decline **acies** throughout.
2. Decline **spe** and **fides** in the singular only.

### EXERCISE 71

1. Tell what forms these are;
2. Translate:

- |                         |                        |                      |
|-------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. in <b>acie</b>       | 4. propter <b>spem</b> | 7. <b>rērum</b>      |
| 2. propter <b>fidem</b> | 5. propter <b>rem</b>  | 8. post <b>aciem</b> |
| 3. <b>rēbus</b>         | 6. <b>rē</b>           | 9. <b>aciebus</b>    |

## EXERCISE 72

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Militēs in acīe erant. 2. Rōmāni Christiānōs propter fidem occiderunt. 3. Milites spēm victoriae in vīrtute posuerunt. 4. Rōmāni in aciem hostium impetum fecerunt. 5. Galli aciem Rōmānōrum in colie vident. 6. In Christo est spes mūdi. 7. Deus Christiānos propter fidem et vīrtutem laudat. 8. Militēs rem vident.

## EXERCISE 73

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Caesar was in the battle line. 2. They praise the reliability of the soldier. 3. The Senate does not praise the affair. 4. The Gauls made an attack on the battle line of the Romans. 5. They placed hope in God.

## EXERCISE 74

## REVIEW

1. Give the genitive plural and the rule for:

hostis	virtūs	homō	gēns
--------	--------	------	------

2. Give the gender and rule for:

homō	nauta	pāx	equitātus
rēs	maīer	gēns	praemium
filius	veritās	servus	Rōmānus

## LESSON 6: NOUNS WITH SPECIAL MEANINGS IN THE PLURAL

SOME LATIN nouns are used mainly in the plural but with a SINGULAR meaning:

<b>castra, castrōrum</b>	<i>camp</i>
<b>impedimenta, impedimentoŕum</b>	<i>baggage</i> <i>baggage train</i>

Some Latin nouns have different meanings in the singular and plural:

<b>grātia, ae</b>	<i>favor</i> <i>influence</i> <i>grace</i> (in Christian Latin)
<b>grātiaē, grātiārum</b>	<i>thanks</i>
<b>cōpia, ae</b>	<i>supply</i> <i>abundance</i>
<b>cōpiaē, cōpiārum, /.</b>	<i>troops</i> <i>forces</i> (a military term)

Learn also:

<b>posuērunt</b>	<i>they put</i> <i>they placed</i> <i>they pitched</i> (w. <b>castra</b> )
<b>agunt</b>	<i>they give</i> (w. <b>grātiās</b> )

### NOTE

1. **Posuērunt** means *they pitched* ONLY when it has **castra** for its object. Remember that when an in-phrase modifies **posuērunt**, the **in** always governs the ablative.
2. **Agunt** means *give* ONLY when it has **gratiās** for its object.
3. **Grātia** is used in Christian Latin to mean *grace*, as **in grātia Del**, *the grace of God*.

4. **Silva, ae**, as you know, means a *forest*; but it is generally used in the PLURAL and with the SAME MEANING as in the singular, like the English word *woods*.

5. Recall that the English singular *enemy* is often translated by the plural *hostes*.

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *copious* flow of water; *gratitude*; a *gracious* manner; a comfortable *position*.

#### EXERCISE 75

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Christians give thanks to God on account of the abundance of the grace of Christ.

2. On account of fear of Caesar the tribes did not make an attack on the camp.

3. There was a supply of swords in the camp.

4. The commander in chief was in favor with the king on account of the victory.

5. They made an attack on the camp.

6. The forces of the enemy were not in the province.

7. They put hope in the grace of Christ.

8. There was war in Gaul on account of the slaughter of the leading men. Caesar came into Gaul with troops and cavalry and a baggage train. The forces of the enemy were on a hill. The Romans, however, pitched camp behind the hill. The Gauls on account of fear of Caesar did not make an attack upon the camp. The Romans, however, made an attack on the Gauls. The Gauls placed hope in the cavalry, but the Romans killed the cavalry of the Gauls and captured<sup>1</sup> the hill. They captured<sup>1</sup> the leaders and the camp and the baggage of the Gauls. After the war there was peace in Gaul and the Romans came into the province.

---

<sup>1</sup> captured: *ceperunt*.

## EXERCISE 76

## CASTRĀ RŌMĀNŌRŪM

A Roman army never spent a single night outside a fortified camp. Towards the end of the day's march a detachment was sent ahead to mark out the site for the night's encampment. The plots assigned to the various divisions of the forces were indicated by colored flags. A rampart was always erected and a ditch dug. The camp was generally square and had four gates. The Roman legionnaire was as much a builder and a laborer as a fighting man. It was no doubt partly to this continuous training that he owed his remarkable steadiness and endurance in the field. The camp depicted on page 67 is rather more elaborate and permanent, yet the nightly encampments were constructed in the same general way.

Vidētis exercitum Rŏmānŏrum in castris. Vidētis militeŝ et ducē et imperatŏrem. Videtis gladiŏs militum. Impedimenta nŏn vidētis, sed impedimenta sunt in castris. In castris est cŏpia omnium<sup>1</sup> rērum. Militeŝ castra in colle posuerunt sed nŏn in silvis. In castra agmen cum impedimentis vēnit. Hostēŝ autem impetum in castra fēcērunt, sed cŏpiae Rŏmānŏrum hostēŝ vicerunt. Nunc imperator militeŝ et ducēŝ propter virtutem laudat, et ducēŝ propter victŏriam grātiāŝ militibus agunt. Propter victŏriam imperator in gratiāŝ cum senatu vēnit."

## EXERCISE 77

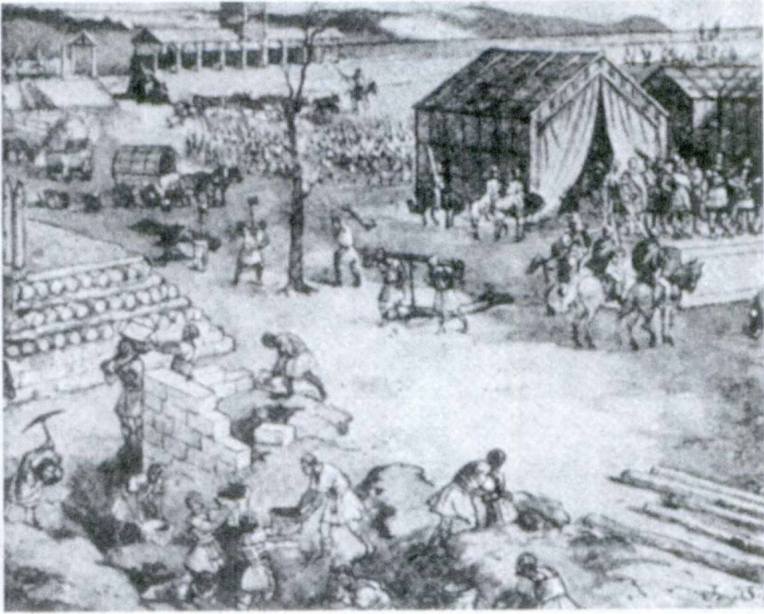
## "VAE VICTIS!" ("WOE TO THE CONQUERED!")

Galli erant hostēŝ Rŏmānŏrum. Itaque Rŏmāni cum cŏpiis in Galliam vērunt et castra posuerunt. In castris erant militeŝ et equitatus et servi et militum impedimenta. Cŏpia gladiŏrum in castris erat. Erant acieŝ in collibus et montibus et silvis. Galli in Rŏmānŏŝ impetum fēcērunt; Rŏmāni autem in Gallŏŝ impetum fēcērunt. Rŏmāni spem victŏriae in virtute posuerunt; Galli spem salutis in virtutē posuerunt. Rŏmāni autem Gallos vicerunt;

---

<sup>1</sup> omnium: *of all*.





CASTRÀ ROMANORUM

partem principum et ducum Galldrum occiderunt; portus et oppida Galldrum cēperunt.<sup>1</sup> Itaque Galli cōpiam gladidrum et servōrum Rōmānis dederunt. Post bellum erat pax in Galliā, sed erant castra Rōmānōrum in Galliā et Galli servi Rōmānōrum erant. Imperator Rōmānōrum erat Caesar. Senātus propter victōriam et militum virtutem Caesarem et exercitum laudat, et Rōmāni Caesar! gratias āgunt.

## EXERCISE 78

## BROTHERS IN CHRIST

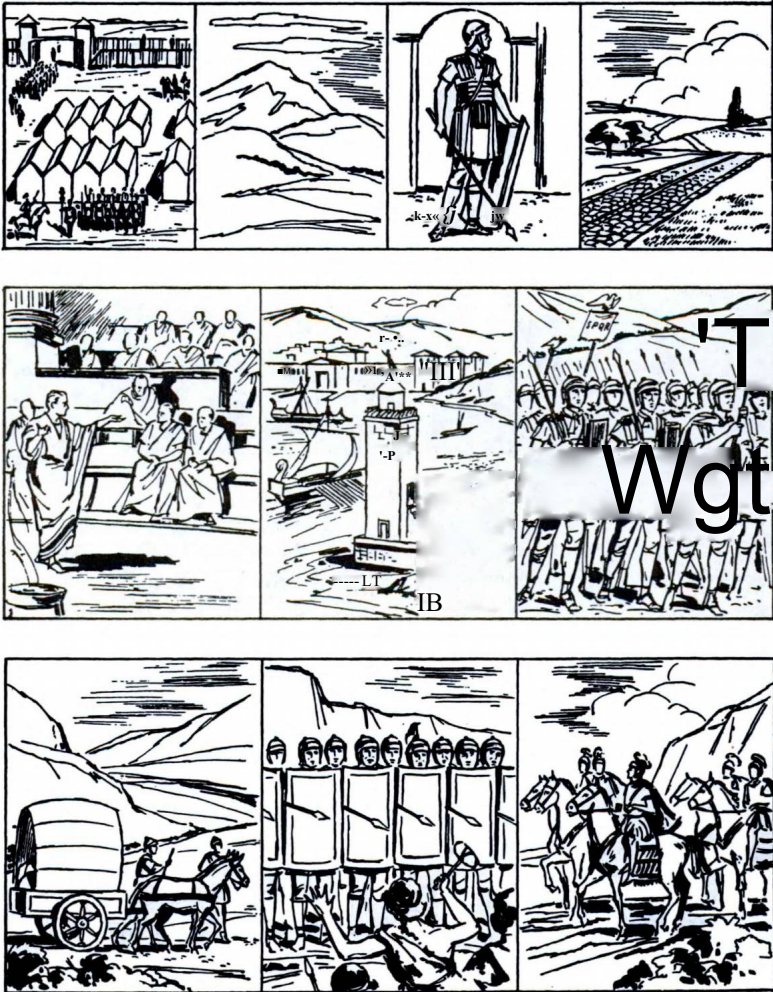
Propter Dei grātiam Christiān! sumus. Itaque frātrēs sumus propter legem Christi: "Estis fratres."

<sup>1</sup> cēperunt: they captured.

EXERCISE 79

WORD REVIEW

*Name in Latin the objects pictured here:*





## EXERCISE 80

## WHO IS CHRIST?

Christus, Filius Dei, est filius Mariae. Itaque homo et Deus est. Christus Rex hominum est quod Deus est. In Christo est salus hominum, quod, propter salutem hominum, in mundum venit. Est "Lux Mundi" quod hominibus veritatem dedit. Itaque Christiani! gratias Deo et Christo agunt, et Christum, Regem et Imperatorem, laudant.

## REVIEW OF UNIT ONE

### EXERCISE 81

*Give the*

1. *genitive singular;*
2. *meaning;*
3. *gender and gender rule;*
4. *accusative singular;*
5. *genitive plural and its meaning:*

1. vulnus	12. bellum	23. terra	34. miles
2. Christiānus	13. hostis	24. gēns	35. populus
3. rēs	14. agmen	25. rēx	36. praemium
4. pars	15. Gallus	26. filius	37. virtūs
5. prōvincia	16. māter	27. silva	38. vōx
6. nōmen	17. flūmen	28. collis	39. nauta
7. frāter	18. rēgnum	29. amicus	40. via
8. cōpia	19. Rōmānus	30. mōns	41. imperātor
9. periculum	20. pater	31. victōria	42. gladius
10. porta	21. iter	32. homō	43. lēx
11. corpus	22. dux	33. servus	44. portus

### EXERCISE 82

*Give the*

1. *genitive singular;*
2. *meaning;*
3. *gender and gender rule;*
4. *accusative singular;*
5. *ablative singular:*

1. lūx	5. Deus	9. exercitus	13. vērītās
2. Caesar	6. adventus	10. caedēs	14. gēns
3. tidēs	7. impetus	11. spēs	15. aciēs
4. mundus	8. glōria	12. metus	16. clāmor

## EXERCISE 83

## [Essential Drill]

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the use of the italicized words:*

1. Deus, pater hominum, in Caelo est. 2. Deus legem *hominibus* dedit. 3. Propter salutem hominum Christus homo in terra erat. 4. Christus est *lux* mundi. 5. Christus, *Filius* Dei, est rex gentium et populorum. 6. Post *adventum* Christi veritas erat in mundo. 7. Spiritus Dei in Christo erat. 8. Regnum Christi est regnum Caeli. 9. Christiani! in nomine Christi orant. 10. Maria in *regnō* Caelorum cum Christo gloriam Dei nunc videt. 11. Maria, Mater Dei, est Porta Caeli. 12. Caelum est praemium virtutis. 13. Deus *fidem* Christianorum laudat. 14. Fratres estis. 15. Amicus est amici servus. 16. Milites pacem laudant. 17. Roma non est in Gallia, sed provincia Romanorum est in Gallia. 18. Galli Galliam incolunt. 19. Nautae portus vident. 20. Romani vias in provinciis muniverunt. 21. Christiani! caedem principum hostium non laudant. 22. Caesar imperium Galliae Gallis non dedit. 23. Imperator clamorem et voces hostium audivit. 24. Propter vulnera milites iter non fecerunt. 25. Propter metum dux regem laudat. 26. Propter bellum *erant* milites et copia gladiatorum in oppido. 27. Hostes in montibus et collibus erant. 28. Corpora militum in silvis erant. 29. Partem equitatus in flumine occiderunt. 30. Senatus et principes *exercitui* propter victoriam gratias agunt. 31. Romani spem in virtute posuerunt. 32. Caesar cum copiis et impedimentis in castra venit. 33. Propter gratiam Caesaris principes Galldrum servos Romanis dederunt. 34. Hostes erant post aciem Romanorum. Equitatus autem in *aciem* venit. Itaque Romani hostes vicerunt et occiderunt. 35. In silvas Galliae Caesar venit. Principes autem Galldrum rem viderunt.<sup>1</sup> Itaque impetum in agmen Caesaris fecerunt. 36. Milites in acie drant quod in periculo sunt.

---

<sup>1</sup>viderunt: they saw.

## UNIT TWO

### LESSON 7: ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

#### 1. THE DECLENSION OF *MAGNUS, A, UM*

Adjectives, like nouns, are declined in Latin. But they have THREE GENDERS and therefore are declined IN EACH GENDER.

The adjectives are grouped into two main classes:

1. Those which use the endings of the FIRST and SECOND declensions.

2. Those which use the endings of the THIRD declension.

The adjective **magnus, magna, magnum** belongs to the first and second declensions. You already know all its endings. See whether you can write out its declension without looking in the GRAMMAR. First study these hints:

1. The stem is **magn- (magn-us)**.
2. The masculine is exactly like **servus**.
3. The feminine is exactly like **terra**.
4. The neuter is exactly like **bellum**.
5. Put the genders in three columns like this:

MASCULINE

**magn-us**

*etc.*

FEMININE

**magn-a**

*etc.*

NEUTER

**magn-um**

*etc.*

After you have written out both the singular and plural, compare with GRAMMAR, NO. 72. You now know the declension of all adjectives in **-us, -a, -um**.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Memorize the declension of **magnus, a, um**, GRAMMAR, NO. 72.

## VOCABULARY

magnus, a, um	{ great large
altus, a, um	{ high deep
bonus, a, um	good
longus, a, um	long
malus, a, um	bad
multus, a, um	much (pl., many)
sānctus, a, um	{ holy saint
primus, a, um	first

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The welfare of the people should be the *primary* concern of statesmen. The magnitude of the task. *Altitude*.

## 2. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

## EXAMPLES

magnam gentem, *a large tribe* (as object)

nautae boni, *good sailors*

servos maids, *the bad slaves* (as object)

in fluminibus, *in the deep rivers*

In the first example:

1. Gens is FEMININE (sox); therefore magn- has a feminine ending.
2. Gentem is ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR feminine; therefore magnam is in the ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR feminine.

Explain the other examples in the same way.

**RULE: ADJECTIVES AGREE WITH THEIR NOUNS  
IN GENDER, NUMBER, AND CASE.**

## EXERCISE 84

*Translate:*

- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. in alto flumine     | 8. cum multis militibus   |
| 2. cum magno exercitu  | 9. in magno periculo      |
| 3. post magnum bellum  | 10. in altis montibus     |
| 4. cum sancta Maria    | 11. cum homine bono       |
| 5. in longa via        | 12. post longum iter      |
| 6. cum hominibus bonis | 13. propter multa vulnera |
| 7. cum magnis copiis   | 14. cum servo malo        |

## THE POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

Examine the position of the adjectives in the exercise above. Some follow the noun, some precede. Those that precede are generally adjectives answering the questions How large? How long? How high? How many? How small? These are adjectives of QUANTITY like multus and magnus.

**RULE: ADJECTIVES OF QUANTITY GENERALLY**  
**PRECEDE THEIR NOUNS.**

Those that follow answer the question What kind ?, like malus, bonus, *etc.* These are adjectives of QUALITY.

**RULE: ADJECTIVES OF QUALITY GENERALLY**  
**FOLLOW THEIR NOUNS.**

Note. In Christian Latin sanctus generally precedes its noun:  
**Sancta Maria, Holy Mary**

## EXERCISE 85

*Translate:*

- |                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. with many soldiers    | 3. on account of the holy law |
| 2. in the high mountains | of God                        |



- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 4. with a good man                      | 9. the long way                |
| 5. large bodies                         | 10. on account of a great fear |
| 6. with the first Christians            | of the Romans                  |
| 7. bad laws                             | 11. great shouting             |
| 8. the deep rivers ( <i>as object</i> ) | 12. Saint Mary                 |

## EXERCISE 86

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Multi Christiān! in primā aciē erant. (Why is aciē ablative?) 2. Sancta Maria drat. 3. Longum agmen in altōs montēs vēnit. (Why is montes accusative?) 4. Nauta malus non drat. 5. Dux bonus magnam virtutem militum laudat. (Explain the position of bonus and magnam.) 6. In longō agmine multi milites et impedimenta sunt.

## EXERCISE 87

*Translate:*

1. Good leaders praise peace. 2. The bad kings killed many Christians. 3. The long column was in the forests, but the first battle line was on the high mountains. 4. On account of the great fame of Rome, many men praise the laws of the Romans. 5. There are large mountains and deep rivers in America.<sup>1</sup> 6. We Christians are servants of Holy Mary.

## 3. PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

Adjectives may modify a noun directly, as we have seen in such expressions as:

in alto flumine, in the deep river

homō bonus, a good man

These are called attributive adjectives.

---

<sup>1</sup> America: America, ae

But adjectives may also be linked to their noun by means of a linking verb like *sum*, ***I am***, as:

**Deus est bonus.** *God is good.*

**Lēgēs sunt males.** *The laws are bad.*

**Estis sancti.** *You are holy.*

Such adjectives are called PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.

The rule of agreement is the SAME for attributive and predicate adjectives.

Predicate adjectives are put in diagrams in the same way as predicate nouns.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>angustus, a, urn</b>	<i>narrow</i>
<b>reliquus, a, um</b>	<i>{ remaining the rest of</i>
<b>tūtus, a, um</b>	<i>safe</i>
<b>Rōmānus, a, um</b>	<i>Roman</i>
<b>Christiānus, a, um</b>	<i>Christian</i>

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

**Relics** of the Saints; a good **tutor**.

#### EXERCISE 88

[Essential]

**Complete these sentences:**

1. The way is narrow. Via est
2. God is good. Deus est
3. The soldiers are safe. Milites sunt-----
4. The camp was Roman. Castra erant
5. The soldiers were Christian. Milites erant \_\_\_\_\_
6. The laws were bad. Leges erant
7. A part of the enemy was remaining. Pars hostium erat
8. You are holy. Estis
9. The river was deep. Flumen erat.....

10. The Gauls were first. Galli erant
11. He was holy. Erat
12. The victories of the enemy were not many. Victoriae hostium non erant
13. We are safe. Sumus \_\_\_\_\_
14. The Gauls' swords were large. Gladii Galldrum erant
15. The leader was bad. Dux erat
16. The road was long. Via erat
17. God is holy. Deus est
18. The sailors were safe. Nautae erant

**"SĀLUS POPULI SUPRĒMA<sup>1</sup> EST LEX."**—Cicero<sup>2</sup>

From this is derived the motto of the State of Missouri:

**SALŪS POPULI SUPRĒMA<sup>1</sup> LEX ESTO<sup>4\*\*8</sup>**

#### 4. USE OF *PRO*

The preposition *pro* ALWAYS takes the ABLATIVE. In expressions of PLACE, *pro* means *in front of*.

***Pro exercitu***, *in front of the army*

*Pro*, especially with nouns naming persons, frequently means *on behalf of, for*.

**Maria *pro* hominibus drat.**

*Mary prays for (on behalf of) men.*

***Pro* rege impetum fecerunt.**

*They made the attack for (on behalf of) the king.*

<sup>1</sup> supremus, a, um: *highest*.

<sup>2</sup> Marcus Tullius Cicero (106-43 B.C.) was Rome's greatest orator. He was a lawyer of exceptional ability and a prominent politician. His orations have been models of style for two thousand years and strongly influenced the great French and English orators of modern times. He is also well known for his letters and essays.

<sup>8</sup>esto: *let . . . be*.

## VOCABULARY

<b>prō, prep. w. abl.</b>	<i>{ in front of (before) on behalf of (for)</i>
<b>inopia, ae</b>	<i>{ scarcity want</i>
<b>dominus, I</b>	<i>{ master Lord<sup>1</sup></i>
<b>mūrus, I</b>	<i>wall</i>
<b>frūmentum, i</b>	<i>grain (pl., crops)</i>
<b>legid, legidnis, /.</b>	<i>legion</i>

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Arguments *pro* and con; a *dominating* personality; *mural* decorations.

**Gloria Patri et Filio<sup>1</sup> et Spiritu<sup>2</sup> Sancto.**

## EXERCISE 89

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Legiōnes Rōmānae prō castris erant. 2. Sancta Maria prō hominibus malis et bonis dat. 3. Multi Galli prō portis castrōrum erant. 4. Principes prō mūrō altō erant. 5. Milites Rōmāni prō mūrō oppidi magni castra posuerunt. 6. Christiāni prō amicis orant. 7. Pro rege boni milites impetum in hostes fecerunt. 8. Erat magna inopia frumenti in Galliā. 9. Reliqui milites Christiāni in prima acie prō silvis erant. 10. Servi dominum bonum laudant.

<sup>1</sup> In Christian Latin Dominus, *Lord*, is used when referring to God or Christ.

<sup>2</sup> Sit, *be*, is understood in the Latin. Supply it in the English translation.

## EXERCISE 90

[Essential]

*Translate:*

Erat magna inopia frūmenti in castris Rōmānis quod Galli Rōmānis cōpiam frūmenti nōn dedērunt et frūmenta in Galliā nōn erant. Galli nōn erant amici Rōmānū. Itaque Caesar cum cōpiis et impedimentis in Galliam vēnit. Agmen Caesaris longum erat. Via in angustis et altis montibus erat. Itaque Galli impetum in longum agmen fecērunt, sed Gallōs legiōnes Rōmānae vicērunt. Itaque in oppidum tūtum vēnērunt reliqui Galli. Rōmāni autem castra prō mūrō altō posuērunt. Prima aciēs Caesaris prō castris erat. Galli autem propter magnum metum Caesaris impetum in castra Rōmāna nōn fecērunt. Itaque Rōmāni impetum in Gallōs fecērunt et Gallōs vicērunt. Multōs Gallōs et magnam partem principum Galliae occiderunt. Post victōriam Caesaris erat pāx in Galliā. Itaque Galli magnam frūmenti cōpiam Rōmānis dedērunt, et nōn erat inopia frumēti in castris Romanis.

**SANCTUS, SANCTUS, SANCTUS,  
DOMINUS DEUS EXERGITUUM!**

(A Title of God in the Old Testament)

## EXERCISE 91

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. In front of the large camp is a deep river. 2. The walls of the town are high. 3. Caesar was a great general. 4. There was a great scarcity of grain. 5. There were many legions with Caesar in Gaul. 6. Holy Mary prays for men. 7. Christ the Lord prays on behalf of the world. 8. Roman slaves do not praise the masters. 9. There are great crops in Gaul.

## EXERCISE 92

[Essential Review]

2. *Translate;*
2. *Explain position and agreement of the italicized words:*

1. Agmen *longum* erat. 2. *Reliqui* Galli tuti nōn erant.
3. Milkēs *Christiāni* prō imperātdre *bond* impetum in hostēs fēcērunt. 4. Via angusta *erat*. 5. *Longum* agmen in montēs altōs vēnit. 6. *Prima* legiō in aciē erat. 7. *Magna* frumenti inopia in *reliquis* gentibus erat. 8. Homineš *mail* prō reliquis hominibus nōn drant. 9. Sunt *multa* flūmina in Galliā. 10. Dominus, homō *bonus* et sanctus, servis frumentum dedit. 11. Legionēs Romānae in acie pro muro *alt6* erant.

## IN NOMINE DOMINI

(Motto of the Bishop of Boise)

## EXERCISE 93

*Add the correct endings to the adjectives in the following phrases and translate:*

1. propter legēs mal
2. cum ducibus bon
3. propter magnmetum
4. in magnluce
5. prō rege Rōmān
6. prō hominibus bon
7. cum multnautis
8. propter veritatē Christian
9. propter magnvirtutem
10. in castra Rōmān
11. in longvia
12. propter magncorpus

**Domini est terra!**

**Magna est gloria Domini!**

—Adapted from the *Roman Breviary*<sup>1</sup>

**EXERCISE 94**

*Translate:*

1. cum Caesare, imperatore Romano
2. propter salutem populi Romani
3. in altis montibus
4. post magnam caedem
5. propter multa vulnera
6. propter salutem reliquarum gentium
7. pro Sancto Nomine
8. in alto flumine

---

<sup>1</sup> The *Roman Breviary* is a Latin work usually published in four volumes. It contains the Psalms, lives of the Saints, and various other selections and prayers. Every Roman Catholic priest is required to read certain sections each day.

## LESSON 8: ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

### 1. THE DECLENSION OF *GRAVIS, E*

The second group of adjectives contains all those that use endings of the THIRD declension. Most of these adjectives are like *gravis, e*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the declension of **gravis** in GRAMMAR, No. 78. Notice that:

1. The ablative singular ends in -i.
2. The neuter plural nominative and accusative end in **-ia**.
3. The genitive plural ends in -ium.

**RULE: ALL ADJECTIVES WITH -IS, -E IN THE NOM-  
INATIVE SINGULAR ARE DECLINED  
LIKE *GRA VIS, E*.**

### VOCABULARY

<b>gravis, e</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{heavy} \\ \text{severe} \\ \text{serious} \end{array} \right.$
<b>brevis, e</b>	<i>short</i>
<b>communis, e</b>	<i>common</i>
<b>difficilis, e</b>	<i>difficult</i>
<b>facilis, e</b>	<i>easy</i>
<b>fortis, e</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{brave} \\ \text{strong} \end{array} \right.$
<b>nobilis, e</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{noble} \\ \text{renowned} \end{array} \right.$
<b>omnis, e</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{all} \\ \text{every} \end{array} \right.$



## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Life is *brief*. The good of the *community*. *Fortified* positions.  
God is *omnipresent*. A *grave* matter.

## NOTE

Remember that ALL adjectives follow the rule for agreement given on page 73.

## EXERCISE 95

1. Decline in all genders: (a) facilis, (b) nobilis, (c) omnis, (d) brevis.

2. Decline in the neuter: (a) communis, (b) fortis, (c) gravis, (d) difficilis.

3. Put the following in

- a. the ablative singular,
- b. the nominative plural,
- c. the genitive plural:

- |                      |                |                   |
|----------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. homō fortis       | 3. dux nobilis | 5. via difficilis |
| 2. omnis Christianus | 4. breve iter  | 6. bellum grave   |

4. Put the following groups in

- a. the accusative singular,
- b. the ablative singular:

- |                   |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. salūs communis | 4. metus gravis   | 7. vulnus grave |
| 2. omnis Gallia   | 5. oppidum nobile | 8. via facilis  |
| 3. res gravis     | 6. omnis spes     | 9. nomen nobile |

5. Complete and translate:

- |                      |                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| a. in via difficil   | g. propter metum grav.    |
| b. cum omncopiis     | h. cum omnequitatu        |
| c. pro rege nobil    | i. cum militibus fort     |
| d. pro amico fort    | j. propter vulnera grav.. |
| e. pro duce nobil    | k. propter salutem commun |
| f. post bellum grav. | l. post oppidum nobil     |

## EXERCISE 96

[Essential]

*Complete and translate:*

1. Dominus Christus, Rex hominum, erat fort et nōbil
2. Spēs Galldrum erat brev
3. Dux nōbilin prima acie erat.
4. Prō castris milites forterant.
5. Omnspem salutis in virtute posuerunt.
6. Christian! in nomine Christi omnspem salutis posuerunt.
7. Propter rem grav Caesar in Galliam venit.
8. Propter salutem communomnes Galli in prōvinciam impetum fecerunt.
9. Propter montes et silvas via erat difficil
10. Propter virtutem Galldrum res nōn erat facil

## EXERCISE 97

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. The danger was serious. 2. You are brave. 3. On account of the common salvation of men, Christ came into the world.
4. The way was difficult. 5. All men praise great courage.
6. There were strong soldiers and renowned leaders in the Roman army. 7. The journey was not easy. 8. The mountains are large and high. 9. Every general praises courage and faithfulness.
10. Caesar was a great and renowned general. 11. The victory was not easy. 12. The route was short. 13. Roman swords were heavy. 14. The affair was serious. 15. Christ is a noble lord and a brave leader; therefore all good and holy men praise Christ the Lord. 16. The Roman laws were severe. 17. The long and deep rivers of America<sup>1</sup> are renowned.

<sup>1</sup> America: America, ae.

## 2. ADJECTIVES GOVERNING CASES

He is eager for power.

Mary is full of grace.

The province is next to the Gauls.

In these sentences the prepositional phrases *for power*, *of grace*, *to the Gauls*, modify the adjectives *eager*, *full*, *next*. These prepositional phrases which modify adjectives are often translated into Latin by the genitive or dative or ablative WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. THE PROPER CASE TO BE USED IS DETERMINED BY THE ADJECTIVE. Thus *cupidus* always takes the genitive case. It makes no difference whether the English is *eager FOR power* or *desirous OF power*—*cupidus* ALWAYS has the GENITIVE case. Likewise, *finitimus*, *next (to)*, always has the DATIVE. *Plenus*, however, takes either the genitive or the ablative.

The sentences written above must be translated:

Imperii cupidus est.

Maria est gratia (gratiae) plena.

Provincia Gallis finitima est.

When an adjective of this kind is given in the vocabularies, it will always be followed by an abbreviation to indicate the case to be used. Be sure to learn this when you learn the adjective.

## VOCABULARY

cupidus, a, um; w. gen.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{eager} \\ \text{desirous} \end{array} \right\}$
plenus, a, um; w. gen. or abl.	full
finitimus, a, um; w. dat.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{neighboring} \\ \text{next} \end{array} \right.$
similis, e; w. gen. or dat.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{like} \\ \text{similar} \end{array} \right.$

## NOTE

These adjectives are sometimes used WITHOUT a modifying phrase as: *gentes finitimae*, *neighboring tribes*,

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *cupidity* of the miser; a *plenary* indulgence.

## EXERCISE 98

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Galli gl̄oriae cupidi erant. 2. Filius similis patris est. 3. Galli finitimi erant pr̄vinciae. 4. Maria est gr̄atiā pl̄na. 5. Gallia pl̄na R̄māndrum erat. 6. Oppidum pl̄num erat militum et gladidrum. 7. Pr̄vincia pl̄na est omnium r̄rum bon̄rum. 8. Caelum est pl̄num gl̄oriae Dei. 9. Cupidi sumus omnium r̄rum bon̄rum. 10. Finitimi Galliae erant. 11. S̄ncti hominēs Christo similes sunt.



PONS ROMANUS

## EXERCISE 99

*Complete these sentences:*

1. The camp is full of swords. *Castra plena sunt*
2. The enemy were eager for victory. *Hostes cupidi erant*
3. The tribes were next to Gaul. *Gentes erant finitimae*
4. The Gauls were not like the Romans. *Galli non erant similes*
5. They killed the leaders of the neighboring tribes. *Duces gentium occiderunt.*
6. A sailor is not like a soldier. *Nauta non est similis*
7. The Gauls are desirous of war. *Galli cupidi sunt*

3. THE DECLENSION OF *JESUS*

## VOCABULARY

<i>Jesū, u</i>	<i>Jesus</i>
<i>et . . . et</i>	<i>both . . . and</i>
<i>quid</i>	<i>what?</i>
<i>prima luce</i>	<i>at dawn</i>
<i>urbs, urbis</i>	<i>city</i>
<i>pōns, pontis, m.</i>	<i>bridge</i>
<i>signum, i</i>	<i>{ standard</i>
	<i>{ signal</i>
	<i>{ sign</i>
<i>eques, equitis</i>	<i>horseman (pl., cavalry)</i>

## NOTE

1. **Quid** is used in asking questions:

*Quid est in urbe? What is in the city?*

*Quid videtis? What do you see?*

2. **Luce** is the ablative of **lux**; **primā** (from **primus, a, um**) agrees with it. **Prima luce** literally means *with* or *at the first light*; hence, *at dawn*.

3. The plural of *horseman* is *horsemen*, which is the same as *cavalry*; hence the meaning for **equites** given in the vocabulary.

4. **Jēsuſ** is declined:

*Nom.*     Jēsuſ

*Gen.*     Jēsuſ

*Dat.*     Jēsuſ

*Acc.* Jēsuſ

*Abl.* Jēsuſ

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *urban* population; an *equestrian* statue.

OMNIA PRO JESU

(Motto of the Bishop of Tucson)

#### EXERCISE 100

[Essential]

*Translate:*

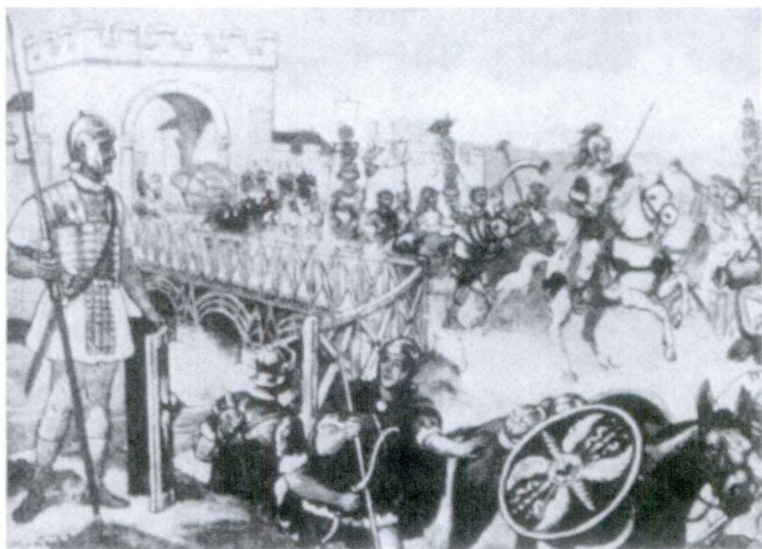
Nōmen Jēsuſ est Sānctum Nōmen. Est nōmen nobile et spei plēnum. In nōmine Jēsuſ omnes Christiān! drant; Jēsuſ omnes laudant; Jēsuſ omnes grātiaſ agunt; Jēsuſ omnes in Caelo cum Mariā vident. In nōmine Jēsuſ primi Christiān! Rōmānoſ vicē-runt. Propter Jēsuſ Deus Pater primis Christiānis prae-mium victōriae dedit. Itaque Jēsuſ Christus est et Dominus et Rēx omnium hominum.

#### EXERCISE 101

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Christiān! et Jēsuſ Christum et Mariam laudant. 2. Rōma est urbs et magna et nōbilis. 3. Caesar et glōriae et imperii cupidus erat. 4. Prima luce equiteſ forteſ impetum in reliquōſ hostēſ fecērunt. 5. Propter pericula gravia et multa militum vul-nera Rōmāni iter breve in provinciā fecērunt.



AGMEN ROMANUM

The soldier in the left foreground is 'modeling' the standard Roman outfit. The long *pilum* which he holds is much like the modern javelin used in track competition; his *gladius*—the two-edged sword for hand-to-hand fighting—hangs from his shoulder. He is protected by helmet, breastplate, and shield. He would thus be prepared for actual service in the field; on the march the helmet was carried in the pack and the shield was generally inclosed in a bag to protect it.

## EXERCISE 102

*Translate:*

Quid vidētis in pictūrā P<sup>1</sup> In pictūrā vidētis agmen Rōmānum. Agmen longum est, sed vidētis partem agminis. Vidētis signa legidnum et gladiōs militum. Pars agminis est in ponte. Equitēs autem nōn sunt in ponte. Vidētis imperāforem. Primus vēnit. In agmine sunt impedimenta. In impedimentis est cōpia frūmenti et omnium rerū. Vidētis ūrbem et mu rum āltum.

---

<sup>1</sup> pictūra, ae: *picture*.

## EXERCISE 103

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. There are many bridges on the long and deep rivers of America.<sup>1</sup> 2. The Roman soldiers killed many Christians on account of the name of Jesus. 3. There are great and renowned cities in America.<sup>1</sup> 4. Christians put all hope and faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. 5. Both sailors and soldiers praise God. 6. The city of Rome is large and renowned. (Do not use the genitive for *of Rome*; names of cities are put in apposition to **urbs**.) 7. The general gave the signal at dawn, and so the cavalry made an attack on the enemy and killed a large part of the leading men of the tribe. 8. You see the standards of the legions. 9. The wounds of the brave soldiers are many and serious. 10. The enemy killed the Roman horseman. 11. They fortified the bridges. 12. What do the Christians praise?

SIGNUM CRUCIS<sup>2</sup>

"In nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti."

Āmēn.<sup>3</sup>

## READING NO. 3

## A LATIN QUIZ PROGRAM

Quid est victoriā?

—Est praemium virtutiſ.

Quid est bellum?

—Est caedeſ fratrum.

Quid est miles?

—Est muſus<sup>4</sup> imperii.<sup>1</sup> *America*: America, ae.<sup>2</sup> *crux*, *crucis*: cross.<sup>3</sup> Āmēn is a Hebrew word meaning "So be it!" The congregation, or the server in the name of the congregation, answers Āmēn to show that the people are united with the prayer of the priest.<sup>4</sup> In this sentence muſus may be translated *bulwark*.



## MASTERY REVIEW VOCABULARY NO. 1

[Units One and Two]

### FIRST DECLENSION

#### NOUNS LIKE *TERRA, AE*

<i>cōpia, ae</i>	{ <i>supply</i> <i>abundance</i>
<i>cōpiaē, cōpiarūm, f.</i>	{ <i>troops</i> <i>forces</i> (a military term)
<i>Gallia, ae</i>	<i>Gaul</i>
<i>glōria, ae</i>	{ <i>fame</i> <i>glory</i>
<i>grātia, ae</i>	{ <i>favor</i> <i>influence</i> <i>grace</i> (in Christian Latin)
<i>grātiaē, grātiarum</i>	<i>thanks</i>
<i>inopia, ae</i>	{ <i>scarcity</i> <i>want</i>
<i>Maria, ae</i>	<i>Mary</i>
<i>nauta, ae</i>	<i>sailor</i>
<i>porta, ae</i>	<i>gate</i>
<i>prōvincia, ae</i>	<i>province</i>
<i>Rōma, ae</i>	<i>Rome</i>
<i>silva, ae</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>forest</i>
<i>terra, ae</i>	{ <i>earth</i> <i>land</i>
<i>via, ae</i>	<i>road</i>
<i>victōria, ae</i>	{ <i>way</i> <i>victory</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Generally used in the plural in Latin with same meaning as in the singular.

## SECOND DECLENSION

NOUNS LIKE *SERVUS*, I \*

amicus, I	<i>friend</i>
Christianus, I	<i>Christian</i>
Christus, I	<i>Christ</i>
Deus, Dei	<i>God</i>
dominus, I	<sup>j</sup> <i>master</i> <sub>j</sub> <i>Lord*</i>
filius, I	<i>son</i>
Gallus, I	<i>a Gaul</i>
gladius, I	<i>sword</i>
mundus, I	<i>world</i>
murus, I "	<i>wall</i>
populus, i	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{people} \\ \textit{nation} \end{array} \right.$
Romanus, I	<i>a Roman</i>
servus, I	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{slave} \\ \textit{servant} \end{array} \right.$

NOUNS LIKE *BELLUM*, I

bellum, I	<i>war</i>
caelum, I	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{sky} \\ \textit{heaven}^{1\ 2} \end{array} \right.$
frumentum, I	<i>grain (pl., crops)</i>
imperium, i	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{command} \\ \textit{power} \\ \textit{empire} \end{array} \right.$
oppidum, I	<i>town</i>
periculum, I	<i>danger</i>
praemium, I	<i>reward</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> In Christian Latin Dominus, *Lord*, is used when referring to God or Christ.

<sup>2</sup> When Caelum is used to mean the Christian heaven the *c* will be capitalized.

rēgnum, i	{ kingdom royal power
signum, i	{ standard signal sign

NOUNS LIKE THE PLURAL OF *BELLUM*

castra, castrorū	camp
impedimenta, impedimentorū	{ baggage baggage train

## THIRD DECLENSION

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS LIKE *LEX*, *LEGIS*<sup>1</sup>

Caesar, Caesaris	Caesar
clāmōr, clamōris	{ shouting shout
dux, ducis	leader
eques, equitis	horseman (pl., cavalry) <sup>1</sup>
frāter, fra trīs (fratrum) <sup>2,3</sup>	brother
homo, hominis	man
imperafor, imperatoris	{ commander in chief general
legio, legionis, /.	legion
lēx, legis	law
lūx, lucis	light
māter, matris (matrum) <sup>2</sup>	mother
miles, militis	soldier
pater, patris (patrum) <sup>2</sup>	father
pāx, pacis	peace

<sup>1</sup> The plural of Norseman is *horsemen*, which is the same as *cavalry*; hence the meaning for equites given in the vocabulary.

<sup>3</sup> The genitive plural of *frater*, *mater*, and *pater* is put in parentheses to remind you that these words are exceptions to the rule for -ium words.

princeps, principis	{ chief leading man
rēx, regis	king
salūs, salutis	{ safety welfare salvation
veritas, veritatis	truth
virtus, virtutis	{ courage virtue
vōx, vocis	J voice { cry

#### MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS LIKE *PARS, PARTIS*

caedes, caedis	slaughter
collis, collis, <i>m.</i>	hill
gēns, gentis	tribe
hostis, hostis <sup>1</sup>	enemy (in war)
mōns, moptis, <i>m.</i>	mountain
pars, partis	Part
pōns, pontis, <i>m.</i>	bridge
urbs, urbis	city

#### NEUTER NOUNS LIKE *FLUMEN, FLUMINIS*

agmen, agminis	column (of soldiers) I army (on the march)
corpus, corporis, <i>n.</i>	dody
flūmen, flumīnis	river
iter, itineris, <i>n.</i>	{ journey march route
nōmen, nomīnis	name
vulnus, vulneris, <i>n.</i>	wound

---

<sup>1</sup>The plural of *hostis* is used to translate the English *enemy* unless ONE soldier of the enemy is meant.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

NOUNS LIKE *PORTUS, US*<sup>1</sup>

adventus, ūs	(arrival coming)
equitatus, ūs	cavalry
exercitus, ūs	army
impetus, ūs	attack
metus, ūs	fear
portus, ūs	harbor
senatus, ūs <sup>1</sup>	senate
spiritus, us	(breath spirit)

## FIFTH DECLENSION

NOUNS LIKE *RES, REI*<sup>1</sup>

acies, aciei	battle line
	f faith
tides, tide!	J reliability
	f faithfulness
res, rei	f thing
	f affair
spei, spei	hope

---

<sup>1</sup>The Roman Senate was an aristocratic governing body somewhat like a combination of the United States Senate and the British House of Lords. In the time of the Republic the Senate was very powerful and really directed Roman policies. Under the emperors it had very little real power.

# ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## LIKE *MAGNUS, A, UM*

altus, a, um	<i>high</i> <i>(deep)</i>
angustus, a, um	<i>narrow</i>
bonus, a, um	<i>good</i>
Christianus, a, um	<i>Christian</i>
cupidus, a, um; w. gen.	<i>(eager)</i> <i>desirous</i>
confinitimus, a, um; w. dot.	<i>{neighboring</i> <i>next</i>
longus, a, um	<i>long</i>
magnus, a, um	<i>(great)</i> <i>(large)</i>
malus, a, um	<i>bad</i>
multus, a, um	<i>much</i> (pl., many)
plenus, a, um; w. gen. or abl.	<i>full</i>
primus, a, um	<i>first</i>
reliquus, a, um	<i>(remaining)</i> <i>the rest of</i>
Romanus, a, um	<i>Roman</i>
sacrosanctus, a, um	<i>(holy)</i> <i>I saint</i>
salvus, a, um	<i>safe</i>

# ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

## LIKE *GRAVIS, E*

brevis, e	<i>short</i>
communis, e	<i>common</i>
difficilis, e	<i>difficult</i>
facilis, e	<i>easy</i>

fords, e	{ <i>brave</i> <i>strong</i>
gravis, e	{ <i>heavy</i> <i>severe</i> <i>serious</i>
nobilis, e	{ <i>noble</i> <i>renowned</i>
omnis, e	{ <i>all</i> <i>every</i>
similis, e; w. <i>gen. or dat.</i>	<i>like</i> I <i>similar</i>

## PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

in, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	{ <i>in</i> <i>into</i> <i>against</i> <i>upon</i> <i>on</i>
post, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	{ <i>after</i> <i>behind</i>
propter, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>on account of</i>

## PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

cum, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>with</i>
in, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	{ <i>in</i> <i>on</i>
pro, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	{ <i>in front of (before)</i> <i>on behalf of (for)</i>

## CONJUNCTIONS

autem, conj., postpositive <sup>1</sup>	however
et, conjunction	and
et . . . et	both . . . and
itaque, conjunction <sup>2</sup>	{ therefore and so
quod, conjunction	because
sed, conjunction	but

## ADVERBS

nōn, adv.	not
nunc, adv.	now

## OTHER WORDS

Jēsuś, u <sup>3</sup>	Jesus
prima lūcē <sup>4</sup>	at dawn
quid <sup>5</sup>	what?

---

<sup>1</sup> Autem is postpositive. This means that it cannot stand first in a clause but must always follow the first word or phrase of a clause.

<sup>2</sup> Itaque is used at the beginning of a sentence as an introductory adverb.

<sup>3</sup> Jēsuś is declined: Jēsuś, Jēsu, Jēsu, Jēsum, Jēsu.

<sup>4</sup> Lūcē is the ablative of lux; p̄ima (from primus, a, um) agrees with it. Prima lūcē literally means at the first light; hence, at dawn.

<sup>5</sup> Quid is used in asking questions: Quid est in urbe? «What is in the city? Quid videtis? What do you see?



## UNIT THREE

### LESSON 9: THE FIRST CONJUGATION

#### INTRODUCTION

If you closed your eyes and “tuned in” on all the conversation going on in a room between classes you might hear something like this:

“He *was running* down the side line . . . *dove* for him but . . . *saw* a swell show last night at . . . we’re *going* over to Charlie’s house tonight . . . *did* it in ten minutes . . . she *said* . . . *don’t care* what ...”

All are saying something, and all, without realizing it, are using VERBS. We could not say anything at all unless we had verbs. They are the strong words of language because they express ACTION. And if you stop to think about it, they are amazing words, grammar’s quick-change artists, because in sentence after sentence they appear and re-appear with different spellings and in different combinations. Let us study their changes.

#### 1. VERBS CHANGE THEIR FORM TO EXPRESS DIFFERENT TIME.

I *played* ball yesterday.

I *am playing* ball.

I *shall play* ball tomorrow.

In each of these sentences the verb expresses the same action (*playing*), but there is a difference in each sen-



FILIUS DUCIS

tence. What is it ? The action is shown as happening at different TIMES. *Played* expresses PAST time; *am playing* expresses PRESENT time; *shall play* expresses FUTURE time. THE KIND OF TIME EXPRESSED BY A VERB IS CALLED ITS *TENSE*.

**IN BOTH ENGLISH AND LATIN, VERBS CHANGE  
THEIR FORM TO EXPRESS TENSE.**

2. VERBS CHANGE THEIR FORM TO EXPRESS DIFFERENT *PERSONS*.

I *play* ball.

He *plays* ball.

Again there is a difference between *play* and *plays*, but not in the time expressed. They are both PRESENT tense. The change here shows PERSON. *Play* is used with the first person, *I*; *plays* with the third person, *he*. (You cannot say "He play ball" unless you are a native of Borneo and speak pidgin English.)

**IN BOTH ENGLISH AND LATIN, VERBS CHANGE  
THEIR FORM TO SHOW PERSON.**

3. VERBS CHANGE THEIR FORM TO EXPRESS DIFFERENT *NUMBERS*.

He *plays* ball.

They *play* ball.

Here the tense (present) and the person (third) are the same in both sentences. This change is to show NUMBER. *Plays* is the third person SINGULAR (one); *play* is third person PLURAL (more than one).

**IN BOTH ENGLISH AND LATIN, VERBS CHANGE  
THEIR FORM TO SHOW NUMBER.**

Verbs also have MOOD and VOICE, but these will be explained later. For the present we shall study the indicative mood, active voice. You need only remember that the indicative mood is used in ordinary statements and questions.

**1. PRINCIPAL PARTS: THE FIRST CONJUGATION**

When we studied the nouns we saw that it was very important to know the GENITIVE because this case gives us the STEM.

Now, the Latin verb uses SEVERAL stems, and to know these we must learn the PRINCIPAL PARTS OF A VERB. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS are the four main forms on whose STEMS all the other forms of the verb are built up. The principal parts of a regular verb are:

1. The first person singular  
present indicative active:            *laudd, I praise*
2. The present infinitive active: *laudare, to praise*
3. The first person singular  
perfect indicative active:            *laudaŕi, I praised*
4. The perfect participle passive: *laudatus, having been praised*

We saw that nouns were divided into groups called declensions. Now, regular verbs are divided into FOUR main groups and these are called CONJUGATIONS. There is a MODEL verb for each group. The conjugation to which a verb belongs is shown by the ending of the SECOND principal part, the PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE: *laudare*.

**ALL VERBS WHOSE PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE  
ENDS IN -ARE BELONG TO THE FIRST  
CONJUGATION.**

## EXERCISE 104

*From this group of present infinitives, pick out the verbs which belong to the first conjugation:*

- |            |              |             |
|------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. laudāre | 4. audire    | 7. occupāre |
| 2. monēre  | 5. oppugnāre | 8. mūnire   |
| 3. pācāre  | 6. dicere    | 9. parāre   |

## NOTE

Most verbs of the first conjugation form their principal parts by changing the -d of the first principal part to **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, thus:

laud-d, laud-are, laud-avi, laud-atus

par-d, par-arē, par-avi, par-atus

## EXERCISE 105

*Give the principal parts of these first-conjugation verbs:*

occupō

oppugno

ōrō

## 2. PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF LAUD6

The PRESENT TENSE expresses action in PRESENT TIME. Study the meanings in GRAMMAR, NO. 162.

The PRESENT TENSE is always formed on the PRESENT STEM. The present stem is found by dropping the ending **-āre** of the infinitive, thus:

Infinitive: **LAUD-ARE** Present STEM: **LAUD-**

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the present tense of laudo with its meanings in GRAMMAR, NO. 162. Notice the following:

1. Except in the first person singular the ENDINGS BEGIN with a. (The first conjugation is the **^**-CONJUGATION.)

2. You know already that the Latin verb expresses persons (*I, you, he-she-it, we, they*) in its ENDING. If you drop the **a**

from the endings you have the following table of FINAL PERSONAL SIGNS:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
1.	(I) --	(we)	-mus
2.	(you) -s	(you)	-tis
3.	(he, she, it) -t	(they)	-nt

(Generally 6 or m is a sign of the first person singular, /.)

3. The present tense has three forms in English.

1. You praise
2. You are praising  
(showing that the action is GOING ON)
3. You do praise (used (1) in questions;  
e. g., Do you praise ?  
(2) for emphasis;  
e. g., You *do* praise.  
(3) in negative sentences.  
e. g., You *do not* praise.)

ALL THESE are expressed in Latin by the SAME form: *laudas*.

*Laudas.* You praise.

*Laudas.* You are praising.

*Quid laudas?* What do you praise?

*Laudas!* You do praise!

*Non laudas.* You do not praise, are not praising.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>laudo, I, tr.</i>	<i>Praise</i>
<i>occupo, I, tr.</i>	<i>seize</i>
<i>oppugno, I, tr.</i>	<i>{ attack</i> <i>{ assault</i>
<i>oro, I, tr.</i>	<i>{ beg</i> <i>{ pray</i>
<i>paratus, I, tr.</i>	<i>{ prepare</i> <i>{ get ready</i>

## NOTE

1. Whenever the principal parts are not printed in full in the vocabulary, the verb forms its parts regularly like the model for its conjugation. Thus **occupō** is like **laudd: occupō, OCGUPARE, OCGUPAVI, OGGUPATUS, 2, tr.** IN ALL TESTS AND RECITATIONS GIVE THE FULL PRINCIPAL PARTS.

2. The abbreviation *tr.* stands for TRANSITIVE and shows that the verb takes a direct OBJECT in the ACCUSATIVE case. Always learn from the vocabulary whether a verb is TRANSITIVE or INTRANSITIVE.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

He *lauded* the President's program. American soldiers *occupied* many islands in the Pacific.

## EXERCISE 106

1. Give the principal parts of the verbs in the vocabulary.
2. Tell why they are like *laudd*.
3. Conjugate them in the present indicative active. To do this:
  - a. Find PRESENT STEM (drop -are of infinitive).
  - b. Add the endings of *laudd*, i. e., -o, -as, -at, etc.

## EXERCISE 107

1. Tell what forms these are;
2. Give three English translations for each form:

- |              |            |              |          |
|--------------|------------|--------------|----------|
| 1. orant     | 3. occupās | 6. parāmus   | 9. orās  |
| 2. oppugnant | 4. orātis  | 7. occupat   | 10. paro |
|              | 5. drat    | 8. occupāmus |          |

## EXERCISE 108

*Add the required personal signs:*

- |                              |                |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. They are preparing war.   | Bellum para    |
| 2. He is attacking the camp. | Castra oppugna |
| 3. You do praise God.        | Deum lauda.    |

4. *They* pray for (their) friends. Pro amicis ora.
5. *We* prepare swords. Gladios para
6. *I* praise Christ. Christum laud

## EXERCISE 109

*Translate:*

1. He is praying. 2. You are preparing. 3. What does he praise? 4. We are praying. 5. They seize towns. 6. They are attacking the town. 7. They praise virtue. 8. He prepares swords. 9. She prays. 10. What do they praise?

## 3. AGREEMENT OF VERBS

**Maria orat. Mary prays.**

**Romani Caesarem laudant. The Romans praise Caesar.**

The subject of the first sentence is Maria. Maria is third person and singular. THEREFORE the verb is third person and singular. (Note the final personal sign -t.)

The subject of the second sentence is **Romani**. **Romani** is third person and plural. THEREFORE the verb is third person and plural. (Note the final personal sign -nt.)

RULE: A FINITE VERB AGREES WITH ITS SUBJECT IN PERSON AND NUMBER.

## EXERCISE 110

*/. Add the required personal signs;*

2. *Translate:*

1. Romani Caesarem lauda
2. Caesar legidnem primam non lauda
3. Hostes bellum para
4. Dux nobilis urbem et portum occupa
5. Milites castra oppugna



ROMANI AMICI CHRISTIANORUM NON ERANT.

### EXERCISE 111

[Essential]

### PRAY ALWAYS!

*Translate:*

Omnēs hominēs boni drant sed hominēs malī nōn drant. Christiān! in nōmine Christi ōrant. Rex bonus pro<sup>o</sup> rēgnō et militibus drat. Dux bonus pro<sup>o</sup> militibus drat. Et militeſ et nautae propter belli pericula ōrant. Et patreſ et mātřeſ pro<sup>o</sup> filiis ōrant. Filii pro<sup>o</sup> patribus et mātribus ōrant. Amici pro<sup>o</sup> amicis ōrant. Christus pro omnibus hominibus drat.

Cum<sup>1</sup> dr<sup>am</sup> us, Deum laudamus. Omnēs Christiān! Deum, pa-

---

<sup>1</sup> Cum is here a conjunction. Translate *when*.



trem omnium hominum, laudant, quod multas res bonas hominibus<sup>1</sup> parat. Milites post victoriam et salutem Deum laudant; patres et matres Deum propter pacem et filiorum salutem laudant.

## EXERCISE 112

[Essential]

*Translate:*

Rēgēs et ducēs malū bellum parant. Rēx malus, glōriae et rēgni cupidus, gladiis et legidnes parat. Castra gladiōrum et frūmenti plēna parat. Urbes et oppida finitima oppugnat et occupat. Milites regis malū et silvas et colles occupant. Cupidi sunt victōriae sed nōn p̄acis. Deus autem militibus et rēgibus malis praemia non parat!

## EXERCISE 113

[Essential]

*Translate:*

Estis hominēs boni. Itaque pacem et virtutem laudatis et pro omnibus hominibus oratis. Bellum non paratis quod non estis glōriae et victōriae cupidi. Urbes finitimas non oppugnatis; oppida gentium finitimarum non occupatis; gladiis et legidnes non propter bellum sed propter pacem paratis.

## EXERCISE 114

*Translate:*

1. Christiān! pro omnibus hominibus orāmus. (With what does Christian! agree?) 2. Milites fortes laudās. 3. Urbem non oppugnās. 4. Cōpiam gladiōrum parās. 5. Christiān! Spiritum Sānctum laudāmus. (With what does Christian! agree?) 6. Hominem fortem et sānctum omnes laudatis. (With what does omnes agree?)

---

<sup>1</sup> When *to* will not translate the dative into good English use *for*.

## EXERCISE 115

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Roman generals praise the courage and reliability of brave soldiers. Brave Roman soldiers prepare a supply of swords. They storm cities and towns. They seize hills and mountains and bridges. They are the “bulwark (*muñus, i*) of empire.” In the courage of the brave legions is all hope of victory and safety.

2. You are all Christians. Therefore do you all praise Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and Mary, the Mother of Christ. You pray for all men, for soldiers and sailors, for leading men and slaves. You pray in the name of Jesus Christ, and you praise the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit.

3. We are praising Caesar because he is a great and brave general. (*Great* in this sentence does not mean *large* but *famous* or *outstanding*. Therefore it is not an adjective of quantity here.)

4. The leader is attacking the camp.

5. They are preparing war.

6. We praise peace, but we do not praise war.

7. The leaders are getting grain and swords ready. (*Are getting* ... *ready* = one Latin word!)

## EXERCISE 116

[Essential Review]

1. Give the genitive plural of: (a) collis, (b) frater, (c) princeps, (d) gravis.

2. Give the reasons for the endings you used in Question 1.

3. Translate; parse ports: Milites pro portis sunt.

4. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *LAUDO*

The imperfect tense in Latin expresses action as GOING ON in PAST time. For example: “I *was eating* dinner between six and seven yesterday evening.” I could say, “I *ate* dinner between

six and seven yesterday," but the verb *ate* would not express the CONTINUANCE of the action. *Was eating* is translated into Latin by the IMPERFECT tense.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the meanings given in GRAMMAR, No. 163 and learn *laudabam, etc.* Note that:

1. The imperfect of a verb is formed on the PRESENT STEM.

2. The ending has the *a* of the first conjugation.

3. The FINAL PERSONAL SIGNS are the same as for the present tense.

4. The ending contains a **TENSE SIGN: *ba*** (e.g., *laud-ā-BA-t*), which is ALWAYS THE SIGN OF THE IMPERFECT TENSE. (The Latin verb is thus a sort of CODE which you can learn to decipher.)

#### VOCABULARY

<i>pugno</i> , I, intr.	<i>fight</i>
<i>superd</i> , I, tr.	<i>overcome</i>
	<i>conquer</i>
	<i>surpass</i>
<i>porto</i> , I, tr.	<i>carry</i>
<i>centurid</i> , <i>centurionis</i>	<i>a centurion</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>numerus</i> , I	<i>number</i>

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

He gave a large tip to the *porter*. Some boys are *pugnacious* by nature. Every *century* has its saints. Roman *numerals*. *Import* and *export* taxes.

#### RELATED LATIN WORD

##### Oppugno

---

<sup>1</sup>A centurion was a Roman army officer in charge of 100 men. The rank was similar to that of our captain.



CENTURIO

## EXERCISE 117

1. Give the principal parts of the verbs in the vocabulary.
2. Give their present stems.
3. Conjugate them in the present indicative.
4. Conjugate them in the imperfect indicative.

## EXERCISE 118

1. *Tell what forms these are;*
2. *Translate:*

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. portābat   | 8. superābat   |
| 2. drābant    | 9. laudābam    |
| 3. occupābant | 10. laudābāmus |
| 4. pugnābant  | 11. pugnābat   |
| 5. laudābās   | 12. laudābant  |
| 6. laudābat   | 13. portābant  |
| 7. superābant | 14. parābant   |

## EXERCISE 119

1. *Point out the imperfects by identifying the tense sign;*
2. *Point out the third-person plural verbs by identifying the final personal sign;*
3. *Translate:*

**Note.** All Latin words which end in -nt are VERBS in the THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

- |                      |                       |                        |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. oppugna <b>nt</b> | 7. super <b>nt</b>    | 13. para <b>mus</b>    |
| 2. porta <b>t</b>    | 8. super a <b>t</b>   | 14. occupa <b>nt</b>   |
| 3. pugna <b>nt</b>   | 9. occupa <b>bat</b>  | 15. ora <b>bat</b>     |
| 4. para <b>bat</b>   | 10. porta <b>nt</b>   | 16. lauda <b>batis</b> |
| 5. pugna <b>t</b>    | 11. porta <b>bant</b> | 17. oppugna <b>bat</b> |
| 6. lauda <b>bant</b> | 12. lauda <b>s</b>    | 18. para <b>bās</b>    |

## EXERCISE 120

[Essential]

1. *Add the correct final personal signs;*2. *Translate:*

1. Equites fortes cum magno hostium numero pugnaba
2. Christian! Christum, regem omnium gentium, laudaba
3. Centuriones frumen turn non portaba
4. Altus mons colle superaba.....
5. Populus Romanus victorias legidnum reliquarum laudaba
6. Christian! boni pro fratribus oraba
7. Equitatus Romanus Gallos virtute<sup>1 2 3 4 5</sup> superaba
8. Magnus centurionum numerus in prima acie pugnaba

## EXERCISE 121

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. The slaves were carrying the grain into the towns. 2. The Roman legions were fighting with the tribes of Gaul. 3. The cavalry were conquering a large number of Gauls. 4. The centurion was fighting in the first battle line. 5. Caesar was overcoming the enemy.

## EXERCISE 122

1. *Identify the final personal signs;*2. *Translate:*

- |               |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. laudabam   | 6. parabat    | 11. laudabas  |
| 2. portabat   | 7. portat     | 12. pugnabant |
| 3. laudabatis | 8. superant   | 13. portant   |
| 4. orabat     | 9. oppugnabat | 14. occupabat |
| 5. superat    | 10. pugnabat  | 15. parabant  |

<sup>1</sup> Translate: *in courage.*

## EXERCISE 123

## [Essential Review]

1. What is the gender of: (a) centurid, (b) legiō, (c) mōns? Give the rule.
2. Give the nominative plural of: (a) legiō, (b) virtūs, (c) corpus, (d) gravis.
3. Translate; parse **servis**:

Centuriones servis gladios non dederunt.

5. FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **LAUDO**

The future tense expresses action that WILL take place. Study the meanings in GRAMMAR, NO. 164. Learn the model verb. You need not learn the meanings given in the parentheses. Note that :

1. The future tense is formed on the PRESENT STEM.
2. The ending has the a of the first conjugation.
3. The final personal signs are the same as for the present and the imperfect tenses.
4. The ending contains a tense sign, **bi** (e.g., laud-a-BI-t), which is the sign of the future in the FIRST and SECOND conjugations.

## VOCABULARY

dō, dare, dedi, datus, I, tr,	give
voco, I, tr,	call
interim, adverb	meanwhile
mors, mortis	death
hiberna, hiberndrum	winter quarters

## NOTE

1. Dō forms its perfect stem differently from laudd. Therefore you must memorize the principal parts. It is also peculiar in this, that the a which begins the endings is short throughout the indicative except in the second person singular present indicative active (das).

2. **Hiberna**, like **castra**, is declined only in the plural.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *mortal* wound. Some animals *hibernate* during the winter.  
A *vocation* to the priesthood.

## RELATED LATIN WORD

Maria voċem Christi audivit.

## EXERCISE 124

1. Conjugate the verbs of the vocabulary in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative active.

2. Conjugate in the future indicative active: (a) paro, (b) oc\*, cupō, (c) superb, (d) porto, (e) pugno, (f) ōrb.

## EXERCISE 125 r

1. *Tell what forms these are;*
2. *Translate:*

- |                |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. superābit   | 7. dabis       | 13. laudābimus |
| 2. laudābō     | 8. laudābis    | 14. vocābunt   |
| 3. dabō        | 9. pugnābimus  | 15. superābit  |
| 4. parābunt    | 10. laudābit   | 16. pugnābunt  |
| 5. laudābunt   | 11. laudābitis | 17. dabit      |
| 6. occupābitis | 12. vocābis    | 18. vocābit    |

## EXERCISE 126

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Omnibus gentibus Deus veritatem dabit. 2. Interim imperator centuriones in hiberna vocabit. 3. Deus homines sanctos post mortem in Caelum vocabit. 4. Principes reliquarum gentium propter mortis metum frumentum Romanis dabunt. 5. Servi frumentum in hiberna portabunt. 6. Centurio princeps in hiberna vocabit.

## EXERCISE 127

[Essential]

**Translate:**

1. We shall praise God in heaven. 2. Bad kings will prepare for war. (Omit *jor* in Latin.) 3. You will praise Rome. 4. I shall praise the Lord God of Hosts. (Hosts = armies.) 5. God will give great rewards to all good men. 6. Caesar will call the soldiers into the winter quarters. 7. After the death of Caesar, the Gauls were servants of the Romans. 8. Meanwhile the centurion will call the legions into the battle line.

## EXERCISE 128

[Essential Review]

1. Translate, and explain the case of imperator:

Caesar erat imperator Romanorum.

2. What is the gender of: (a) mors, (b) rex, (c) veritas? Give the rule.

3. Give the ablative singular of: (a) mors, (b) centurid, (c) gravis, (d) senatus, (e) regnum, (f) vox, (g) fides.

## 6. QUESTIONS

## VOCABULARY

ubi, <i>adv.</i>	where?
quis, <i>pronoun</i>	who?
quid, <i>pronoun</i>	what?
cūr, <i>adv.</i>	why?
locus, I { <i>pl.</i> , loca, loco rum}	place
alienus, a, um	{ unfavorable another's foreign

## NOTE

1. The abbreviation *adv.* stands for *adverb*.



2. **Locus** becomes a neuter noun in the plural: **loca**. When **locus** is modified by an adjective the preposition **in** may be omitted with the ablative case.

*In an unfavorable place, loco alieno*

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The politician has *alienated* many of his friends. A *local* election. Some *aliens* are deported by the government.

#### INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS AND PRONOUNS IN QUESTIONS

Questions may be asked in Latin by using interrogative adverbs or pronouns just as in English.

Ubi es? Where are you?

Quis pugnabāt? Who was fighting?

Quid paras? What are you preparing?

Cūr Caesarem laudas? Why do you praise Caesar?

#### EXERCISE 129

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Quis Caesarem post caedem principum Galliae laudabit?
2. Cūr senātum vocās?
3. Ubi sunt hibema hostium?
4. Quis Deum nōn laudat?
5. Ubi sunt cōpiae Rōmānae?
6. Cūr locō aliēnō castra posuerunt?
7. Cūr urbēs aliēnās occupat?
8. Cūr gentēs aliēnae bellum parabant?
9. Cur omnia loca occupabat?

#### EXERCISE 130

*Translate:*

1. Why were the soldiers fighting in an unfavorable place?
2. Who will surpass the great general Caesar?
3. What were they preparing?
4. Who is seizing foreign harbors and cities?
5. Where will they fight at dawn?
6. A man eager for fame does not praise another's courage.

## EXERCISE 131

[Essential]

/. *Translate;*2. *Write Latin answers for all the questions to which no answers are given:*

1. Cūr Deum laudamūs?  
*Ans.* Deum laudamūs quod Deus bonus est et Dominus Caeli et terrae.
2. Cūr Rōmānī cum Gallis pugnabānt ?  
*Ans.* Rōmānī cum Gallis propter caedem centurionum pugnabant.
3. Cūr Caesarem Rōmānī laudabānt?
4. Cūr Christianī! Spiritum Sanctum laudant?
5. Cūr Christianī! Mariam laudant ?
6. Cūr orāmus in nomīne Jesū Christi ?
7. Quis magnam frumentī copiam portabat ?  
*Ans.* Servus magnam frumentī copiam portabat.
8. Quid parat dux bonus ?  
*Ans.* Dux bonus parat gladios et frumentī copiam.
9. Quis pro dūce bono pugnabit ?
10. Quis servum vocabat?  
*Ans.* Dominus servum vocabat.
11. Quis erat imperatōr Rōmāndrum in Gallia?
12. Quis magna praemia hominibus bonis dabit?
13. Quid in bello occupant duces boni?
14. Quis est Christus ?
15. Quis drat pro omnibus hominibus?
16. Ubi nunc drat Maria?  
*Ans.* Maria nunc drat in Caelo.
17. Ubi est Deus?  
*Ans.* Deus est in Caelo et terra et omni loco.
18. Ubi Caesar pugnabat?
19. Ubi sunt impedimenta Rōmānorum?
20. Ubi Deus praemium hominibus sanctis post mortem dabit ?

7. THE INTERROGATIVE PARTICLE *-NE*

When no interrogative adverb or pronoun is used, questions may be asked by putting the most emphatic word (generally the VERB) first and adding *-NE*.

*Was he praising Caesar?* Laudabantne Caesarem?

*Do you fight for the king?* Pugnabantne pro rege?

*Were they friends of the Romans?* Erantne amici Romano rum?

## VOCABULARY

oratio, orationis	{ speech prayer
semper, adv.	always
sicut, conj.	as
in principio	in the beginning
in saecula saeculorum	{ world without end forever
-ne	particle used in questions

## NOTE

Oratio means *prayer* only in Christian Latin.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The priest reads the *orations* after the Kyrie Eleison.

## RELATED LATIN WORD

Marla pro omnibus hominibus drat.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review neuter nouns of the third declension in the Mastery Review Vocabulary (pages 91-98).

## EXERCISE 132

[Essential Drill]

*Translate:*

1. Pugnabantne semper Romani? 2. Parabantne f rumen turn post longum iter? 3. Montes et silvas et flumina Galliae lauda-

bids. 4. Pugnantne in itinere Rōmāni cum Gallis? 5. Erantne post bellum multa corpora in fluminibus et silvis? 6. Suntne impedimenta et legiōēs in agmine? 7. Laudābāsne nōmen Mariae? 8. Propter vulnera longum iter nōn fecerunt. 9. Superatne exercitus Rōmānus Gallōs? 10. Orabantne semper hominēs sanci? 11. Lēgem et veritatem Christi semper laudābō. 12. Datne imperātor signum? 13. Dantne Rōmāni cōpiam frūmenti Gallis post orationem principis? 14. Vocābitne primā lūce centurio equites? 15. Orantne Christiani in nomine Christi? 16. Feceruntne semper Galli impetum in agmina Romandrū? 17. Eratne magnus pōns in alto flumine? 18. Oppugnantne Galli hiberna? 19. Victōriam et glōriam Christi laudābāmus. 20. Laudābatne imperātor centuridnem propter magnam virtutem et multa vulnera? 21. Dantne rēgēs magna praemia amicis? 22. Occupābitne colēs? 23. Interim, propter grātiā Caesaris, Galli frūmentum in hiberna portant. 24. Orābatne nauta propter vulnerum metum? 25. Parābatne dux frūmentum et gladiōs? 26. Christum, Rēgem glōriae, laudābimus. 27. Quis loca occupābat? 28. Pugnatne equitatus in silvis? 29. Porfabantne servi magnum gladiōrum numerum? 30. Propter metum vulnerum et mortis, nautae et milites in bellō semper orant. 31. Deus orationēs multōrum Christiānōrum audivit. 32. Pugnantne equitēs loco alieno et angusto?

### ORATIO CHRISTIANA "DOXOLOGIA"

A doxology is a prayer in which "glory" is offered to the Blessed Trinity. Of the many doxologies which date from very early Christian times the following is most familiar:

Glōria Patri et Filio et Spiritui Sancto,<sup>1</sup>

Sicut erat in principio et nunc et semper et in saecula saeculōrum. Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sit, be, or may, be, is understood in the first line. Supply be in translation.

## EXERCISE 133

*Translate:*

1. Do you always praise the names of Jesus and Mary ? 2. Shall we praise God in heaven? 3. Christians pray always, as Christ advised<sup>1</sup> His<sup>2</sup> friends. 4. On account of the prayers of Christians, God will give grace to many men. 5. On account of the general's speech, the chiefs of the tribes will prepare (for) war. 6. In the beginning of the war the Romans were conquering the enemy. 7. Are there many long and renowned rivers in America?<sup>3</sup> 8. Was the journey long and difficult? 9. On account of the many serious wounds of the soldiers, the army made<sup>4</sup> a short march into winter quarters. 10. Was the route full of dangers? 11. Were the columns of Caesar safe in Gaul? 12. Will God call all good men into heaven after death? 13. Was the place unfavorable? 14. What were the Roman slaves begging (for) ?<sup>5</sup> 15. Was there a large number of slaves in the Roman Empire? 16. Were the Romans conquering all the tribes of Gaul? 17. The slaves were carrying the body of the chief. 18. Will American<sup>6</sup> sailors and soldiers seize foreign harbors and cities? 19. A Roman column was assaulting the camp. 20. Meanwhile, where were the remaining Gauls fighting?

---

<sup>1</sup> *advised*: monuit.

<sup>2</sup> *his*: Suus, a, um.

<sup>3</sup> *America*: America, ae.

<sup>4</sup> *made*: fecit.

<sup>5</sup> Omit *jor* in Latin.

• *American*: Americanus, a, um.

## LESSON 10: THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *MONE*<sup>6</sup>

The principal parts of regular verbs of the second conjugation are formed by dropping the -ed of the first person present indicative and adding **-erē, -ui, -itus**.<sup>1</sup>

mon-**eo**, mon-**ere**, mon-**ui**, mon-**itus**

hab-**ed**, hab-**ere**, hab-**ui**, hab-**itus**

Many second-conjugation verbs, however, are irregular in their principal parts. These will be written out in full in the vocabularies and must be memorized. But the present infinitive active ALWAYS ends in -ERĒ (with the first e long!).

ALL VERBS WHOSE PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE  
ENDS IN **-ERĒ** BELONG TO THE SECOND  
CONJUGATION.

### VOCABULARY

moned, 2, <i>tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{warn} \\ \textit{advise} \end{array} \right.$
timed, timere, timui, 2, <i>tr.</i>	<i>fear</i>
terreo, 2, <i>tr.</i>	<i>terrify</i>
habed, 2, <i>tr.</i>	<i>have</i>
arma, armdrum	<i>arms</i>

### NOTE

1. **Timed** has no fourth principal part.
2. **Arma** is a neuter plural of the second declension.

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *timorous* soul; a *timid* person; *rearmament*.

---

<sup>1</sup> When the verb is intransitive, the fourth principal part ends in -itum.

Now that you know the model *laudo*, *monēo* is quite easy:

1. Find the stem by dropping the ending of the present infinitive active, thus: *monere*, STEM: *mon-*.
2. Add *-eo* for the first person present indicative active.
3. For the other endings use the endings of the first conjugation but change the first *a* of the endings to *e*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Write out the present, imperfect, and future of *monēo* without looking in the book. Then compare with the model, GRAMMAR, NOS. 16S, 168, and 171. Learn the model.

#### EXERCISE 134

1. Why do the verbs in the vocabulary belong to the *second* conjugation?
2. Give the full principal parts of these verbs.
3. Write the third person singular and third person plural of the present, imperfect, and future of these verbs.

#### EXERCISE 135

[Drill on Present Tense]

1. *Tell what forms these are;*
2. *Give three English meanings for each form:*

1. <i>timet</i>	5. <i>monētis</i>	9. <i>monēmus</i>
2. <i>monēō</i>	6. <i>monet</i>	10. <i>monent</i>
3. <i>monēs</i>	7. <i>habet</i>	11. <i>terret</i>
4. <i>terrent</i>	8. <i>timent</i>	12. <i>habent</i>

#### EXERCISE 136

[Drill on Imperfect Tense]

1. *Tell what forms these are;*
2. *Translate:*

1. <i>monēbant</i>	5. <i>timebant</i>	9. <i>monēbās</i>
2. <i>terrebāt</i>	6. <i>monēbātis</i>	10. <i>monēbat</i>
3. <i>monēbām</i>	7. <i>monēbāmus</i>	11. <i>terrebant</i>
4. <i>habēbant</i>	8. <i>timebat</i>	12. <i>habebat</i>

## EXERCISE 137

[Drill on Future Tense]

1. *Tell what forms these are;*2. *Translate:*

- |             |              |              |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. monebunt | 4. monebitis | 7. habebit   |
| 2. timebō   | 5. monebit   | 8. terrebunt |
| 3. monebis  | 6. monebo    | 9. timebimus |

## EXERCISE 138

*Translate:*

1. Times. 2. Ducem monebit. 3. Hostes terrebant. 4. Fratrem monebant. 5. Imperium habent. 6. Populum terrent. 7. Partem habebat. 8. Equitatum timebitis.

## EXERCISE 139

1. *Fill in the required personal signs;*2. *Translate:*

1. Clamor hostium milites Romano non terre, quod Romani fortes sunt.
2. Multi homines in pace fortes sunt; in bello autem hostes timebu
3. Servi propter metum dominum monebu
4. Metus Dei homines maids terre
5. Propter gratiam Caesaris Galli Romanos moneba.
6. Omnes homines vulnera et mortem time
7. Legiones magnam armorum copiam habeba

## EXERCISE 140

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Omnes homines res difficiles timent. 2. Propter rem gravem centuriones imperatorem monebunt. 3. Clamor hostium locis difficilibus et angustis legiones terret. 4. Rex malus res alienas habet. 5. Populus Romanus pericula gravia et res difficiles non timebat. 6. Multae gentes arma non habent.



## EXERCISE 141

[Essential Review]

1. Give the nominative plural of: (a) *legiō*, (b) *flūmen*, (c) *corpus*, (d) *centurio*, (e) *facilis*.
2. Translate: They are eager for victory and renown.
3. Translate; explain the case of *castra*:

*Frumentum in castra portabat.*

## EXERCISE 142

[Honor Work]

## PEARL HARBOR

The enemy were always preparing (for) war because they were eager for empire and fame and victory. However, they were fearing the American<sup>1</sup> forces; they were fearing the American<sup>1</sup> sailors and soldiers. The leading men of the enemy were warning and terrifying the nation: "The Americans<sup>2</sup> are eager for empire. They have a large supply of arms and a large number of sailors and soldiers. They will attack the harbors and the towns. And so we shall prepare a supply of arms and of all things. We shall fight with the legions of the enemy and we shall conquer." And so they were preparing (for) war.

In America,<sup>3</sup> however, there was peace. The American<sup>1</sup> people were not eager for war; the generals were not desirous of the glory of war. Not many leading men were warning the Senate and the people.

On December 7, 1941,<sup>4</sup> the enemy made an attack on Pearl<sup>5</sup> Harbor. They killed many sailors and soldiers. There was war! Now, however, we are conquering the enemy; we are terrifying the tribes of Japan.<sup>6</sup> Brave sailors and soldiers are fighting for

---

<sup>1</sup> *American*: *Americanus*, a, um.

<sup>2</sup> *Americans*: *Americani* or *Americanorum*.

<sup>3</sup> *America*: *America*, ae.

<sup>4</sup> *December 7, 1941*: ante diem septimum Idus Decembres, 1941.

<sup>5</sup> *Pearl*: *Margaritarius*, a, um.

<sup>6</sup> *Japan*: *Japonia*, ae.

America. They are fighting in places unfavorable and full of great dangers; but they are eager now for victory, the reward of courage. They will conquer the enemy!

## EXERCISE 143

*Complete these sentences with a Latin verb describing the action in the pictures:*

1. Rōmāni urbem
2. Servi gladios
3. Caesar servum
4. Equites hostes
5. Servus principem
6. Rōmāni cum Gallis



1



2



3



4



5



6

## LESSON 11: PERSONAL PRONOUNS

1. Pronouns of the FIRST person are those which refer to the SPEAKER OR WRITER. In English they are: I (ME), WE (US).

2. Pronouns of the SECOND person are those which refer to the person spoken TO. In English they are: YOU (THOU, THEE, YE).

3. Pronouns of the THIRD person are those which refer to the person or thing spoken or written ABOUT. In English they are: HE (HIM), SHE (HER), IT, THEY (THEM).

### 1. PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the declension of **ego**, *I*, and **nōs**, *we*, GRAMMAR, NO. 123. Study the English meanings carefully.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>ego</b> , <i>mei</i>	<i>I</i>
<b>nōs</b> , <i>nostri</i>	<i>we</i>
<b>video</b> , <i>viderē</i> , <b>vidi</b> , <i>visus</i> , <b>2, tr.</b>	<i>see</i>
<b>saepe</b> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>often</i>

#### NOTE

**Video** forms its principal parts differently from the model **moned**. Memorize all the parts given here.

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

An inflated *ego*. Napoleon was *egotistical*. *Visual* aids. The shepherds saw a *vision* of angels.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review the forms of **sum**, present tense, GRAMMAR, NO. 346.

## EXERCISE 144

1. *Tell what forms these are;*
2. *Translate:*

1. videt	S. mihi	9. nōs
2. mei	6. videbat	10. vident
3. videbimus	7. nōbis	11. videbit
4. ego	8. videbant	12. mē

## EXERCISE 145

[Essential]

AN IMAGINARY LETTER FROM A CENTURION NAMED MARCUS,  
SERVING WITH CAESAR IN GAUL, TO HIS MOTHER

*Translate:*

Marcus Centurid Rōmānus Matrī  
Salutem Dat.<sup>1</sup>

Ego nunc cum exercitū in Galliā sum. Magnus exercitus in Galliā est quod Galli cum Rōmānis pugnant. Caesar, homō fortis, est imperātor omnium legidnum. Caesarem ego laudō quod dux bonus est—omnia<sup>2</sup> videt; omnia<sup>2</sup> parat.

Ego in periculō nunc nōn sum. Nōs in castris sumus. Hostēs castra Rōmāna nōn oppugnant quod fortēs nōn sunt. Galba<sup>3</sup> mēcum in castris est. Homo bōnus est et mihi amicus.

Nōs saepe pugnābāmus cum Gallis et superābāmus. Itaque nunc multi Galli servi sunt et nōbiscum in castris sunt. Nōbis frūmentum dant. Impedimenta in castra portant et multa<sup>3</sup> rēs nōbis parant.

Post primam victoriām me Cāesar in castris propter virtutem

<sup>1</sup> Roman letters frequently opened with the greeting salutem dat, gives greeting, and closed with vale, farewell (good-by).

<sup>2</sup> Adjectives are sometimes used as nouns. Omnia is so used here and means all things or everything.

<sup>3</sup>Galba, ae: Galba (a Roman proper name).



MARCUS

et iidem laudābat.<sup>1</sup> Primā lūce hostēs in nōs impetum fecērunt. Et ego et Galba in primā aciē pugnābāmus, et multi Galli nōbiscum pugnābant, sed nōs nōn terrēbant, nōn superābant. Caesar nōs vidēbat. Itaque Caesar nōs propter virtūtem laudābat. Magnam glōriam ego nunc habeo, et post bellum Caesar mihi magnum praemium dabit. Laudāsne filium? Vale!<sup>2</sup>

## EXERCISE 146

1. Express all the italicized pronouns;
2. Translate:

1. He is warning *me*. 2. *We* shall warn the Senate and the leading men. 3. *I* am seizing the hill, but Caesar is seizing the bridge. 4. He sees *us*. 5. *I* praise the Holy Spirit. 6. They are fighting on *my* behalf.<sup>3</sup> 7. He is fighting with *me*. 8. The Gauls were giving *us* rewards. 9. Will he give *me* a reward? 10. They were fighting with *us*. 11. The Christians are praying for *me*. 12. Holy Mary prays for *us*. 13. *We* shall see the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit in heaven. 14. Many brave soldiers are fighting with *me*. 15. Does God give *us* grace?

<sup>1</sup> Polybius, a Greek historian writing in the second century B. C., speaks thus of the encouragement given young soldiers in the Roman army: "After a battle in which some of them have distinguished themselves, the general calls an assembly of the troops, and bringing forward those whom he considers to have displayed conspicuous valor, first of all speaks in laudatory terms of the courageous deeds of each and of anything else in their previous conduct which deserves commendation, and afterwards distributes . . . rewards."—From Grant Showerman: *Rome and the Romans*. By permission of The Macmillan Company, Publishers.

<sup>2</sup> See Note 1 on page 126.

<sup>3</sup> Translate: *on behalf of me*.

## 2. PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the declension of **tu**,<sup>1</sup> *you*, and **vōa**, *you*, GRAMMAR, NO. 124. Study the English meanings carefully. Notice that the English uses the SAME forms for the singular and plural while the Latin has different forms.

## VOCABULARY

<b>tū</b> , <i>tu</i>	<i>you</i> (sing.)
<b>vōs</b> , <i>vestri</i>	<i>you</i> (pl.)
<b>tened</b> , <i>tenēre</i> , <i>tenui</i> , <i>tentus</i> , 2, <i>tr.</i> <i>hold</i>	
<b>moved</b> , <i>moverē</i> , <i>movi</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>motus</i> , 2, <i>tr.</i> <i>move</i>	
<b>tamen</b> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>nevertheless</i>
<b>neque</b> , <i>conj.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nor} \\ \text{and . . . not} \end{array} \right.$

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Napoleon possessed a *tenacious* and indomitable will. *Motion* pictures.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY

<b>imperator</b> , <i>imperatoris</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{commander in chief} \\ \text{general} \\ \text{emperor}^* \end{array} \right.$
---------------------------------------	--

## EXERCISE 147

1. *Translate;*
2. *Express the italicized pronouns:*

1. *I* shall give *you* (sing.) a reward. 2. The Lord fights for *you* (pl.). 3. God will give *you* (pl.) a reward, heaven. 4. *I* was warning *you* (sing.). 5. The master is calling *you* (sing.). 6. The Lord is with *you* (sing.). 7. *You* (pl.) will praise the victory of Christ. 8. *You* (sing.) will warn the leader. 9. Does the fear of death move *you* (sing.)? 10. *We* shall pray for *you* (pl.).

<sup>1</sup> **Imperator** in nonmilitary language is to be translated as *emperor*.

## EXERCISE 148

AN EXAMINATION OF PROFESSED CHRISTIANS  
BY A ROMAN JUDGE<sup>1</sup>

*The proconsul, the judge, is seated. A group of Christians is brought in.*

PROCONSUL (*addressing the first of the group*). Esne tū Christianus?

CHRISTIAN. Ego Christianus sum.

PROCONSUL (*addressing a second Christian*). Et tū—esne tū Christianus?

SECOND CHRISTIAN. Christianus et<sup>2</sup> \* <sup>4</sup> ego sum. Omnes nos Christiani sumus.

PROCONSUL. Quid? Vos omnes Christiani estis?

FIRST CHRISTIAN. Sumus.

PROCONSUL. Cur vos deos Romanorum non laudatis?

FIRST CHRISTIAN. Nos deos Romanorum non laudamus quod ver<sup>18</sup> non sunt.

PROCONSUL. Vos monēo! Si deos Romanorum laudabitis, praemia vobis dabo—(*threateningly*) sed . . .

SECOND CHRISTIAN. Metus mortis et vulnere nos non movet. Nos laudamus Dominum Caeli et terrae, “Regem Regum et Imperatorem Omnium Gentium.”<sup>5</sup> \* \* Christus pro nobis orabat.\* Gratia Christi in nobis est. Itaque quid nos terrebis? Te non timeamus.

PROCONSUL (*scornfully*). Christus! Quis est Christus? Romani Christum occiderunt quod malus homo erat.

---

<sup>1</sup>This is an imaginary account, but much of it has been suggested by actual trials as recorded in the authentic *Acts* of the early martyrs.

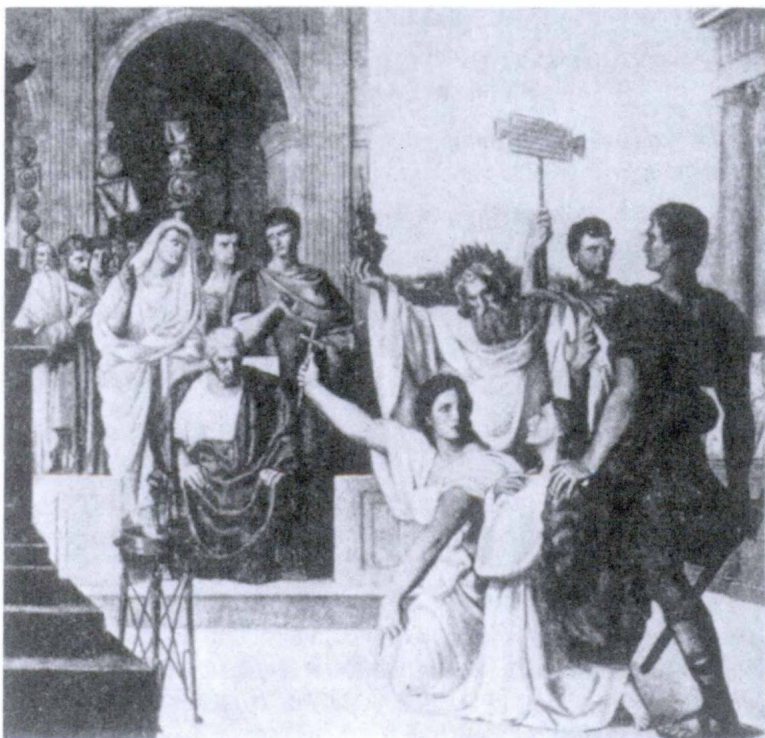
<sup>1</sup> Et here means *also*.

• v<sup>1</sup>ins, a, um: true.

<sup>4</sup> s<sup>1</sup>: if.

<sup>5</sup> These words were actually said at Carthage by a Christian martyr named Speratus. Saturninus was the examining official.

• At the Last Supper Christ expressly prayed for all believers: “Yet not for these [the Apostles] only do I pray, but for those also who through their word are to believe in Me” (John 17:20-21).



"CHRISTUS\* NOS IN CAELUM VOCAT."

FIRST CHRISTIAN. Christus est Filius Dei et tamen frater omnium hominum.

PROCONSUL (*impatiently*). Cuī vōs imperatōrem Rōmānum nōn laudātis?

FIRST CHRISTIAN. Nōs semper imperatōrem Rōmānum laudāmus sed caedem hominum sāctōrum nōn laudāmus neque laudābimus. Tamen pro imperatōre semper ōrāmus et ōrābimus. Nōs Christiān!—sicut Christus nōs monebat—pro omnibus hominibus, pro regibus, principibus, militibus, servis oramuſ.

PROCONSUL. Vōs tamen monēo! Post mortem (*sarcastically*) quid vōs habebitis?



FIRST CHRISTIAN. Tū nōs nōn movebis. Fidem et veritatem Christi nōs tenemus et semper tenebimus. Christus est salus hominum. In Christo est spēs omnium gentium. Post mortem magnum praemium nōbis dabit; nōs cum Christo in Caelo Patrem et Filium et Spiritum Sanctum videbimūs in saecula saeculorum.

THE OTHER CHRISTIANS. Amen!

PROCONSUL. Ubi est Deus Christiānōrum? Ego Deum Christiānōrum nōn videbām neque video.

SECOND CHRISTIAN. In omni loco est sed nunc nōs Deum nōn videmus. Deus corpus nōn est. Tamen post mortem tū videbis, neque tibi praemium dabit.

PROCONSUL (angrily/ Mehercule!<sup>1</sup> Monetisne vōs mē? Metus Dei Christiānōrum mē nōn terret neque terrebit. (*Solemnly.*) Ego autem imperium habeo! Vōs terrebunt militum Rōmānbrum gladii!

CHRISTIANS. Gladius nōs nōn terret neque imperium mundi. Imperium autem Dei nos terret et movet. In Deo est salus.

PROCONSUL (*firmly*). Estisne omnes Christiani!?

CHRISTIANS (*loudly*). Nos sumus Christiani! omnes.

PROCONSUL. Itaque omnes hōs<sup>2</sup> Christiānōs “gladio animadvert! placet.”<sup>3</sup>

CHRISTIANS. Deo gratias! Pro te orabimus. (*The Christians are taken away.*) Christus nos in Caelum vocat I

### EXERCISE 149

[Essential Review]

1. What is the rule for accent in Latin?
2. Indicate the accent in these words and explain: (a) laudabat, (b) impedimenta.
3. Translate: There are dangers in the forest.

<sup>1</sup> Mehercule!: *By Hercides!* (a common Roman exclamation).

<sup>2</sup> hōs: *these*.

<sup>3</sup> This is a technical legal phrase. “It is decreed that all these Christians be punished by the sword.”

DOMINUS MEUS,<sup>1</sup> ET DEUS MEUS<sup>1</sup>

### 3. PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON

When used as the personal pronoun of the third person, *is*, *ea*, *id* has the meaning *He*, *she*, or *it*. Since Latin pronouns must agree in GENDER and NUMBER with the Latin words to which they refer, a masculine or feminine Latin form is often translated by the English *it*.

*He saw the army and jeered it. Vidit exercitum et timuit eum.*

ASSIGNMENT. Learn the declension of *is*, *ea*, *id*, *he*, *she*, *it* and *ei*, *eae*, *ea*, *they*, *those*, GRAMMAR, NOS. 128-129. Study the English meanings carefully. Note that the plural can be formed by adding the endings of *magni*, *ae*, *a* to the stem *e-*. Study the rule for agreement of pronouns in GRAMMAR, NO. 479.

---

<sup>1</sup> *meus*, *a*, *um*: *my*. (These were the words uttered by St. Thomas when he saw the risen Savior.)

## VOCABULARY

is, ea, id	he, she, it
sustineo, <i>sustinerē</i> , sustinui,	{ sustain withstand
sustentus, 2, tr.	
<i>finēs</i> , finium, m.	territory

## NOTE

**Fine**s is a *plural* noun of the third declension.

## RELATED LATIN WORDS

**Teneo**; finitimus.

## EXERCISE 150

1. Tell what forms these are;
2. Translate:

1. sustinebat	3. videbat	5. sustinebant	7. sustinent
2. sustinet	4. habebant	6. sustinebit	8. habemus

## EXERCISE 151

[Essential]

1. Translate;
2. Point out the words to which the italicized pronouns refer and explain the agreement:

1. Caesarem laudabās. Itaque *is* tibi praemium dabit. 2. Caesar agmen hostium nōn videt. Monēbisne *eum*? 3. Maria sancta erat. Itaque Deus *ei* praemium dedit. 4. Hostēs in hiberna impetum fecerunt. Milites autem fortes impetum *edrum* sustinebant. 5. Maria est Mater Dei. Itaque *earn* Christian! laudamūs. 6. Amicus est in periculo. Itaque prō *eō* dābimus. 7. Hostēs oppidum occupant. Tenēbuntne *id*? 8. Hostēs bellum parant, sed impetum *eōrum* sustinebimus. 9. Caesar duces Galldrum in hiberna vocat; sed *ei* non sūnt amici senatus et pōpuli Romani. 10. Matrēs bonae sunt. Virtūs *eārum* magna est. Nōs *eās* semper laudāmus, et Deus *eis* magna praemia dabit. 11. Caesar est imperator Romānus, sed senatus virtū *ejus* non laudat.

12. Caesar oppidum Galldrum occupābit, sed tu *eds* nōn monēbis. 13. Multi hominēs sāncti sunt. *Eis* Deus praemia dabit. 14. Christus est filius Mariae et nunc in Caeld cum *eā* est. 15. Milites semper in pēriculō sunt. Itaque prō *eis* dīamus. 16. Caesar in castris est. *Ei* servus gladium dat. 17. Omnēs Galli in armis sunt. Spem victōriae in virtūte posuērunt. Equitēs *edrum* fortēs sunt. Cōpia frūmenti in oppidis *edrum* est. Et pontēs et colies tenent. *Ea* Caesar audivit; eds tamen non timet.

## EXERCISE 152

1. Translate;

2. Express all the italicized pronouns:

*Warning.* Remember that the pronoun must agree in *gender* and *number* with the *Latin* word to which it refers.

1. The Senate praises Caesar because *he* fights for the Roman people in the territory of the Gauls. 2. The roads are good. The Romans constructed *them*. 3. Caesar was fighting with the Gauls in *their* territory. He was seizing *their* towns and cities. The Gauls were not withstanding *his* attacks. 4. *We* praise Christ and Mary, *His* mother. *She* was holy. God gave *her* a great reward. All holy men will see *her* and *her* Son in heaven. *They* will all pray with *her* for *us*. 5. The Gauls were not friends of the Romans. The Gauls were not giving *them* grain, and they were not praising *them*. The Gauls were fighting with *them*. 6. Christ is the light of the world and the salvation of all men. We praise *Him* now on earth, and with *Him* we shall praise God in heaven forever.

7. We praise the Roman legions on account of *their* victories. *They* were fighting for the Senate and the Roman people. The Gauls were fighting with *them* but *they* conquered the Gauls. Caesar was *their* commander in chief and was praising *them* on account of *their* courage and reliability. Therefore the Senate gave *them* great rewards. 8. The enemy are carrying grain and arms into the town. Will *they* hold *it*? 9. The Gauls are preparing a camp. In *it* they will fight for the common welfare of Gaul. Nevertheless they will not hold *it*. Caesar will overcome *them* and seize

- it. 10. The winter quarters of the Romans were in the territory of the enemy. The enemy were attacking and were seizing *them*.  
 11. The Gauls often made an attack on the Roman columns, but the Romans were withstanding *their* attacks.

### SUSTINEŌ ĀLĀS<sup>1</sup>

(Motto of the Technical Ground Command of the  
U.S. Army Air Corps)

#### 4. DIRECT REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

*We pray for OURSELVES.*

*A good man does not praise HIMSELF.*

In these sentences the pronouns *himself* and *ourselves* REFER BACK to the subject; that is, they stand for the SAME person (or persons) as the SUBJECT.

A PRONOUN THAT REFERS BACK TO THE SUBJECT OF ITS OWN CLAUSE IS CALLED A DIRECT REFLEXIVE.

The oblique cases (the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative) of the regular pronouns which you have learned, **ego**, **nōs**, **tū**, **vōs**, are used as the DIRECT REFLEXIVES of the FIRST and SECOND persons.

*We pray for ourselves. Pro nobis orāmus.*

But when a pronoun of the THIRD PERSON refers back to the subject of its own clause, the proper form of *sui* must be used instead of *is*, *ea*, *id*.

*A good man does not praise himself. Homo bonus se non laudat.*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the declension of **sui**, GRAMMAR, No. 127. Notice that each form can mean *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *themselves* according to the MEANING of the word to which it refers.

<sup>1</sup> āla, ae: wing.



JESUS CHRISTUS, DEUS ET HOMO

**Christ is the model of all Christian virtues. "Come," He said, "follow Me." We follow Him by imitating His virtues and thus becoming, as the Saints did, "other Christs."**

Ei se laudabānt. *They were praising themselves.*

Marla se non laudat. *Mary does not praise herself.*

Caesar se laudabāt. *Caesar was praising himself.*

Legio se laudabāt. *The legion was praising itself.*

## VOCABULARY

sui	{ himself herself itself themselves
etiam, adv.	also
enim, conj., postp.	for

## EXERCISE 153

*Translate:*

1. We often pray for ourselves. 2. He prays for himself.
3. You pray for yourself. 4. They pray for themselves. 5. They praise him. 6. The legion prays for itself. 7. I pray for myself.
8. He sees them. 9. You pray for yourselves. 10. She does not praise him. 11. She prays for herself. 12. We have the grace of God in us.

## EXERCISE 154

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Holy men do not praise themselves. 2. Mothers praise not themselves but their sons. (Omit *their* in translating.) 3. Men often do not see themselves as we see them. 4. Christians often pray for themselves and for all men. For God gives them and all men grace on account, of their prayers. 5. Caesar was not praising himself. 6. The legion also was praising itself. 7. Now Mary does not pray for herself but for us, for she is in heaven and is also the mother of all men. 8. The Gauls often killed themselves after the victories of the Romans.

## EXERCISE 155

[Essential]

## VIRTUS ROMANA ET VIRTUS CHRISTIANA

The Romans had many virtues and the best of the Romans were upright and idealistic men. Among these was the famous Roman orator and politician, Marcus Tullius Cicero. But they were not Christians and therefore the great Christian virtue of humility was unknown to them. They did not, of course, have our personal devotion to Christ nor our loving submission to God. Their ideal was a natural one, good in many ways, but far inferior to the supernatural ideal which shines forth in our Master and our Model, Jesus Christ

1. *Translate;*
2. *Point out the words to which the italicized pronouns refer and explain your translation of these pronouns:*

Mārcus Tullius Cicero, *orātor*<sup>1</sup> magnus et bonus, vērītātem et virtutē saepe laudābat. De<sup>2</sup> *virtute*<sup>4</sup> "Virtus propter sē," inquit,<sup>8</sup> "laudātur."\* In orationibus homines bonds saepe laudābat, maids autem nōn laudābat. Multa pericula sustinēbat; mortem et gladiōs nōn timebat; nomēn popull Romanī semper laudabat.

Cicero tamen Christianus nōn erat. (Post *ējus* mortem<sup>5</sup> Christus in terram venit.) Itaque Cicero, glōriae cupidus, sē saepe laudābat. Omnes Rōmānī saepe sē laudābant. Senatus sē laudābat. Etiam imperatores et duces Rōmānī sē laudābant. Homines sancti autem nōn sē sed Deum laudant, sicut Maria, Mater omnium Christianorum, sē nōn laudabat. Ea post Annuntiatiōnem<sup>6</sup> orābat :

---

<sup>1</sup> *orātor, oratoris: an orator (Cf. oratio).*

<sup>2</sup> *dē, prep. v. abl.: concerning.*

<sup>8</sup> *inquit: he said.*

<sup>4</sup> *laudātor: is praised.*

<sup>5</sup> *Cicero lived 106-43 B. C.*

\* *Annuntiatio, Annuntiationis: the Annunciation by the Angel Gabriel.*



Magnificat<sup>1</sup> anima<sup>2</sup> mea Dominum  
 .... quia<sup>3</sup> fecit<sup>4</sup> \*<sup>6</sup> mihi magna ....  
 et sanctum nomen ejus (est).

Cicerō et omnes Rōmāni spem in se posuerunt. Christiān! autem spem non in se sed in gratia Christi ponunt.®

Cicerō multa et gravia pericula sustinebat quod et bonus erat et glōriae cupidus. Christiāni autem pericula sustinent quod Christum secum habent. Christiāni enim Jesum Christum in se "portant." Itaque nomen Christiānorum erat etiam "Christophori."®

---

<sup>1</sup> magnificat: *doth magnify.*

<sup>2</sup> anima mea: *my soul.*

<sup>3</sup> quia = quod.

<sup>4</sup> fecit: *he has done.*

<sup>6</sup> ponunt: *place.*

<sup>6</sup> Christophorus is from a Greek word meaning "Christ-bearer." Our name Christopher is derived from this.

## LESSON 12: PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

### 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

The principal parts of verbs of the third conjugation must be memorized from the vocabularies. There is no general rule for their formation.

The present infinitive active, however, always ends in **-ere** (with the first **e** *short*!). This is the sign of the third conjugation.

How then can you tell the difference between the second and the third conjugation?

#### EXERCISE 156

*Tell what conjugation each of these infinitives belongs to:*

- |                     |                     |                    |
|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <b>dēfendere</b> | 5. <b>gerere</b>    | 9. <b>dare</b>     |
| 2. <b>parāre</b>    | 6. <b>pugnāre</b>   | 10. <b>movēre</b>  |
| 3. <b>monēre</b>    | 7. <b>sustinēre</b> | 11. <b>mittere</b> |
| 4. <b>dūcere</b>    | 8. <b>instruere</b> | 12. <b>terre</b>   |

### 2. PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *MITT*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the model for the present indicative active in GRAMMAR, NO. 166. Note that:

1. The final personal signs are the same as for the other conjugations.
2. The third person plural has **U** in the ending.

#### VOCABULARY

**dūcō, dūcere, duxī, ductus, 3, tr.**

**gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, 3, tr.**

**{ lead**  
**{ guide**  
**{ carry**  
**{ carry on**  
**{ wage (w. bellum)**

dēfēdo, dēfēdere, defendī!, defensūs, 3, tr.

defend

instruo, instruere, instruxi, instructus, 3, tr.

{ draw up  
equip

mitto, mittere, misi, missus, 3, tr.

send

fortiter, adv.

{ bravely  
strongly

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

What is the difference between a *missive* and a *missile*? It is safer to build *viaducts* over railroad tracks. St. Francis Xavier was a great Catholic *missionary*. St. Francis Borgia was the *Duke* of Gandia before he became a Jesuit.

### RELATED LATIN WORDS

Christus est dux omnium hominum. Caesar erat fortis.

### EXERCISE 157

1. Why do all the verbs in the vocabulary belong to the third conjugation?
2. Conjugate mitto and ducō throughout the present; give three meanings for each form.
3. Give the third person, singular and plural, present of:  
(a) gerō, (b) dēfēdo, (c) instruo.

### EXERCISE 158

1. Pick out the third persons plural by the final personal signs;
2. Translate, giving three meanings for each form:
 

1. dēfēdunt	7. gerunt	13. mittimus
2. mittis	8. dūcit	14. instruunt
3. dēfendit	9. instruit	15. mittitis
4. mittunt	10. dēfendimus	16. dēfendis
5. dūcunt	11. mitto	17. dūcimus
6. mittit	12. gerit	18. geris

## EXERCISE 159

[Essential]

## A SHORT SHORT-STORY—A ROMAN “SPOTTER”

1. Miles Rōmānus hostēs videt. Hostes autem eum non vident.
2. Miles servum in castra mittit.
3. Servus Caesarem in castris monet. “Hostēs in flumine sunt; periculum nobis est!”
4. Caesar duces et centuriones vocat.
5. Centuriones milites vocant. Eds pro castris instruunt.
6. Caesar milites ducit. “Hostes nos terrebimus! Fortiter pugnabimus!”
7. Interim hostes militem Rōmānum vident. Is autem se fortiter defendit.
8. Vident hostes legionem et Caesarem. Metus Caesaris eos terret. “Caesar est! Superabit nos! Periculum est!” Principes hostium copias instruunt. Se defendunt.
9. Rōmani rem fortiter gerunt et hostes superant. Hostes se Caesari dant.
10. Caesar milites et hostes in castra ducit; omnes milites instruit et laudat.

## EXERCISE 160

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. The Roman legions defend themselves bravely because they are eager for the glory of war.
2. Caesar is leading the army into the territory of the enemy; the enemy sees and fears him.
3. The Romans always wage war bravely with the enemy.
4. The centurion is drawing up the legion in front of the wall.
5. Does he send centurions to the neighboring tribes?
6. Caesar carries a sword.
7. The Romans often carry on war with the neighboring peoples and tribes.
8. Is the slave guiding the column into a narrow and difficult place?
9. The general is strongly warning the Senate.
10. The king is equipping an army; we, however, shall conquer him and his army.

### 3. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF MITTĀ

The endings of the imperfect in the third conjugation are EXACTLY like those of the SECOND conjugation.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the model, GRAMMAR, NO. 169.

#### VOCABULARY

vinco, vincere, vici, victus, 3, tr.	conquer
peto, petere, petivi, petitus, 3, tr.	{ seek beg request
pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus, 3, tr.	{ drive repulse rout
litterae, litterarū	{ letter (i. e. > an epistle) dispatch

#### NOTE

Litterae is a plural noun of the first declension (like copiae).

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *petition* presented to Congress; a *victorious* general.

#### RELATED LATIN WORD

Imperatīves propter victoriās laudamus.

#### EXERCISE 161

Conjugate in the imperfect indicative active: (a) vinco, (b) mitto, (c) peto, (d) defendo.

#### EXERCISE 162

- Pick out the third person singular forms by the final personal signs;
- Translate:

- |             |               |             |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. pellit   | 3. instruebāt | 5. petebānt |
| 2. gerebant | 4. vincebānt  | 6. pellunt  |

7. petunt	13. mittebat	19. vincit
8. pellebam	14. mittebam	20. ducebant
9. mittebas	15. petebat	21. gerebat
10. mittebamus	16. mittebant	22. vincebat
11. pellebant	17. vinct	23. instruebant
12. ducebat	18. mittebatis	24. pellitis

## EXERCISE 163

1. Add the correct final personal signs to the verbs;

2. Translate:

- Galli bellum cum Rōmānīs gerebā.. ..... sed eoſ non vin-  
cēba
- Galli post victoriā Caesar is pacē peteba
- Christus mundum vinci
- Ego hosteſ in pontem pellebā
- Hosteſ militeſ pro caſtris inſtrueba
- Mittebane Caesar litteras?
- Rēx pacē petebā
- Militeſ forteſ hosteſ pelli

## EXERCISE 164

Translate:

- Propter metum Rōmānōrum Galli bellum cum eis gerebant. Rōmāni autem semper vincebant.
- Nōs frūmentum petebāmus. Vōs frūmentum nōn mittebatis.
- Legiōneſ Rōmānae hosteſ semper vinct.
- Caesar Gallos pelli.

## EXERCISE 165

Translate:

- The general was sending a dispatch and was begging (for) a supply of rations<sup>1</sup> and swords.
- We were often routing the enemy. We were often conquering them. Nevertheless they were carrying on the war and defending themselves bravely.
- They

<sup>1</sup> rations: frumentum, I. Grain was the main provision of a Roman army.

were driving the first battle line into a deep river. 4. The general is sending a letter. A slave will carry<sup>1</sup> it into the province.

#### 4. FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *MITT*&

The future indicative active of the third conjugation is quite different from that of the first and second. The personal signs are the SAME, but there is NO TENSE SIGN and the VOWEL of the ending changes.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the model, GRAMMAR, NO. 172, carefully.

#### VOCABULARY

pōnd, pōnere, posul, positus, 3, tr.	{ Put place set pitch (w. castra)
contendo, contendere, contend!, 3, intr.	{ strive contend hasten
agō, agere, egī, actus, 3, tr.	{ drive do act treat
ibi, adv.	there
dē, prep. w. abl.	{ concerning about

#### NOTE

1. Pōnd means *pitch* only when it is used of a camp. When an in-phrase is used to modify pōnd, it always takes the *ABLATIVE*.

2. **Contendo** has no fourth principal part.

3. Agō is not the helping verb *do*, as in "I *did* love" or "I *do* fight"; it is an independent verb, as in "I *did* it."

<sup>1</sup> Use *porto*.

## EXERCISE 166

*Translate:*

- |              |                |                  |
|--------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. mittent   | 7. mittet      | 13. aget         |
| 2. mittetis  | 8. contendebat | 14. pōnit        |
| 3. contendit | 9. mittēs      | 15. pōnebat      |
| 4. mitteamus | 10. agebat     | 16. agam         |
| 5. pōnebant  | 11. pōnunt     | 17. contendebant |
| 6. agit      | 12. mittam     | 18. contendunt   |

## EXERCISE 167

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Vos legiōnes in castra mittetis. 2. Litterās de multis rebus mitteamus. 3. Romāni cum Gallis semper contendunt. 4. Ubi Romāni castra pōnent? 5. Ego frumentum nōn mittam. 6. Mitte ne servos? 7. Ibi castra pōnent. 8. Reliqui Galli primā luce in montes contendunt. 9. Spem salutis in virtute pōnet. 10. Eos in flumen agam. 11. Senatus de re gravi aget.

## EXERCISE 168

*Translate:*

1. We shall pitch the camp there. 2. They will treat with the tribe about peace. 3. He will hasten with all the troops into the town. 4. They will contend with the Gauls. 5. They will put faith in the courage of the remaining legions.



## LESSON 13: PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

To form the principal parts of regular verbs of the fourth conjugation, drop the *-iō* of the first person singular present indicative and add *-ire, -ivi, -itus* (notice the long *i*). Thus:

**aud-id, aud-ire, aud-ivi, aud-Itus**

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the present tense of *audio*, GRAMMAR, No. 167.

To find the endings of the imperfect and future indicative of the FOURTH conjugation put an *i* before the endings of the THIRD. Instead of the endings *-ēbam, -ēbās, etc.*, the fourth has *-iēbam, -iēbās, etc.*; instead of *-am, -ēs, etc.*, it has *-iam, -iēs, etc.* See if you can write out the imperfect and future of *audio* without looking in the GRAMMAR.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the models, GRAMMAR, Nos. 170 and 173.

### VOCABULARY

<i>audio</i> , 4, <i>tr.</i>	<i>hear</i>
<i>mūnid</i> , 4, <i>tr.</i>	<i>fortify</i>
	<i>construct (w. viam or vias)</i>
<i>venio</i> , <i>venire, vēnī</i> , <i>ven turn</i> , 4, <i>intr.</i>	<i>come</i>
<i>convenio</i> , <i>convenire, convent</i> , " "	<i>come together</i>
<i>conventum</i> , 4, <i>intr.</i>	<i>assemble</i>
<i>per</i> , <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>through</i>

### NOTE

*Venio* (as is clear from its meaning) is intransitive; *i. e.*, it cannot take an object in the accusative case. The fourth principal part of INTRANSITIVE verbs is written **-um**, not **-us** (**ventum**). This will be explained later.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Munitions* of war. The Senate *convened* to discuss the treaty. The 1944 Democratic *convention* nominated Roosevelt and Truman. The *auditorium* was packed.

## RELATED LATIN WORD

## Adventus

## EXERCISE 169

[Present Tense]

*Translate:*

- |            |               |                |
|------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. audiunt | 5. audiō      | 9. audit       |
| 2. mūnit   | 6. mūniunt    | 10. veniunt    |
| 3. audis   | 7. auditis    | 11. audimus    |
| 4. venit   | 8. conveniunt | 12. convenitis |

## EXERCISE 170

[Imperfect and Future Tenses]

*Translate:*

- |               |                |                  |
|---------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. audiam     | 8. venietis    | 15. audiet       |
| 2. audiebātis | 9. audiam      | 16. audiebam     |
| 3. veniēs     | 10. convenient | 17. venient      |
| 4. audiebāmus | 11. audient    | 18. veniebās     |
| 5. audies     | 12. veniam     | 19. conveniebant |
| 6. veniet     | 13. audietis   | 20. veniebat     |
| 7. audiebās   | 14. veniebat   |                  |

## EXERCISE 171

[Drill]

*Translate:*

1. Metus vos terret. 2. Senatus conveniet. 3. Impetum sustinebant. 4. Portum vident. 5. Equitatum timebunt. 6. Castra ponunt. 7. De victoria contendunt. 8. Oppidum muniunt. 9. Centurionem vocabit. 10. Se defendit. 11. Exercitum in

Galliam mittet. 12. Per silvās veniēbant. 13. De rē agebant. 14. Vocem audit. 15. Spiritus Dei eum dūcit. 16. Bellum gerēbat. 17. Adventus Caesaris vōs terrēbit. 18. Deum laudat. 19. Collem occupabit. 20. Cōpiās instruit. 21. Vōs eds superābitis. 22. Urbem oppugnābat. 23. Ōrātis. 24. Arma parābant. 25. Ego servōs nōn habēbam. 26. Vōs monebō. 27. Pontem tenēbunt. 28. Signum portābunt. 29. Fortiter pugnant. 30. Gladiōs dabit. 31. Ego hostēs vincam. 32. Castra movētis. 33. Pācem petam. 34. Equites pellitis. 35. Orationēm audiebant.

## EXERCISE 172

*Translate:*

1. Ducēs oppida et pontēs saepe muniunt. 2. Pars hostium per silvās venit; pars autem eōrum per prōvinciam venit. 3. Audisne vōcēs servōrum? 4. Rōmāni propter commūnem salūtem longās viās per prōvinciās muniēbant. 5. Clāmōrem equitum audiēbāmus. 6. Imperator in senātum veniet. Ōratiōnem ejus senātus audiet. 7. Duces et princeps Galldrum in oppidum convenient. 8. Primā lūce senātus in locum tūtum conveniet. De rē gravi aget. 9. Interim Caesar cum omnibus cōpiis per prōvinciam veniēbat. 10. Equites Caesarem de ejus periculō monebant. Itaque castra munit.

## EXERCISE 173

*Translate:*

1. They are assembling in the camp. 2. The Romans were constructing long roads. 3. They were fortifying the bridges. 4. They will come together at dawn. 5. Are the Romans coming into the territory of the enemy? 6. Do they hear the cries and shouting of the cavalry? 7. Will the column come through the province? 8. The leaders of the tribe were assembling in the mountains. 9. Will they defend the Roman law? 10. The light and truth of Christ guide me. 11. They were hearing the speech of the chief. 12. After the arrival of Caesar the Gauls were fortifying the towns. 13. The general was praising the centurions

on account of their courage and faithfulness. 14. The enemy were bravely defending themselves. 15. There were slaves in the hills. 16. Part of the leading men are now assembling. 17. The Gauls will fear the cavalry after the slaughter of the chiefs. 18. They came into favor with the king on account of the victory. 19. They were treating with the commander in chief about peace. 20. The army was coming through the forest. 21. They will pitch the camp there. But Caesar will attack it. 22. We shall pray in the name of Jesus Christ. Therefore God will give us grace. 23. We praise the holy wounds of Christ. 24. We shall seek peace and salvation through Christ. 25. You will come into Gaul and you will see deep rivers and great mountains, towns and large cities. You will see brave and renowned chiefs. There is an abundance of grain in the cities. You will praise Gaul and the Gauls.

## EXERCISE 174

## DE SENATU

*Translate:*

In senātus Rōmānus sunt multi homines nobiles et fortes. Senātus Populusque<sup>1</sup> Rōmānus imperium multarum gentium et provinciarum habet. Senātus saepe convenit. In senātum reges gentium alienarum saepe veniunt. Pacem saepe petunt; saepe copiam armorum et frumenti petunt. Principes Rōmāni saepe in senātum veniunt. De rebus gravibus et de salute populi Rōmāni saepe agunt. De legibus, de bellis, de provinciis agunt. Omnes gentes aliGnae senātum timent.

---

<sup>1</sup> Populusque = et Populus. Senātus Populusque Rōmānus (usually abbreviated: SPQR) was the official title of the Roman government. It regularly takes a *singular* verb.

## LESSON 14: PRESENT SYSTEM INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

### 1. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review the present indicative of *sum*, GRAMMAR, NO. 346. Learn the imperfect and future indicative, GRAMMAR, NOS. 347 and 348. Note that:

1. The final personal signs are the same as in the four conjugations.
2. The third person plural of the future is *erunt*.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>sum, esse, fui, futurus, intr.</i>	<i>am</i>
<i>undique, adv.</i>	<i>{ from all sides</i>
	<i>{ on all sides</i>
<i>telum, I</i>	<i>dart</i>

#### NOTE

*Sum* has no PASSIVE; therefore it has no perfect participle *passive*. The future active participle is given as the fourth principal part. We shall study these participles later.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review the list of adjectives on pages 96 and 97, and the rules of agreement, GRAMMAR, NOS. 474 and 477.

#### EXERCISE 175

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Rome was a large and renowned city.
2. The enemy were on all sides.
3. Many rivers of Gaul were deep and long.
4. Will you be brave?
5. There are mountains on all sides.
6. The Roman camp was full of swords and darts.
7. We shall be with God in heaven.
8. We were eager for the grace of God.
9. You

are Christians and sons of God. 10. I am a soldier of Christ. 11. The way is narrow and difficult. 12. The mountains of Gaul are high. 13. Caesar's journeys were often long and difficult. 14. You will be safe on account of the grace of God. 15. Christ is a good and noble leader. 16. The Romans were eager for fame. 17. Are you like Christ? 18. There will be many holy men in heaven. 19. The Gauls are next to the province. 20. The glory of Rome will always be great. 21. We are Christians and God's servants. 22. Many kings were bad. 23. The remaining soldiers were safe. 24. Were you in the first battle line? 25. I was not with Caesar. 26. Not all Christians are like Christ. 27. There are many and large cities in the province.

## EXERCISE 176

*Translate:*

1. Propter metum hostium in castris Caesaris sumus. 2. Undique erat clamor hostium. 3. Erat periculum grave in provincia. 4. Galli semper sunt cupidi imperii. 5. Omnes homines cupidi sunt gloriae. 6. Erantne tela in castris? 7. Undique erant montes



ROMAN SHIPS

et silvae. 8. In Caelo cum Christo erimus. 9. Erantne montes alti et difficiles ? 10. Caesar erat imperii cupidus. 11. Estne Christus filius et Mariae et Dei ? 12. Estne Maria gratia plena ? 13. "Vos autem omnes fratres estis." (Words of Christ to His disciples.) 14. Erantne Christus in mundo propter nos? 15. In silvis non eramus. 16. Caesar in prima acie erat. 17. Ero fortis. 18. Eram in Gallia cum exercitu. 19. Esne eques? Esne miles? 20. Omnes homines sancti Christo similes sunt.

## 2. COMPOUNDS OF SUM

### VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, "afui, "afuturus, *intr.*; ab<sub>v</sub>, (a) w. abl. <sup>f</sup>am *away*  
<sub>am</sub> distant  
 longe, *adv.* I *far*  
 [fry far]

### NOTE

**Absum** is a compound of the preposition **ab** and the verb **sum**. Therefore it is conjugated like **SUM**. The place away from which something is, is expressed by the preposition **ab** (**a** before consonants), *from*, and the ablative. Thus:

*Caesar was away from the camp. Caesar a castris aberat.*

### RELATED ENGLISH WORD

Many members of Congress were *absent*.

### RELATED LATIN WORD

Via longa erat.

### EXERCISE 177

#### *Translate:*

1. Hiberna ab oppidd Galldrum non longe aberant. 2. Caesar longe aberat a castris. 3. Hiberna non longe absunt a Caesare.

4. Legiōnēs aberunt. 5. Caesar aberat. 6. Rōma longē abest ā nōbis. 7. Deus ā nōbis nōn longē abest. 8. Bellum et mortis periculum longē ā Caelb absunt.

**EXERCISE 178*****Translate:***

1. I am away from the camp. 2. He was not far away from the town. 3. They were far away from the river. 4. The river is not far distant from the forest. 5. Gaul is far away from you.



## LESSON 15: THE PERFECT SYSTEM ACTIVE

### 1. THE PERFECT ACTIVE STEM

The perfect system of the indicative active includes the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

These are all formed on the PERFECT ACTIVE STEM.

The perfect active stem is found by dropping the ending -i of the third principal part:

laudāv-I	stem: laudav-
monu-i	stem: monu-
mis-i	stem: mls-
audiv-I	stem: audiv-
fu-i	stem: fu-

### 2. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

The PERFECT tense expresses a past act. There are three forms in English:

1. *I praised.*
2. *I did praise* (used in questions, in negative statements, and for emphasis).
3. *I have praised* (action completed in present time; called the PRESENT PERFECT).

For all these, Latin has one form: the PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

The perfect indicative active of ALL LATIN VERBS, REGULAR AND IRREGULAR, is formed by:

1. Finding the perfect stem from the third principal part;
2. Adding the endings shown in the model, GRAMMAR, NO. 174.

Note that the final personal signs are the same as in the present system except in the first person and second person singular, laudāv-i and laudav-īstī.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the conjugation of **laudāvī, monuī, misi, audivi, and fui**, GRAMMAR, NOS. 174, 177-179, and 349.

### VOCABULARY

colloco, 1, *tr.*

{ place  
station

maned, manerē, mansī, mansūrus, 2, *intr.*

remain

compleo, complerē, complevi, completes, 2, *tr.; w. abl.*

fill (with)

cēdd, cedere, cessi, cessurus, 3, *intr.*

{ give way  
yield

atque (ac), *conj.*

and

### NOTE

When *compleo* is modified by a *wx7A*-phrase, this *wx7A*-phrase is translated by the ablative *without* a preposition. Hence the notation *w. abl.*

*He filled the camp with grain. Castra frumento complevit.*

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Mexico *ceded* California to the United States. The destroyer has its full *complement* of men.

### RELATED LATIN WORDS

*Maria est gratia plena. In locum tutum venit.*

### EXERCISE 179

**Z. Give the perfect stem;**

**2. Give the third person singular and plural of the perfect indicative active, and translate each three ways:**

- |            |            |              |           |
|------------|------------|--------------|-----------|
| 1. laudō   | 7. porto   | 13. habeo    | 19. dūcō  |
| 2. occupō  | 8. do      | 14. video    | 20. gerō  |
| 3. oppugno | 9. voco    | 15. teneo    | 21. vincō |
| 4. pard    | 10. moneo  | 16. moved    | 22. peto  |
| 5. pugno   | 11. timed  | 17. sustineo | 23. pellō |
| 6. supero  | 12. terreo | 18. dēfendō  | 24. pōnd  |

25. contendo	28. veni	31. sum	34. maneo
26. audio	29. convenio	32. absum	35. compleo
27. munio	30. ago	33. colloco	36. cedo

## EXERCISE 180

1. *Tell what forms these are;*
2. *Translate:*

1. videntur	13. complerentur	25. mittimus
2. cessantur	14. audivimus	26. colloco
3. audivisti	15. oppugnarentur	27. fui
4. mansit	16. fuisti	28. portarentur
5. terruerunt	17. laudavi	29. collocarentur
6. cessit	18. vicit	30. superarentur
7. fuit	19. petiverunt	31. misi
8. monuimus	20. pararentur	32. vocarentur
9. complevit	21. fuimus	33. fuerunt
10. muniverunt	22. laudavisti	34. collocabat
11. manserunt	23. collocavit	35. sustinuerunt
12. miserunt	24. monuerunt	36. defenderunt

## EXERCISE 181

[Essential]

## A DREAM OF JUDGMENT

This was my dream. I was in the midst of light, a light brilliant and intense, so intense that it seemed to penetrate and reveal the depths of the soul. And I was aware of a Presence at the very center of the light and I knew with a strange inner conviction that there stood the Angel of Judgment. After a breathless moment, I became aware of other presences, felt rather than saw them. Were they angels? Were they souls? Then the Angel spoke in a voice like the sound of many waters, like no voice ever heard upon earth

THE VOICE OF THE ANGEL. Quis es ?

SECOND VOICE (*harsh and unpleasant*). Ego rex sum. Regnum et imperium Romanorum in terra tenui.

VOICE OF THE ANGEL. Petisne nunc praemium et gloriam?

SECOND VOICE. Ego petd. Ego magnam glōriam in terrā habul et semper habēbō. Mē omnes hominēs laudāverunt. Imperātor magnus fui. Multa bella fortiter gessi. Dux bonus, omnes rēs parāvi; frūmentum et arma parāvi; castra et oppida mūnivi; milites instruī et collocāvi. In mē milites spem semper posuerunt. Ego saepe in primā acie cum militibus pugnāvi. Ego eds per montes et silvas dūxi. In Galliā et in omnibus prōvinciis cum hostibus contend!. Mē metus hostium nōn mōvit neque terruit. Fines multarum gentium occupaui. Ego et multa oppida et magnas urbēs oppugnāvi. Prōvincias Rōmānas et earum urbēs fortiter dēfend!. Hostes nōminis Rōmāni terrui atque impetūs eōrum fortiter sustinui. Equites et milites in eds mis!—hostes semper cessērunt. Hostes pepuli et in bellis eds superavi et vici.

THE VOICE OF THE ANGEL. Homo se fortiter laudat!

SECOND VOICE. Propter mē gentes prōvinciis finitimae legiōnes Rōmānas timuerunt; eae saepe principes in castra Rdmānorum dē pāce miserunt. Mēcum principes et reges dē pāce ēgerunt. Mihi sē dederunt. Principe Galldrum in castra vocāvi. In castra convēnerunt! Frūmentum petivi. Magnam cōpiam in castra portāverunt. Omnes homines mē timuerunt. Omnes gentes nōmen regis Rōmāni audiverunt.

VOICE OF THE ANGEL. (*There was a deeper earnestness in the voice.*) Cūr cum multis gentibus bellum gessisti? Cūr eas pepulisti, terruisti, vicisti?

Vox REGIS. (*And his voice seemed to swell as though he were speaking in the Roman Senate.*) Propter glōriam et salutem Senātūs Populique<sup>1</sup> Rōmāni!

(*Suddenly another voice broke in, harsh with malicious hatred.*)

THIRD VOICE. Nōn! Nōn propter ea! sed quod cupidus fuit glōriae et imperii! Pacem nōn petivit, sed gladiōs et bella et caedem petivit. Flūmina et silvas et oppida corporibus complevit; milites et nautas caedi dedit quod SIBI glōriam petivit. Praemium ei dabo EGO.

<sup>1</sup> Populique = et Populi.

SANCTUS MICHAEL<sup>1</sup>

Vox REGIS (*shaken and fearful*).  
Quis es tu?

THIRD VOICE. Aaah! Mē nōn vidi, sed nōn longē ā tē āfui. Omnia vidi. Tē autem nōn monui. (*A shrill, diabolical laugh.*) Tēcum semper in terrā fui—nunc mēcum manēbis in saecula saeculdrum!

(*A black shadow passed swiftly across the light ... a shriek, and then again the peace and the brilliance. Then I knew that another had entered.*)

VOICE OF THE ANGEL. Quis es?

THE NEW VOICE. Christianuſ sum.

VOICE OF THE ANGEL. Quid petis? Petisne glōriam cum Christō? CHRISTIANUS. Deum et Christum petd. (*Then silence.*)

THE GUARDIAN ANGEL. Is se nōn defendet neque laudābit. Ego autem semper cum eō fui. Servus imperātōris Rōmāni fuit. Lēgem autem Christi fortiter tenuit; in nōmine Christi orāvit. Imperātor autem eum, quod Christiānus fuit, in vinculis<sup>2</sup> tenuit. Metus autem mortis et vulnere eum nōn mōvit neque terruit. Spem In grātiā Christi posuit et fidem semper tenuit. Itaque Rōmāni •Jum occidērunt.

(*The light grew slowly more intense and a new voice, stronger and more tender, spoke:*)

Intra<sup>3</sup> in gaudium<sup>4</sup> Domini tui.<sup>5</sup>

(*Vocēs undique audiui:*)

Glōria Patri et Filiō et Spiritui Sāctō sicut erat in principiō et nunc et semper et in saecula saeculdrum. Amen.

*The vision faded.*

<sup>1</sup> Sanctus Michael: St. Michael the Archangel.

<sup>2</sup> vinculum, I: chain.

<sup>3</sup> intrā: enter!

<sup>4</sup> gaudium, i: joy.

<sup>5</sup> tuus, a, um: your.

## EXERCISE 182

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Caesar stationed soldiers on the bridge and in front of the camp. 2. Christ did not remain on earth. 3. They filled the walls with men. 4. Caesar prepared a supply of grain. 5. The Romans did not often yield to the enemy. 6. Where have you been? 7. The Senate often praised Caesar on account of his victories. 8. Caesar did not fear danger and death. 9. There were many Romans in Gaul. 10. Did the Romans overcome the Gauls? 11. Did they treat with the chief about peace? 12. The leading men of the Gauls assembled at dawn. 13. The cavalry did not yield, but withstood the attack bravely. 14. Who conquered the Gauls and seized their cities and towns? 15. The Gauls did not praise Caesar, but they feared him. 16. Have you seen Rome?

### 3. PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

## VOCABULARY

incito, 1, tr.

 \ incite  
 / arouse

adjuvo, adjuvarē, adjuvi, adjutus, /, tr.

 \ help  
 / aid

servo, 1, tr.

 \ guard  
 / keep

perturbo, 1, tr.

 f confuse  
 / disturb

incendo, incendere, incendi, incensus, 3, tr. &lt;

 f set fire to  
 1 burn

turn, adv.

 f then  
 / at that time

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Incendiary* bombs. The general's *adjutant*. He was very *perturbed*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the models in GRAMMAR, NOS. 175-176 and 180-185, for the pluperfect indicative active and the future perfect indicative active. Notice that the PERFECT stem is used and that the endings are the SAME in all conjugations.

**EXERCISE 183**

[Essential]

/. *Translate;*2. *Explain the case of the italicized nouns:*

1. Principēs gentēs *p̄*vincial finitimās incitāverant quod victōriae cupidi erant. 2. Interim equitēs *reliquis* Gallōs perturbāverant. 3. Christiani boni fidem et vērītatem Christi servāverant. 4. Imperator urbeś et oppida incenderat. 5. Multi Galli legidnēs Rōmānās adjūverant. 6. Dux hostium colīēs *hominibus* complēverat. 7. Equitēs agmen hostium perturbāverant. 8. Vir-tūs Rōmam servāverat. 9. Caesar et colleś et pontēs primā lūce occupāverat. 10. Senatus provinciam *Caesari* dederat.

**EXERCISE 184**

[Essential]

*Translate :*

1. The king had aroused the slaves. 2. God had helped them. 3. They had kept the faith. 4. The cavalry had confused the enemy. 5. The slaves had burned the town. 6. They had called the leading men of Gaul into the Senate. 7. He had stationed the cavalry in the forest. The enemy made an attack on them.

**EXERCISE 185***Translate:*

1. The Senate praised Caesar. 2. The Gauls had always feared Caesar. 3. The cavalry terrified the enemy. 4. The soldiers had burned the crops. 5. The slaves had helped the enemy. 6. They kept the faith. 7. They did not yield. 8. They have held the city. 9. They moved camp. 10. He seized the bridge. 11. They

had prepared many darts. 12. The slaves had had arms. 13. They saw the Roman column. 14. They did not withstand the attack. 15. He defended himself. 16. They sent arms into Gaul. 17. The slaves had carried grain into the camp. 18. The Romans overcame the Gauls. 19. They had prayed for the king. 20. He has called the chiefs.



## UNIT FOUR

### LESSON 16: ADDITIONAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

#### 1. DECLENSION OF *PUER*, *AGER*, AND *VIR*

There are, in the second declension, a few MASCULINE nouns that do not end in -us. These are:

**PUER**, **PUERI**, *boy*, and similar words;

**AGER**, **AGRI**, *field*, and similar words;

**VIR**, **VIRI**, *man*.

How can you tell that these words belong to the second declension? Find the stems of *puer*, *ager*, and *vir*. NOTICE THE DIFFERENCE IN THEIR STEMS! Except in the nominative singular, all these words have the SAME ENDINGS AS **SERVUS**, I. Now complete these declensions without looking in the GRAMMAR :

<b>puer</b>	<b>ager</b>	<b>vir</b>
<b>puer-i</b>	<b>agr-i</b>	<b>vir-i</b>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 41-43,

#### VOCABULARY

<b>puer</b> , <b>pueri</b>	<i>boy</i>
<b>ager</b> , <b>agri</b>	<i>field</i>
<b>vir</b> , <b>vir</b> i	<i>man</i>
<b>Italia</b> , <b>ae</b>	<i>Italy</i>
<b>fortūna</b> , <b>ae</b>	<i>fortune</i>
<b>ita</b> , <i>adv.</i>	{ <i>so</i> <i>thus</i>
<b>trāns</b> , <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>across</i>

## NOTE

**Homo** means a human being, a man as opposed to an animal; **vir** means a man as opposed to a woman or a child.

**Christus propter nos homines in mundum venit.**

*Christ came into the world on account of us men.*

*Men* here means the human race; Christ came for both men and women, hence *homines*.

**Caesar erat vir fortis.**

*Caesar was a brave man.*

**Vir** is used because Caesar is not a woman and has manly, virile qualities.

Hereafter use *homo* only when a human being or man in general is meant.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *puerile* remark. A *virile* character. The *agrarian* party. Lindbergh made the first solo transatlantic flight.

## EXERCISE 186

*Translate:*

1. With good boys. 2. On behalf of noble men. 3. Into good fields. 4. A field full of boys. 5. In the fields. 6. With a brave man. 7. In a large field. 8. A boy similar to a brave man. 9. On account of the glory of brave men. 10. Through the fields of the Gauls. 11. The death of a brave man. 12. On account of the slaughter of mothers and boys. 13. The good fortune of a brave and noble man.

## EXERCISE 187

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Viri Rōmāni fortēs erant et fortiter cum hostibus pugnā vSrunt. Ita Rōmān servāverunt. Fortuŋa enim viroŝ forteŝ adjuvat. 2. Multi hostes tranŝ mōntes in Italiā venerunt. Edŝ

tamen Rōmāni vicērunt. 3. Puer bonus est glōria mātris. Omnēs enim patrēs et mātres puerōs bonos semper laudant sed puerōs malōs nōn laudant. 4. Turn, post adventum exercitūs Rōmāni, erat magna frūmenti inopia in Galliā. Rōmāni enim frūmenta in agris incenderant. 5. In Italia *erant* agri boni, viri nōbilēs, pueri boni. 6. Imperator Rōmānus cum omnibus copiis in agrōs hostium vēnit. Frūmenta incendit; oppida et urbēs oppugnāvit; virōs et puerōs in castra duxit.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS ON EXERCISE 187

*The words to which these questions refer are italicized in Exercise 187.*

Sentence 2: Give the rule for the agreement of eos.

Sentence 5: Explain the translation of erant.

## EXERCISE 188

*This exercise reviews all the verbs of the first conjugation and drills on the present indicative.*

*Translate:*

1. All men praise good fortune. 2. Hannibal,<sup>1</sup> a brave and renowned man, has come across the mountains and is seizing a large part of Italy. 3. Good boys often pray. 4. The boys are preparing arms. 5. They have come across the river into the fields and are burning the crops. 6. He is placing troops in the fields of the enemy. 7. Brave men are fighting for us. 8. He is stationing men in the fields of Italy. 9. Thus do we brave soldiers keep the glory of the Roman name. 10. The boys are helping the men in the fields. 11. Who is calling the boy? 12. Is the boy carrying a dispatch into Italy? 13. What are you giving the boy? 14. Did they overcome the Gauls? 15. What does the boy carry? 16. Who is inciting the tribes of Gaul? 17. We do not help bad men. 18. He is stationing the soldiers before the gate of the camp. 19. They are storming the cities of Italy.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Hannibal*: Hannibal, Hannibalii.



## READING NO. 4

## DE ITALIA ET DE GALLIA

Italia est terra et magna et bona. Vidēsne Italiam in tabulā?<sup>1</sup> Estne Italia magna? Estne longa? In Italia<sup>2</sup> erat Rōma, urbs et magna et nōbilis. Vidēsne Rōmam in tabulā?<sup>1</sup> Rōma in flūmine Tiber! est. Vidēsne flūmen in tabulā?<sup>1</sup> In Italiā erant multae et magnae urbēs, flūmina longa, montēs alti. Erant etiam agri frūmentdrum plēni. In agris Italiae Rōmāni multa bella cum finitimis gentibus gesserant et tandem<sup>2</sup> omnem Italiam vicerant. Ita imperium Italiae Rōmāni tenuerunt. In omnibus Italiae partibus omnēs viri et pueri nomē Rōmānū et laudabant et defendebant.

Alpēs<sup>3</sup> sunt montēs magni et alti. Vidēsne montēs in tabulā?<sup>1</sup> Trāns Alpēs turn erant et Prōvincia Rōmāna et Gallia. Multi imperatōrēs trāns montēs in Italiam vēnerunt. Hannibal,<sup>4</sup> vir fortis et nōbilis, per montēs difficilēs cum omnibus cōpiis in Italiam vēnit et ita in Italiae agris cum Rōmānis bellum gessit. Turn Caesar legiōnēs Rōmānās trāns montēs in agrōs Galldrum dūxit. Napoleon etiam, imperatōr fortis, cum magnis cōpiis trāns montēs in Italiam contendit et omnem Italiam occupavit.

Rōma, sicut in tabulā<sup>1</sup> vidēs, longē abest ā Galliā. In Galliā erant etiam urbēs et oppida et agri boni. Erant flūmina et montēs. Eōs in tabulā<sup>1</sup> vidēs. Vidēs etiam finēs Prōvinciae Rōmānae. Ejus imperium Caesar tenuit et cum Gallis bella gessit. Post victōriās Caesaris Rōmānī imperium omnis Galliae tenuerunt.

## MĀTER ITALIAE—RŌMA

—Florus<sup>5</sup><sup>1</sup> tabula, ae: *map*.<sup>2</sup> tandem, *adv.*: *finally*.<sup>3</sup> Alpēs, Alpium: *the Alps*.<sup>4</sup> Hannibal, Hannibalis: *Hannibal* (a great Carthaginian general).<sup>5</sup> L. Annaeus Florus, a Roman historian.

## 2. DECLENSION OF *MISER* AND *INTEGER*

There are, in the first and second declensions, a few adjectives whose masculine is like *puer* or *ager*.

LIKE *PUER*: *miser*, *miser-a*, *miser-um*, *wretched*

STEM: *miser-*

LIKE *AGER*: *integer*, *integr-a*, *integr-um*, *fresh*, *uninjured*

STEM: *integr-*

ENDINGS: The endings for *miser* and *integer* are exactly like those of *magnus* except in the nominative masculine singular, *miser*, *integer*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Decline *miser* and *integer* without looking in the GRAMMAR. Then study GRAMMAR, NOS. 74-76.

### VOCABULARY

<i>miser</i> , <i>misera</i> , <i>miserum</i>	<i>wretched</i>
<i>liber</i> , <i>libera</i> , <i>liberum</i>	<i>free</i>
<i>integer</i> , <i>integra</i> , <i>integrum</i>	<i>fresh</i> <i>uninjured</i> <i>whole</i>
<i>proelium</i> , <i>i</i>	<i>battle</i>
<i>civitas</i> , <i>civitatis</i>	<i>state</i>

### NOTE

The ablative of *proelium* is generally used *without* in in such expressions as: *in many battles*, *multis proeliis*.

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Lincoln *liberated* the slaves. A *miserable* fellow. The number one is an *integer*.

### EXERCISE 189

*Decline:*

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>servus miser</i>  | 3. <i>res misera</i>      |
| 2. <i>legiō integra</i> | 4. <i>oppidum liberum</i> |

## EXERCISE 190

*Translate:*

1. With fresh forces. 2. For free men. 3. Against the wretched Gauls. 4. With fresh legions. 5. In a free state. 6. With the wretched slaves. 7. After the victory of free men. 8. On account of a wretched fortune. 9. On account of the glory of a free state.

**DOMINUS ERIT TĒCUM IN OMNI TĒMPORE<sup>1</sup>  
ET LOCŌ.**

—From the *Following of Christ*<sup>2</sup>

## EXERCISE 191

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Viri nobiles et liberi civitatem Americanam<sup>3</sup> servaverunt. 2. Romani, ut fortes et liberi, Gallos miseris multis proeliis vicerunt. Romano enim etiam fortuna adiuvit. 3. Duces legiones integras in prima acie collocant. 4. Romani oppida Gallorum oppugnaverunt; agros edrum occupaverunt; frumenta incendunt; principes, duces, matres, patres, viros, pueros, occiderunt. Ita eos vicerunt. 5. Hannibal,<sup>4</sup> vir fortis et nobilis, cum omnibus copiis trans montes in agros Italiae contendit. Cum eo Romani fortiter contenderunt. Urbes et oppida Italiae defenderunt. Post multa proelia et magnam caedem Romani eum superaverunt. Ita gloriam nominis Romani servaverunt.

<sup>1</sup> tempus, tempons,<sup>†</sup> n.: time.

<sup>2</sup> *The Following of Christ* is a book of religious meditations and instructions composed by the educator Gerard Groote after his conversion and entry into religious life (about A. D. 1386), and either written down or at least edited by his disciple Thomas à Kempis (1379-1471). Next to the New Testament, the volume is the most famous and influential Christian religious work ever written.

<sup>3</sup> Americanus, a, um: American.

<sup>4</sup> Hannibal, Hannibalis: Hannibal.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS ON EXERCISE 191

*The words to which these questions  
refer are italicized in Exercise 191*

Sentence 2: Explain the use of *viri*.

Sentence 4: Give the rule for the agreement of *edrum* and *eōs*. Explain.

MONTANI<sup>1</sup> SEMPER LIBERI

(Motto of West Virginia)

## EXERCISE 192

*This exercise reviews all third-conjugation  
verbs and drills on the imperfect.*

*Translate:*

1. He was leading fresh troops into the battle. 2. The chief was defending the wretched Gauls. 3. The Romans were conquering free states. 4. The Romans conquered the Gauls in many battles. 5. After the battle they were burning the crops and the towns. 6. The soldiers, brave and free men, were repulsing the enemy. 7. He was treating with the master concerning his wretched slave. 8. They were pitching camp after the battle. 9. The fresh legions were not yielding. 10. He was hastening into Gaul with fresh forces. 11. The slaves were not carrying arms. 12. The wretched Gauls were seeking peace. 13. Was he sending a dispatch into Italy? 14. After the battle he was drawing up the uninjured troops. 15. We Americans<sup>2</sup> were defending a free state. 16. They were sending boys and men into the fields. 17. We Americans shall always be free.

---

<sup>1</sup> *montāni, montānōrum: mountaineer:.*

<sup>2</sup> From now on proper nouns and adjectives will ordinarily not be given in footnotes. If necessary, they may be found in the vocabularies in the back of the book.



## EXERCISE 193

*Answer in complete Latin sentences:*

1. Suntne servi liberi?
2. Estne civitas Americanā libera?
3. Erantne servi Romāni miser! ?
4. Esne vir liber?
5. Esne puer miser ?
6. Eratne Washingtonius vir fortis et nobiliss ?

## READING NO. 5

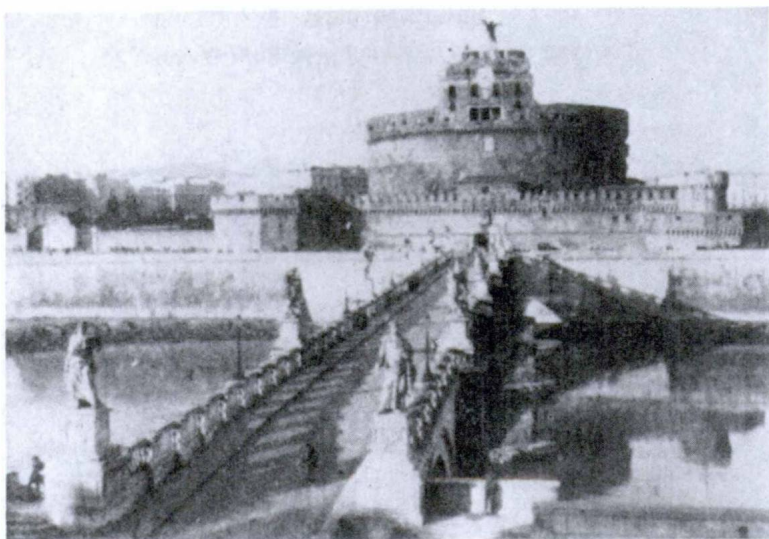
**RŌMA AETERNA**

Rome first appeared in our history as a small country village on the Tiber. In the course of centuries of expansion, however, she built up a vast and well-organized empire. The city on the seven hills grew into a city of splendor and became the capital of the western world.

What was the secret of Rome's success? The Romans certainly were practical men, gifted in organization. They were builders whose roads survived for centuries, whose monuments of masonry still stand today. All of these things and many others contributed to their success. But behind all there was the driving power of the Roman spirit. Throughout their history the Romans displayed a tenacity of purpose, a stubborn determination, that no odds and no disasters could overcome. There were many dark days in the history of Rome, but the Roman people never despaired. The great achievements of Rome's heroes became part of the Roman tradition and the Roman spirit. No wonder then that the Romans became convinced that fortune had chosen Rome for an eternal destiny of power. This conviction they crystallized in the phrase **Romā aeterna**, *eternal Rome*.

*Translate:*

Romāni spem salutis et victōriae semper in virtute ponebant. In bellis omnia parabant; oppida et castra munebant; milites et equites habebant; frumenti copiam parabant. Saepe duces et imperatores magni et nobiles erant. Sed non propter ea omnia



ROMA AETERNA

Rōmāni vicērunt. Multae enim gentēs ea omnia habēbant sed hostēs nōn vicērunt. Rōmāni tamen hostēs multōs et magnōs vicērunt. Hostēs saepe castra oppugnāverant, legiōnēs vicerant, agrōs et urbēs occupāverant. Senātus Populusque<sup>1</sup> Rōmānus tamen pācem nōn petivit. Prīnceps in senātu de pāce nōn ēgērunt. Victōriae et imperii et glōriae cupidi erant. Itaque Rōmāni hostēs semper vicērunt. Victōria erat Rōmānōrum propter virtutem Rōmānam. Itaque glōria nōminis Rōmāni magna fuit et Rōmam aeternam<sup>2</sup> et Rōmāni et gentes ālienāe laudaverūt.

### RŌMA

Māter rēgumque<sup>3</sup> ducumque

<sup>1</sup> Populusque = et Populus.

<sup>2</sup> aeternus, a, um: *eternal*.

<sup>3</sup> rēgumque ducumque = et rēgum et ducum.

### 3. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS

The possessive adjectives of the FIRST PERSON are:

meus, a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{my} \\ \textit{mine} \end{array} \right.$
noster, nostra, nostrum	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{our} \\ \textit{ours} \end{array} \right.$

The possessive adjectives of the SECOND PERSON are:

tuus, a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{your} \text{ (when referring to} \\ \textit{yours} \text{ ONE person)} \end{array} \right.$
vester, vestra, vestrum	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{your} \text{ (when referring to MORE} \\ \textit{yours} \text{ THAN ONE person)} \end{array} \right.$

#### 1. DECLENSION:

Meus, a, um and tuus, a, um are declined like magnus, a, um.

Noster, nostra, nostrum and vester, vestra, vestrum are declined like integer, integra, integrum.

#### EXERCISE 194

Decline: (a) tuus, (b) meus, (c) vester, (d) noster.

#### 2. AGREEMENT:

As adjectives the possessive adjectives AGREE WITH THE NOUN THEY MODIFY.

milites mei, *my soldiers*

propter virtutes tuas, *on account of your virtues*

rex noster, *our king*

in oppidd vestro, *in your town*

#### EXERCISE 195

*Decline in singular and plural:*

1. amicus meus

3. virtus tua

2. rex noster

4. oppidum vestrum



### MOMENTS AT MASS NO. 1

Frequently during Mass the priest turns to the people and says:

**DOMINUS VOBISCUM!**

and the server, in the name of the people, answers:

**ET CUM SPIRITU TUO!**

## 3. EXAMPLES OF USAGE:

Vos propter virtutes vestras laudo. *I praise you for your virtues.*

(I am speaking to MORE THAN ONE person; hence vos is used and so vestr- must also be used. Vestras is feminine accusative plural because it AGREES with virtutes.)

Mārem tuam laudo. *I praise your mother.*

(I am speaking to ONE person; hence tu- must be used. Tuam is feminine accusative singular because it AGREES WITH mārem.)

Militēs meos laudant. *They praise my soldiers.*

(ONE person is speaking; hence me- must be used. Meos is masculine accusative plural because it AGREES WITH milites.)

## EXERCISE 196

*Translate:*

1. On account of your fortune. 2. In our fields. 3. With our brave men. 4. After my death. 5. In your state. 6. On account of the glory of our fathers.

## EXERCISE 197

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Patres nostrī, viri et liberī et fortes, multis proeliis cum hostibus contenderunt. Ita civitatem nostram et defenderunt et servaverunt. Itaque nunc civitatem et nobilem et liberam habemus. 2. Vobiscum de salute militum vestrorum agemus. 3. Te propter caedem servorum miserorum non laudare neque virtutem tuam laudo. 4. In primam aciem legiones meas integras mittam. 5. Oppida vestra et urbes vestras oppugnabimus. Frumenta incendemus. Pueros vestros et matres vestras terrebimus. Ita milites vestros vincemus. 6. Bellum difficile et periculdrum plenum est. Hostes trans montes veniunt. In agros vestros veniunt. Cum eis fortiter pugnabitis neque de pace cum eis agetis. Fortuna etiam vos adjuvabit.

**“MATER DEI EST MATER MEA!”**—St. Stanislaus Kostka<sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE 198

[Essential]

*This exercise reviews all second-conjugation verbs.**Translate:*

1. Our brave soldiers do not fear your attacks. 2. I shall warn your commander in chief. 3. Our state shall always be free. 4. Our cavalry will terrify your soldiers. 5. We shall see your fields and your cities. 6. Our soldiers, brave and free men, were holding the hill. 7. We shall move our camp at dawn. 8. They will not withstand our cavalry. 9. I shall remain in my city. 10. You were filling the wall with your men. 11. Your slave is warning me. 12. Do you hear our cavalry? 13. Are you holding your camp? 14. Will our men withstand their attack? 15. I do not fear your soldiers, for our brave men will withstand them.

## READING NO. 6

**THE SECOND PUNIC WAR**

In the third century before Christ, Carthage, a city on the northern coast of Africa, was the center of a powerful empire. It was the one rival of the growing power of Rome in the western Mediterranean, and it was therefore inevitable that these two nations should meet in a final struggle for power. This struggle came in the Second Punic War (218-202), a war in which Roman courage and Roman endurance were tested to the utmost. Later generations of Romans were to look back to the hard years of this war as Americans look back to Valley Forge or Englishmen to the German Blitz of World War II.

---

<sup>1</sup> Stanislaus Kostka was the son of a prominent Polish nobleman. Born in 1550, he entered the Society of Jesus after having a vision of the Blessed Virgin with her Infant Son. He died while yet a novice in 1568.

The war began when a Carthaginian army under Hannibal—one of the greatest generals of all history—attacked a Roman ally in Spain. At the very outset Hannibal conceived the daring and unexpected plan of crossing the Pyrenees and the Alps and invading Italy from the north.

*Translate:*

Hannibal, vir fortis et nōbilis, turn erat Carthāginiēnsium<sup>1</sup> imperātor. Hostis populi Rōmāni semper fuerat. Victōriæ et imperii cupidus fuit. Itaque cum Romanis bellum fortiter gerebat.

Is cum magnō exercitū in Hispāniā erat. Magnum numerum militum et equitum et elephantorum<sup>2</sup> secum habebat. Cum omnibus cōpiis per Galliam contendit (nōndum enim erat prōvincia Rōmāna in Galliā). Per silvās magnās milites dūxit. Trāns flūmina alta exercitum dūxit. Alpēs alti et magni montēs erant. Via per eōs difficilis et angusta fuit. Multae Gallōrum gentēs cum eō bellum gerēbant. Is tamen Gallōs multis proeliis pepulit et cum militibus et impedimentis et elephantis<sup>2</sup> per montēs in Italiam vēnit.

This was a terrible surprise to the Romans, who, meanwhile, had been planning an expedition to Africa. No one had expected Hannibal to transport such an army with its elephants and all its equipment across the mountain barrier that guarded the north.

As Hannibal stood on the southern slopes of the Alps and saw Italy before him at last, he spoke to his exhausted and discouraged men in some such fashion as this:

“Italia est! In Italia sunt agri boni et cōpia omnium rērum. Sunt etiam oppida et multae et magnae urbēs. Eās Rōmāni nunc tenent, sed nōs Rōmānos superābimus. Urbēs et agrōs tenēbimus, etiam Rōmānam occupābimus. Rōmāni fortēs sunt, sed nōs etiam sumus fortēs. Nōs nōn superābunt. Itaque omnem victōriæ spem in virtute ponēmus! Fortūna etiam nōs adjuvābit; fortūna enim fortēs semper adjuvat. Post victōriam magna vbbis praemia dabit et magnam habebimus belli gloriā!”

<sup>1</sup> Carthāginiēnsēs, Carthāginiēnsium: *Carthaginians*.

<sup>2</sup> elephantus, i: *elephant*.

## QUESTIONS ON READING NO. 6

*Answer in Latin:*

1. Quis fuit Hannibal?
2. Eratne vir fortis?
3. Ubi fuit?
4. Quid secum habuit?
5. Venitne in Italiam?



## UNIT FIVE

### LESSON 17: PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION; AGENCY

#### 1. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE



The boy throws the ball.

The boy is throwing the ball.

The boy does throw the ball.

Is the boy throwing the ball ?

Does the boy throw the ball ?

All these sentences say or ask WHO IS DOING THE ACTION, *i. e.* who is throwing. Hence, the verbs in all these sentences are in the ACTIVE VOICE because the SUBJECT—the boy—ACTS.

**WHEN IS A VERB IN THE ACTIVE VOICE?**  
**WHEN THE SUBJECT IS THE PERSON OR THING**  
**THAT DOES THE ACTION.**

All the verbs you have studied so far have been in the ACTIVE VOICE.

Is the ball being thrown ?

The ball is being thrown.

These sentences say or ask to what the action is being done. The verbs in these sentences are in the PASSIVE VOICE because the SUBJECT—the ball—RECEIVES THE ACTION.

**WHEN IS A VERB IN THE PASSIVE VOICE?**  
**WHEN THE SUBJECT IS THE PERSON OR THING**  
**TO WHICH THE ACTION IS DONE.**

## EXERCISE 199

*Point out the voice of the verbs in these sentences:*

1. America *is being praised* by many nations.
2. Christ *was crucified* by Roman soldiers.
3. The martyrs *kept* the faith.
4. The faith *was kept* by the martyrs.
5. I *am praying*.
6. When St. Augustine *was dying*, his own city *was being attacked* by the Vandals.
7. *Will* America *be kept* free?
8. Rome *had been captured* by the Gauls early in its history.
9. *Is* God *being served* by all men?
10. We *have often been told* of the exploits of our heroic pilots.
11. We *have often heard* of the heroism of our soldiers.

## 2. FINAL PERSONAL SIGNS IN THE PASSIVE

When we studied the present system ACTIVE we found the following final personal signs:

1. <i>I</i>	f -6 l-m	<i>we</i>	-mus
2. <i>you</i>	-s	<i>you</i>	-tis
3. <i>he, she, it</i>	-t	<i>they</i>	-nt

Now, the present, imperfect, and future indicative active (of all conjugations) become PASSIVE by changing these final personal signs as follows:

1. -6	to -or	-mus	to -mur
-m	to -r		
2. -s	to -ris	-tis	to -mini
3. -t	to -tur	-nt	to -ntur

## EXAMPLES:

laudo <sup>o</sup> <i>I am praising</i>	becomes laudor <sup>o</sup> <i>I am being praised</i>
laudabam <sup>a</sup> <i>I was praising</i>	becomes laudabar <sup>a</sup> <i>I was being praised</i>
laudās <sup>s</sup> <i>you are praising</i>	becomes laudāis <sup>s</sup> <i>you are being praised</i>
laudat <sup>t</sup> <i>he is praising</i>	becomes laudatur <sup>t</sup> <i>he is being praised</i>
laudamus <sup>us</sup> <i>we are praising</i>	becomes laudamur <sup>ur</sup> <i>we are being praised</i>
laudatis <sup>is</sup> <i>you are praising</i>	becomes laudamini <sup>ini</sup> <i>you are being praised</i>
laudant <sup>t</sup> <i>they are praising</i>	becomes laudantur <sup>tur</sup> <i>they are being praised</i>

## EXERCISE 200

1. Translate the active form here given;
2. Change the active form to the corresponding passive form :

EXAMPLE: Active Form	Meaning	Passive Form
laudd	<i>I am praising</i>	laudor
1. vocō	13. laudabit	25. collocābunt
2. terreo	14. laudāmus	26. mūniunt
3. audiebam	15. vincēmus	27. laudātis
4. terrebam	16. audiebāmus	28. audiunt
5. laudābo	17. monēmus	29. mittimus
6. monebō	18. laudābimus	30. laudāmus
7. dās	19. laudātis	31. auditis
8. monēs	20. pōnitis	32. laudent
9. agit	21. perturbātis	33. laudās
10. sustinet	22. adjuvābātis	34. moned
11. mittit	23. monebunt	35. mitto
12. vincit	24. dūcebant	

### 3. PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive of the first conjugation, GRAMMAR, NOS. 243-245. Notice that one form does not follow the rules given for final

personal signs in Section 2. The exception is future tense, second person singular: *laudabīs* becomes *laudaberis*.

## VOCABULARY

<i>administro, 1, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{manage} \\ \text{attend to} \end{array} \right.$
<i>appello, 1, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{address} \\ \text{call (upon)} \end{array} \right.$
<i>cōfirmo, 1, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{encourage} \\ \text{strengthen} \end{array} \right.$

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The sacrament of *confirmation*. The president of the United States should be a good *administrator*.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY

<i>dō, dare, dedi, datus, 1, tr.</i>	<i>give</i>
<i>adjuvo, adjuvare, adjuvi, adjutus, 7, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{help} \\ \text{aid} \end{array} \right.$
<i>colloco, 1, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{place} \\ \text{station} \end{array} \right.$
<b><i>oppugnō, 1, tr.</i></b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{attack} \\ \text{assault} \\ \text{storm} \end{array} \right.$

## EXERCISE 201

Give the third person, singular and plural, of the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive of the words in the vocabulary. Translate each form given.

## EXERCISE 202

*Translate:*

- |                         |                          |                         |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>administratur</i> | 5. <i>collocatur</i>     | 9. <i>adjuvantur</i>    |
| 2. <i>appellatur</i>    | 6. <i>laudaberis</i>     | 10. <i>appellabamur</i> |
| 3. <i>oppugnantur</i>   | 7. <i>cōfirmantur</i>    | 11. <i>laudamur</i>     |
| 4. <i>cōfirmatur</i>    | 8. <i>administrantur</i> | 12. <i>datur</i>        |

## EXERCISE 203

1. *Change to the passive;*
2. *Translate both passive and active forms:*

1. cōfirmō	6. cōfirmat	11. cōfirmābunt
2. appellābam	7. administrābat	12. collocant
3. cōfirmābant	8. adjuvabit	13. cōfirmant
4. dabat	9. appellāmus	14. dat
5. administrās	10. adjuvatīs	15. collocābās

## EXERCISE 204

*Translate:*

1. Maria appellābatur. 2. Prōvincia administrābitur. 3. Amici cōfirmantur. 4. Gallia administrātur. 5. Rōmāni cōfirmābantur. 6. Mundus administrātur. 7. Bella administrantur. 8. Deus Rex hominum appellatur. 9. Imperator appellabitur. 10. Pax cōfirmābitur. 11. Principēs appellantur. 12. Virtūs legidnum cōfirmābatur. 13. Spiritus Sāctus appellātur. 14. Rēs administrābatur. 15. Speš victōriae cōfirmātur. 16. Centuriōnēs appellābuntur. 17. Viri forteš cōfirmābuntur. 18. Rōma nōn oppugnābitur. 19. Terra et caelum laudantur. 20. Litterae ducis hosti dantur. 21. Nautae nōn adjuvābantur. 22. Hiberna oppugnābantur. 23. Signum legiōnibus datur. 24. Glōria Deō dabitur. 25. Magnus servoŕum numerus ei dabaŕur. 26. Salus et Vēritās nōbis per Christum dantur. 27. Praemia militibus dabuntur. 28. Victōria nautārum laudābitur. 29. Multi homines in colle collocābuntur. 30. Gentēs finitimae adjuvantur. 31. Pars militum in finibus hostium collocātur. 32. Pueri mali nōn laudantur. 33. Arma Caesari dabantur. 34. Oppidum oppugnābitur. 35. Populus Rōmānus adjuvābatur. 36. Militēs in mūrō collocantur. 37. Fortūna bona laudābatur. 38. Propter grātiam Caesaris frumentum Rōmānis datur. 39. Nomen Dei semper laudabitur. 40. Propter metum vulnerum et mortis, milites Deū appellant. 41. Milites in ponte collocantur. 42. Iēsūs Christus, Dominus noster, laudābitur.

## EXERCISE 205

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Pax saepe propter metum vulnere et mortis laudatur.
2. Erant viri fortes et liberi in exercitu Caesaris. Ei laudabantur; fortiter enim urbes et oppida oppugnauerunt.
3. Confirmabitur pax post proelia et bella et caedes?
4. In periculo Deus semper appellatur.
5. Omnes res fortiter administrabantur quod Caesar, vir fortis et nobilis, imperator erat Romanorum.
6. Aut<sup>1</sup> Lincoln aut<sup>1</sup> Washingtonius princeps fuit omnium ducum Americanorum.
- Itaque ei laudantur et semper laudabuntur.
7. Cum pueri mai<sup>1</sup> non laudantur?
8. Gloria Deo per Iesum Christum datur.
9. Milites et in silvis et in agris collocabantur; in eos hostes impetum fecerunt.
10. Rex malus non adjuvabitur.
11. Milites propter virtutem laudantur. Centuriones etiam propter virtutem et fidem laudantur. Duces et imperatores res fortiter administrant. Itaque ei etiam laudantur.
12. Christiani! boni et in pace et in bello legem Christi servant. Itaque eis magnum praemium in Caelo dabitur.
13. Vos estis Americani!. Et liberi et fortes estis. Itaque semper laudamini.
14. Duces non laudabantur. Longe enim aberant a proeliis et castris.

## EXERCISE 206

*Translate:*

1. The centurions are being addressed.
2. God will be called upon.
3. The affair is being managed.
4. Peace was being strengthened.
5. Soldiers are being stationed in the fields.
6. The cities are being stormed.
7. The soldier is being helped.
8. Grain will be given the soldiers.
9. Our friends will be encouraged.
10. Our soldiers were being helped.
11. The army is being strengthened.
12. Our faith will be strengthened.
13. The war is being managed.
14. You will be praised.
15. We are being encouraged.
16. They were being helped.

---

<sup>1</sup>aut . . . tut: *either ... or.*

## 4. THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

When the verb is PASSIVE, the SUBJECT is the person or thing TO WHICH THE ACTION IS DONE. The PERSON WHO DOES THE ACTION—the LIVING AGENT—is expressed in Latin as in English by a PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE:

Deus ab hominibus laudatur.

*God is being praised by men.*

Bellum a duce administratur.

*The war is being managed by the leader.*

The preposition used is *ab*, *by*, which is generally written a before a word beginning with any consonant except *h*.

*Ab* (*a*) ALWAYS takes the ABLATIVE case.

*ab omnibus hominibus, by all men*

*a duce, by the leader*

*ab hominibus, by men*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the rule, GRAMMAR, NO. 764.

## NOTE

Remember that you have already learned a different meaning and use for *ab* (*a*). When *ab* (*a*) is used in a prepositional phrase modifying **ABSUM**, it must be translated *FROM*. Thus:

*Mōns a flūmine longē abest.*

*The mountain is far away from the river.*

## VOCABULARY

*cōservō, I, tr.*

{ *preserve*  
 { *spare*

*nam, conj.*

*for* (when *for* means *because* and introduces a REASON)

*ab (a), prep. w. abl.*

{ *by* (expressing agency)  
 { *from* (*w. absum*)

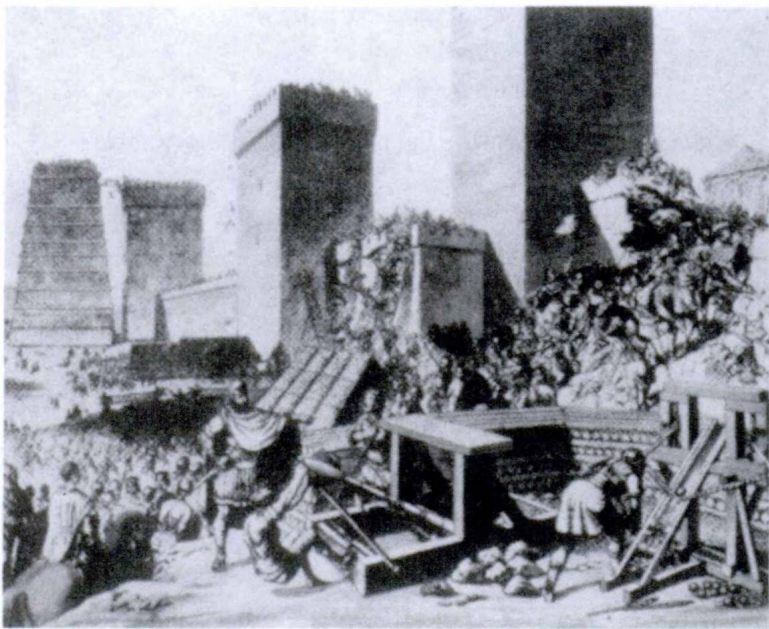
## REVIEW VOCABULARY

voco, *1, tr.* calloccupo, *1, tr.* seize

## EXERCISE 207

*Complete these phrases with a whenever possible; otherwise use ab:*

- |                                |                 |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. By the king.                | rege.           |
| 2. By the enemy.               | hostibus.       |
| 3. By the cavalry.             | equitibus.      |
| 4. By Mary.                    | ..... Maria.    |
| 5. By all slaves.              | omnibus servis. |
| 6. By the leader of the enemy. | hostium duce.   |



OPPIDUM A MULTIBUS OPPUGNATUM EST.



## EXERCISE 208

[Essential]

/. *Translate;*2. *Underline the ablatives of the agent:*. *Warning.* One sentence contains a "booby-trap."

1. Pax a militibus saepe non conservatur, nam gloriae belli cupidi sunt. 2. Imperium a Caesare, viro forti et bono, administrabitur. 3. Copia frumenti a servis non conservabitur. 4. Post proelium nos ab imperatore confirmamur. 5. Laudantur sancti homines a viris bonis? 6. Roma ab America longe abest. 7. Silvae ab equitibus occupabuntur. 8. Laudantur Senatus Romanus a multis viris? 9. Omnes res a duce bono administrantur. 10. Centuriones ab imperatore appellabantur. 11. Imperator a senatu vocatur.

## EXERCISE 209

*Translate:*

1. Our free state will be preserved by free and brave men. 2. All the soldiers will be called into the battle by the commander in chief; for the number of the enemy is large, and they are eager for victory. 3. The faith was being kept by many renowned Christians. 4. Many foreign fields were being seized by the Roman soldiers. 5. The leaders of the Gauls were often called by Caesar. 6. The slaves were being called by the master. 7. The American state is being praised by all free men.

## EXERCISE 210

*Translate:*

QUESTION. Administraturne mundus a Deo?

ANSWER. Mundus a Deo et conservatur et administratur. Nam Deus in principio caelum et terram et omnes res propter nos homines fecit<sup>1</sup> et est hominum Pater. Nos homines a Deo con-

---

<sup>1</sup> fecit: he made.

servāmur, et nobis omnes res a Deo dantur. Veritas et salus nobis a Deo dantur; frumentum et omnium rerum copia nobis<sup>1</sup> a Deo et parantur et conservantur. Itaque in mortis periculo a nautis Deus appellatur; in belli periculis a militibus appellatur; a matribus et patribus, a viris et pueris, a Christianis et ab omnibus hominibus semper et in omnibus locis appellatur. Nam Deus bonus est, et homines ab eo semper adjuvantur et confirmantur. Itaque Deus semper ab hominibus bonis et sanctis laudatur, nam Pater omnium hominum est.

## EXERCISE 211

*Translate:*

Turn imperium populi Romani a Caesare occupabatur. Vir fortis erat, nam ab eo et hostes superabantur et amici confirmabantur. Post ejus mortem pax ab imperatoribus Romanis per arma et legiones confirmabatur. Non omnes autem homines liberi erant, nam multi homines erant servi miseri. Pax Romana ab imperatoribus confirmabatur, sed libertas<sup>2</sup> omnium hominum a Romanis non conservabatur.

## EXERCISE 212

*Translate:*

Civitas Americana a militibus fortibus conservatur et semper conservabitur. Milites Americani! ab hostibus etiam fortibus non superabuntur. Viri Americani! propter virtutem et fidem a nobis et ab omnibus hominibus semper laudabuntur.

## READING NO. 7

## HANNIBAL IN ITALY!

Hannibal trans magnos et altos montes exercitum duxerat. Hostis populi Romani in Italia erat. Itaque Romani in magno

---

<sup>1</sup> Translate for us.

<sup>2</sup> libertas, libertas: liberty (ci. liber).

periculō erant. Exercitus Rōmānus in Hispāniā<sup>1</sup> erat. Scipio<sup>2</sup> cum legionibus Rōmānis in Galliā fuerat. Is autem exercitum in Hispāniā<sup>1</sup> misit et in Italiam contendit.

Galli partēs Italiae Alpibus finitimas tenebant. Ei hostes erant populi Rōmāni et saepe cum Rōmānis bellum gesserant. Itaque in edrum fines Hannibal exercitum duxit et ab eis adjuvabatur. Ibi Scipio,<sup>2</sup> dux Rōmānorum, cum Hannibale pugnavit sed Hannibal eum vicit. Rōmāni tamen pacem non petiverunt.



HANNIBAL IN ITALIA EST!

Many of the Gauls who dwelt in northern Italy were now in insurrection around the Roman army. A second army sent out from Rome effected a juncture with Scipio, but the position of the legions remained critical. Scipio had been wounded in the first battle with Hannibal, and a lesser man, Tiberius Sempronius, was now in command. For political reasons Sempronius was eager to fight a pitched battle with the Carthaginian army. Hannibal understood the character of this man. On a cold and bleak December day a screen of Carthaginian horse, retreating by order, drew the Roman cavalry across the swollen river Trebia. Sempronius thought his chance had come. He hurriedly sent his army through the icy waters of the Trebia.

Suddenly in the mist the Romans found themselves confronted by the main force of the enemy.

Itaque equites et Rōmānorum et hostium fortiter pugnant.

<sup>1</sup> Hispānia, ae: *Spain*.

<sup>2</sup> Scipio, Scipionis: *Scipio* (a Roman family name).

Interim imperatōr Rōmānus cōpiās in proelium mlsit. Elephant<sup>1</sup> et equitēs hostium equitēs Rōmānōs terruērunt et superāverunt. Turn in milites hostium legidnēs Rōmānae impetum fdcērunt. Milites Rōmāni fortes erant et fortiter pugnābant. Tamen ab hoste superābantur. Turn pars militum hostium a tēgo<sup>2</sup> \* impetum in Rōmānōs fēcīt? (*These had been placed in ambush by Hannibal with orders to attack the Roman rear.*) Itaque hostēs undique impetum in Rōmānōs fecērunt. Tamen pars Rōmānōrum per hostēs vēnit (*this group was 10,000 in number*) et tūta in oppidum Rōmānum vēnit. Galli et Carthāginiēnsēs\* reliquōs Rōmānōs omnēs occidērunt. Nōn multi Rōmāni tūti in castra vēnerunt. Victōria Hannibalis fuit. Fortuna hostes, nōn Rōmānos, adjuverat.

*Answer in complete Latin sentences of at least three words:*

1. Vēneratne Hannibal trañs Alpes?
2. Ubi erant exercitus Rōmāni?
3. Quis erat imperatōr Rōmānōrum?
4. Superāveruntne equites Rōmāni hostes?
5. Vicēruntne Rōmāni?

#### EXERCISE 213

[Honor Work]

#### AN IMAGINARY SPEECH

Imagine that Rome is at war (and it generally was!). The political opponents of the government are criticizing the war policy of the administration and its generals. A spokesman for the government rises in the Roman senate and speaks:

*Translate into Latin:*

“The war is being managed by a brave leader. Before<sup>5</sup> the war all things were being prepared by him; grain and arms were being

<sup>1</sup> elephantus, i: elephant.

<sup>2</sup> a tergo: from the rear.

\* fēcīt: made.

\* Carthāginiēnsēs, Carthāginiēnsium: the Carthaginians.

<sup>6</sup> before: ante, prep. w. acc.

carried into the towns of the province by the slaves; hills and bridges were being seized by the legions; the courage of the soldiers was being strengthened by the centurions. Now, in the dangers of war, the general of the Roman legions is praised by both Roman soldiers and the enemy. For he has frightened the enemy, and their fear is the glory of a Roman general. Why is he not praised by the Roman Senate? Why is he not helped by you all? GOOD men are now praising him and good men will always praise him."

*Reply to this speech:*

Imagine that you are a leader of one of the parties opposed to the government. Write a short speech in Latin answering the arguments given above. USE WORDS AND CONSTRUCTIONS YOU KNOW. DON'T USE ANY CONSTRUCTION ABOUT WHICH YOU ARE DOUBTFUL.

## LESSON 18: PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION; ABLATIVE OF MEANS

### 1. PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive of the second conjugation, GRAMMAR, NOS. 246, 249, and 252. Notice that there is ONE change which does not follow the rules for final personal signs given in Section 2 of Lesson 17. **Monebīs** becomes **moneberis.**

#### VOCABULARY

contineō, continēre, continui, contentus, 2, tr.	{ <i>restrain</i> <i>hold in</i>
obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus, 2, tr.	{ <i>hold</i> <i>occupy</i>
aut, conj.	<i>or</i>
aut . . . aut, conj.	<i>either ... or</i>
Deque . . . neque, conj.	<i>neither . . . nor</i>
postea, adv.	<i>afterwards</i>

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORD

*A container.*

#### RELATED LATIN WORDS

**Post; ea.**

#### REVIEW VOCABULARY

terreō, 2, tr.	<i>terrify</i>
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus, 2, tr.	<i>hold</i>
videō, vidēre, vidi, visus, 2, tr.	<i>see</i>

## EXERCISE 214

1. Write out the full principal parts of *terreo*.
2. Give the third person, singular and plural, of the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive of all the words in the vocabulary. Translate each form given.

## EXERCISE 215

*Translate:*

- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. continentur | 6. vidētur       |
| 2. obtinebātur | 7. obtinebitur   |
| 3. terreberis  | 8. terrebantur   |
| 4. tenētur     | 9. continebāmini |
| 5. terrentur   | 10. tenebuntur   |

## EXERCISE 216

*Translate:*

1. Hostēs ab equitibus Rōmānis saepe terrentur. 2. Impetus hostium ā militibus fortibus sustinebitur. 3. Multi pueri in agris vidēbantur. 4. Viri nobiles et magni neque terrebantur neque superābantur. 5. Collis militibus integris complētur. 6. Reliqui hostēs ā Rōmānis undique tenēbantur. 7. Postea signum ā centuriōne movebitur. 8. Hostēs propter metum gravem terrebantur. 9. Viri sāncti mortis metū nōn terrebantur. 10. Monte alii undique ab Helvētiis<sup>1</sup> videntur. 11. Hostēs undique continentur. 12. Locus clāmōre miserōrum militum complebātur. 13. Postea imperium ā Caesare obtinebātur. 14. Regnum a rege glōriae cupidō saepe obtinetur. 15. Pōns ā militibus fortibus tenētur. 16. Galli prōvinciae finitimi terrentur. 17. Propter metum mortis neque movebantur neque terrebantur. 18. Impetus sustinetur. 19. Legiōnēs Rōmānae nōn terrentur. 20. Rōmāni a Gallis, viris fortibus, nōn terrentur. 21. Omnes milites in castris continebuntur. 22. Postea castra trās flumen movebuntur. 23. Puer terrebatur

---

<sup>1</sup> Helvētii, Helvetiōrūm: the Helvetians (the inhabitants of ancient Switzerland).

quod ā patre et mātre longē afuit. 24. Viri liberi nōn continebantur. 25. Oppidum frumenti plenum obtinebitur.

## EXERCISE 217

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. The soldiers were being restrained by the commander in chief.
2. The power is being held by Caesar. 3. The enemy are being terrified by the cavalry. 4. The Roman column will be seen by the Gauls. 5. The town will be either held by us or seized by the enemy. 6. The bridge is being held by the cavalry. 7. Afterwards the royal power will be held by him. 8. We shall be terrified neither by the soldiers nor by the cavalry. 9. They were being held in by the cavalry.

## 2. THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

We have seen that the living agent is expressed by ab (ā) with the ablative.

The ablative WITHOUT A PREPOSITION is used to express:

1. The NON-LIVING AGENT.

**Montibus** continebantur.

*They were held in by mountains.*

(BUT: **Ab** hoste continebantur.

*They were being held in by the enemy.)*

Hostēs **voċibus** militum terrebantur.

*The enemy were being terrified by the cries of the soldiers.*

2. The MEANS or INSTRUMENT with which something is done.

Rōmāni **telis** hiberna defenderunt

*The Romans defended the winter quarter {with  
---  
by means of} darts.*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the rule, GRAMMAR, No. 765.



## EXERCISE 218

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized cases:*

1. Christiān! Deum et vōce et virtūte laudant. 2. Rōmāni Christiānōs gladiis nōn vicērunt. 3. Res Rōmāna armis et virtūte cōservābatur. 4. Rōmāni hiberna telīs et gladiis semper defendērunt. 5. Virtūs equitum fortium praemiis cōfirmābatur. 6. Interim centuriōnēs litteris Caesaris monēbuntur. 7. Helvētii<sup>1</sup> montibus altis et magno flūmine undique continentur.

## EXERCISE 219

*All the prepositional phrases in these sentences are to be translated by the ablative of means.*

*Translate:*

1. They defended the camp *with darts*.
2. The soldiers' courage will be strengthened *by* the centurion's *speech*.
3. They fought *with swords*.
4. The Roman state was being preserved *by the courage* of the Roman Senate and people.
5. The Romans fortified cities *by means of walls*.

## READING NO. 8

## HANNIBAL ANNIHILATES A ROMAN ARMY!

Victōria Hannibalis magna fuit. Senātus Populusque Rōmānus tamen pācem nōn petēbat. Integrās cōpiās parāvērunt. Arma et tela parābantur.

A new general, Gaius Flaminius, was now in command of the Roman forces. Hannibal crossed the Apennines into Etruria, marched through terrain made almost impassable by the spring rains, and took up a strong position before Flaminius, who had planned to block the mountain passes, knew he had managed the crossing. Hannibal, to incite the Romans to fight on his own

---

<sup>1</sup> Helvētii, Helvetiōnīm: *Helvetians*.

terms, marched past the Roman camp, pillaging and wasting the land all around. This was too much for the headstrong Flaminius. Though his army was inferior, he pursued the Carthaginians. The road along which the Carthaginians were marching enters, as it skirts Lake Trasimene, a narrow strip of plain enclosed by surrounding hills which come close down to the shore of the lake. Here Hannibal took up a strong position to await the pursuing Romans.

In colie Hannibal magnum numerum militum collocavit; equites autem in dextra<sup>1</sup> et sinistra<sup>2</sup> \* parte collocavit. (*Besides, a mist concealed his positions.*) Itaque imperator Rōmānus, proelii et victōriæ cupidus, exercitum Rōmānum in loca angusta dūxit. Subito<sup>3</sup> Rōmāni hostēs viderunt. Undique ab hostibus continēbantur. Nōn erat spēs salutis. Rōmāni et tēlis terrēbantur et ab equitibus perturbabāntur. Turn hostes<sup>4</sup> undique in Rōmānos impetum fecerunt. Caedēs Rōmāndrum magna fuit. Locus clamōre Rōmānōrum miserdrum complēbatur. Pars tamen Rōmānōrum per hostēs venīt. Eds autem equites hostium postea occiderunt.

In this battle—and slaughter rather than a battle—the Romans lost an entire army, 15,000 killed and 15,000 captured. The Carthaginians lost only 1,500 men, and these mainly from their Gallic auxiliaries.

Victōria hostium magna fuit. Periculum Rōmānōrum grave erat. Tamen etiam turn Rōmāni de<sup>5</sup> pace cum hostibus nōn ēgērunt. Spem salutis in virtute<sup>6</sup> ponebānt.

As an officer in Caesar's army was to say later, "Romans never ask terms of peace from an armed foe." Such was the invincible spirit of Rome.

---

<sup>1</sup> dexter, dextra, dextrum: *right*.

<sup>2</sup> sinister, sinistra, sinistrum: *left*.

<sup>3</sup> subito, adv.: *suddenly*.

## LESSON 19: PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

### 1. PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

The rules for changes in the final personal signs apply also to the present system indicative PASSIVE of the THIRD conjugation.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the model verbs, GRAMMAR, NOS. 247, 250, and 253.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus, 3, tr.</b>	<i>hand over</i>
<b>dīmittō, dimittere, dimisi, dimissus, 3, tr.</b>	<i>{ send away</i>
	<i>{ dismiss</i>
<b>occidd, occīdere, occidi, occiſus, 3, tr.</b>	<i>kill</i>
<b>sine, prep. w. abl.</b>	<i>without</i>
<b>ferē, adv.</b>	<i>almost</i>

#### REVIEW VOCABULARY

<b>defendo, defendere, defend!, defēsus, 3, tr.</b>	<i>defend</i>
<b>dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus, 3, tr.</b>	<i>{ lead</i>
	<i>{ guide</i>
<b>pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus, 3, tr.</b>	<i>{ drive</i>
	<i>{ repulse</i>
	<i>{ rout</i>
<b>vincō, vincere, vici, victus, 3, tr.</b>	<i>conquer</i>
<b>agō, agere, ēgi, āctus, 3, tr.</b>	<i>{ drive</i>
	<i>{ do</i>
	<i>{ act</i>
	<i>{ treat</i>
	<i>{ give (w. gratias)</i>

## NOTE

The phrase *gratiās āgo mēans* *I give thanks* or *I thank* and takes an indirect object.

**Tibi grātiās agimus. *We thank you (We give thanks to you).***

## EXERCISE 220

Give the third persons, singular and plural, present, imperfect and future indicative passive of all the verbs in the vocabulary.

## EXERCISE 221

*Translate :*

- |                 |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. trādebatur   | 5. pōnuntur     | 9. pelluntur    |
| 2. dimittebatur | 6. dimitteris   | 10. dūcitur     |
| 3. occiduntur   | 7. occidebantur | 11. vincebatur  |
| 4. dūcentur     | 8. incenditur   | 12. trādebantur |

## EXERCISE 222

1. *Change to the passive;*
2. *Translate both active and passive forms:*

- |               |              |                |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. trādam     | 6. trādet    | 11. occidēs    |
| 2. dimittebat | 7. occidemus | 12. dūcent     |
| 3. occidunt   | 8. pōnebās   | 13. incendit   |
| 4. dēfenditis | 9. trādit    | 14. pellebant  |
| 5. dimittit   | 10. dimitto  | 15. sustinetis |

## EXERCISE 223

*Translate:*

1. Princeps hostium senatui traduntur.
2. Gallus occiditur.
3. Homo malus a senatu occidetur.
4. Italia a Romanis defenditur.
5. Galli et pelluntur et occiduntur.
6. Agmen in fines hostium ducitur.
7. Gratiae Deo aguntur.
8. Equites in gentes finitimas dimittebantur.
9. Vos in Galliam mittimini.
10. Roma defenditur.
11. Servi saepe occiduntur.
12. Omnes fere gentes finitimae vincuntur.
13. Agmen a Caesare ducitur.
14. Hostes tamen vincuntur.
15. Urbs hostibus non tradetur.
16. Equites in

gentes reliquas dimittuntur. 17. Castra tellis defendebantur. 18. Romani neque pelluntur neque occiduntur. 19. Reges gloriae cupidi cum gentibus finitimis bellum saepe gerunt. 20. Frumenta in agris saepe incenduntur.

## EXERCISE 224

*Translate:*

1. The enemy's cavalry was being killed by darts. 2. The Senate is being dismissed. 3. Almost all the swords and darts will be handed over by the leaders of the Gauls. 4. Almost all the tribes of Gaul were being conquered by the Romans. 5. Our cities and towns are being defended by brave soldiers. 6. The army will be led into Gaul by the general. 7. The enemy's cavalry will be repulsed by our cavalry. 8. The Gauls were fighting without hope. 9. Thanks are being given to the Senate.

## 2. ABLATIVES OF AGENCY AND MEANS COMPARED

Study these differences between the ablative of agency and the ablative of means:

## THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT:

1. ALWAYS has the preposition *ab* (a) in Latin.
2. ALWAYS expresses a LIVING AGENT (a person, soldiers, Caesar, lions, an army, etc.).
3. ALWAYS has the preposition *by* in English.

**Deus a Christianis laudatur. God is (being) praised by Christians.**

## THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS:

1. NEVER has a preposition in Latin.
2. Generally expresses a THING (a sword, courage, shouting, etc.).
3. Generally has *by* or *with* in English.

**Servi tellis (glad id) occidebantur.**

**The slaves were being killed by darts (with a sword).**

## EXERCISE 225

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized forms:*

*Warning.* One sentence conceals several “booby-traps.”

1. *Silvae saepe in bello ab hostibus incenduntur.* 2. *Rōma virtute legidnum cōservābatur.* 3. *Centuriones in omnes fere gentes finitimās a Caesare dimittuntur.* 4. *Cōpiae Rōmānae a Gallis nōn pelluntur.* 5. *Virtus militum spe victōriae semper cōfirmatur.* 6. *Post proelium principes hostium a Rōmānis saepe occidebantur.* 7. *Principes a Caesare nōn dimittuntur.* 8. *Telis occiditur.* 9. *Miles Rōmānus hostem videt. Eum efficit occidit.* 10. *Militēs undique dūcentur; castra in colie pōnentur; arma et frumentum in castra portabūntur.*

## EXERCISE 226

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized forms:*

*Warning.* Some of these sentences have the ablative of means; some have the ablative of agency.

1. All things were being attended to *by the general*. 2. They fortified the camp *with a wall*. 3. He killed the leading men *with a sword*. 4. Peace was being strengthened *by the courage* of the legions. 5. They were being defended *by Roman cavalry*. 6. The city was being handed over *by the Gauls*. 7. He conquered the enemy *by the courage* of the Roman soldiers. 8. The leading men are being sent away *by the Roman general*.

## READING NO. 9

## SCIPIO INVADES AFRICA!

Hannibal continued to win victories in the open field, but he could not break the spirit of Rome. Gradually the superior resources of the Romans and their dogged determination began to tell. The Carthaginians withdrew their forces from Italy and



HANNIBAL ELEPHANTOS HABEBAT.

Sicily, and at last Publius Cornelius Scipio, son of the Scipio who had first faced Hannibal in northern Italy, led an invasion of Africa itself. (This was in 204 B. c.; the war had opened in 218 B. c.) The final battle of the war was fought at Zama in northern Africa, probably in the spring of 202 B. c.

Hannibal magnum militum numerum habuit sed nōn ita multōs equitēs. Scipiō nōn ita multōs militēs habēbat, multōs autem equitēs. Hannibal etiam elephantōs<sup>1</sup> habēbat. (*There were said to be about eighty.*) Romāni ēlephantos nōn habebant.

Hannibal planned to drive his elephants in an opening charge against the Roman foot soldiers to throw them into disorder. The Carthaginian cavalry, stationed on the flanks, was meanwhile to retreat and draw the superior cavalry of the Romans off the field, thus leaving Hannibal free to attack the disordered legions with numerically superior infantry.

How did Scipio meet this attack?

(Continued on page 204)

---

<sup>1</sup> elephantus, l: *elephant*.

## LESSON 20: PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION; ACCOMPANIMENT

### 1. PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

The rules for final personal signs in the passive apply also to the fourth conjugation.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, Nos. 248, 251, and 254.

#### REVIEW VOCABULARY

**audiō, 4, tr.**

*hear*

**mūniō, 4, tr.**

*{ fortify  
construct (w.  
viam or vias)*

**veniō, venīre, vēni, ventum, 4, intr.**

*come*

**conveniō, convenire, conveñi, conventum, 4, intr.**

*{ come together  
assemble*

#### EXERCISE 227

*Translate:*

1. auditur

4. mūnientur

7. audiētur

2. mūniuntur

5. audior

8. mūniēbatur

3. audiebatur

6. mūniēbantur

9. audiuntur

#### EXERCISE 228

[Essential]

*1. Translate;*

*2. Explain the construction of the italicized words:*

1. Castra ā Rōmānis semper mūniēbantur. 2. Quid ā vōbis auditur? 3. Cum Caesare per monieŝ in Galliam vēni. 4. Urbs ā rēge victōriae cupidū mūnitur. 5. Christo, Filid Dei, grātiās agimus. 6. Interim et collēs et pontēs ā legiōnibus mūniēbantur. 7. Fuit metus in castris quod clamor hostiū audiebatur.



8. *Pueris* malls praemia nōn dabuntur. 9. *Ubi* est Rōma? 10. Filius saepe est *patris* similis. 11. *Gentēs jinibus hostium* finitimae saepe cōpiam armōrum petunt. 12. Fuitne Lincoln *Washingtonid* similis? 13. Legidnēs integrae in *hostēs* mittuntur. 14. Clamor nauarum *reliqudrum* audiebatur. 15. Maria est *grātia* plēna. 16. *Silvae perculdrum* plēnae sunt. 17. Propter hostium *metum* legidnēs prō *portis* instruebantur. 18. Urbs mūrd mūnitur. 19. Quis prō *rege* pugñabit? 20. Impedimenta magna erant. 21. Post *bellum* fuit pāx. 22. Caesar fuit Rōmāndrum *imperātor*. 23. *Loca* angusta et difficilia fuērunt. 24. Rōma ā *Galliā* longē abest. 25. Oppidum militibus complebatur. 26. Miles similis *duel* nōn erat. 27. Rōmāni Rōmam *virtute* et armis semper dēfendērunt. 28. *Cūr* iter per montēs nōn fecerunt? 29. Milites undique telā in hostes miserunt. 30. Dux regnum occupavit.

## 2. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

Do not confuse the ABLATIVE OF MEANS with the ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT:

When *with* expresses association, pointing out the person or thing in company with which something is or is done, the ABLATIVE WITH CUM MUST BE USED. This is called the ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

*He came with the Roman.*

**Cum Rōmānō vēnit.**

(i. e., He came IN COMPANY WITH the Roman.)

*The swords are in the camp with the darts.*

**Gladii in caatria CUM TELIS aūt,**

(i. e., They are TOGETHER WITH the darts.)

(BUT: *He is being killed with a sword.*

Gladio occiditur.)

(*ſ. e.*, He is being killed BY MEANS OF A SWORD.

The sword is the instrument or *means*.)

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the rule for accompaniment in GRAMMAR, No. 772.



CUM ROMANIS VENIT.



GLADIO OCCIDITUR.

## EXERCISE 229

*Some of the with-phrases in these sentences are to be translated by the ablative of MEANS, some by the ablative of ACCOMPANIMENT.*

*Translate:*

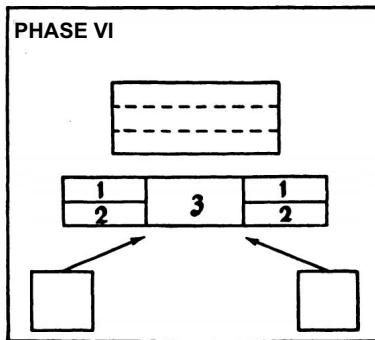
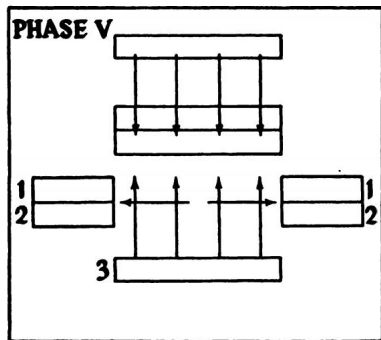
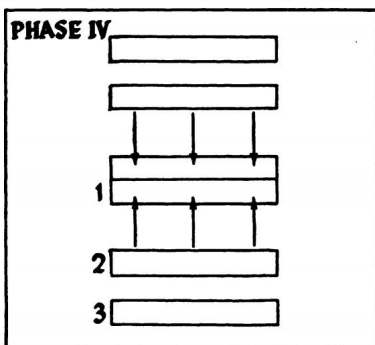
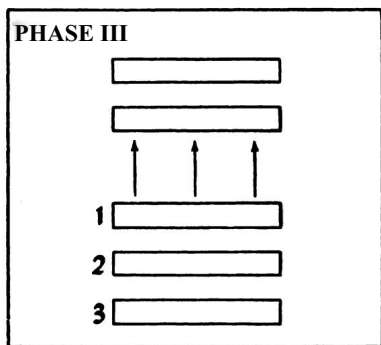
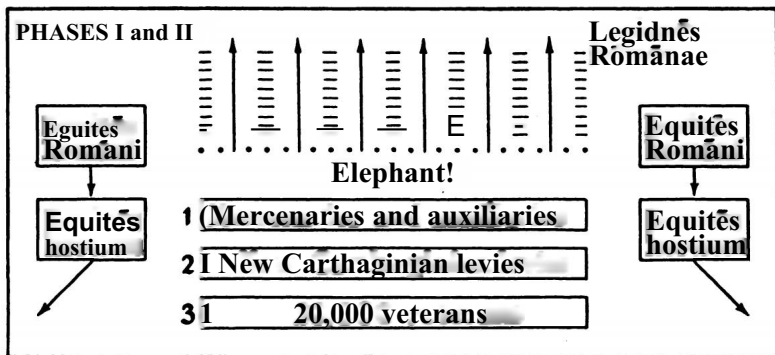
1. They fought *with* swords. 2. Caesar was fighting *with* the Gauls. 3. The cavalry was in the camp *with* the soldiers. 4. The camp was being fortified *with* a wall. 5. Mary is in heaven *with* God. 6. They terrified the cavalry *with* (their) shouting.

## READING NO. 10

## THE BATTLE OF ZAMBA—HANNIBAL'S LAST STAND

Et Hannibal et Scipio milites instruxerunt. Virtus et spes militum orationibus imperatorum confirmabantur. "Spem in virtute ponemus! Fortiter pugnabimus! Aut vincemus aut vincemur!"

Hannibal lined up his eighty elephants in front of his main army. In the first line behind them he placed his 12,000 mercenary troops, men drawn from many lands and held together by devotion to their great leader. In the second line he stationed 15,000 new Carthaginian levies. Behind these he held in re-



serve 20,000 veteran troops to strike the final blow for victory. The cavalry were massed on either flank. (*See diagram: Phases I and II.*)

Hannibal signum dedit. Elephant!<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> in aciem Rōmānam mittēbantur. (*See diagram: Phases I and II.*)

Scipio, however, had arranged his men so as to leave lanes between his troops. The soldiers thus easily shifted to allow the elephants to run harmlessly between them.

Itaque elephant!<sup>1</sup> neque Rōmānōs terruerunt neque aciem perturbaverunt. (*See diagram: Phases I and II.*)

Interim equitēs Rōmāni in equitēs hostium impetum fecerunt. Hostēs autem impetum nōn sustinuerunt. Itaque equitēs hostium cesserunt.

Thus both cavalries rushed off the field as Hannibal had probably planned. (*See diagram: Phases I and II.*)

Turn prima aciēs hostium in Rōmānōs ab Hannibale mittēbātur. (*See diagram: Phase III.*) Re<sup>2</sup> gladiō gerebatur. Et Rōmāni et hostēs fortiter pugnabant. Vocēs et clāmor hominum undique audiebantur. Multi et hostēs et Rōmāni telis et gladiis occidebantur. Milites tamen Rōmāni impetum sustinebant. Itaque et Scipio et Hannibal integrōs milites in proelium misenmt. (*See diagram: Phase IV.*)

Rōmāni autem ā militibus integris nōn superabantur. Itaque hostēs in magno periculo erant.

Both armies were now in great confusion and both attempted to re-form. Hannibal pushed his third line of veterans to the front and rejoined battle. (*See diagram: Phase V.*) The battle raged on through long and bloody hours. Finally the Roman cavalry, having left off pursuit, probably according to instructions, returned to the field.

Turn equitēs Rōmāni ā tergō<sup>2</sup> impetum in hostēs fecerunt. (*See diagram: Phase VI.*) Itaque hostēs ā Rōmānis undique continē-

<sup>1</sup> elephantus, i: *elephant*.

<sup>2</sup> ā tergō: *from the rear*.

bantur. Magna erat caedēs hostium miserdrum. Rōmāni enim omnēs ferē hostēs aut occidērunt aut cēpērunt.<sup>1</sup> (*Hannibal, however, escaped capture and fled from the field.*)

Post proelium hostēs pācem petiverunt. Ita, post multas hostium victōriās et magnam Rōmāndrum caedem, Rōmāni hostēs virtute et armis vicerunt.

---

<sup>1</sup> cēpērunt: (they) captured.

## LESSON 21: THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses passive are COMPOUND tenses in Latin. They are formed by using the PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE as a predicate adjective with the verb *sum*, *am*.

The PERFECT indicative passive is compounded of the perfect participle passive (the fourth principal part in -us) and the present indicative of the verb *to be*.

The perfect participle passive is declined like *magnus*, *a*, *um* and agrees with the subject of the sentence, just like a predicate adjective. Explain all the underlined endings in these examples:

Ego laudatus sum. *I was praised.*

Tu laudatus es. *You were praised.*

Maria a Christianis laudata est. *Mary was praised by the Christians.*

Nos laudati sumus. *We were praised.*

Vos laudati estis. *You were praised.*

Milites laudati sunt. *The soldiers were praised.*

Matres laudatae sunt. *The mothers were praised.*

Flumina laudata sunt. *The rivers were praised.*

In forming the PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE PASSIVE in all conjugations follow this rule:

1. Take the PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE of the verb (the fourth principal part of transitive verbs).
2. Add, as a separate word, the required form of the verb *sum*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the model verbs, GRAMMAR, NOS. 255-266.

## VOCABULARY

vehementer, <i>adv.</i> ,	{ greatly violently
exploŕo, 1, <i>tr.</i>	{ reconnoiter find out
premo, premere, press!, pressus, 3, <i>tr.</i>	{ press Press hard
retined, retineŕe, retinul, retentus, 2, <i>tr.</i>	{ hold back keep
compare, 1, <i>tr.</i>	{ get prepare

## EXERCISE 230

Conjugate in the perfect system indicative active: (a) conservo, (b) retineo, (c) premo, (d) munid.

## EXERCISE 231

*Give the perfect participles passive  
(the fourth principal part) of:*

- |             |                |               |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. laudō    | 17. paro       | 32. pōnd      |
| 2. moneō    | 18. vinco      | 33. mūnid     |
| 3. superō   | 19. appello    | 34. collocō   |
| 4. habeo    | 20. peto       | 35. cōnfirmō  |
| 5. portō    | 21. do         | 36. incendō   |
| 6. dēfendō  | 22. ago        | 37. adj u vō  |
| 7. occupō   | 23. administro | 38. videō     |
| 8. dūcō     | 24. movē       | 39. pellō     |
| 9. gerō     | 25. voco       | 40. perturbo  |
| 10. oppugno | 26. comparo    | 41. obtineō   |
| 11. trādō   | 27. retined    | 42. cōnserveō |
| 12. audiō   | 28. occido     | 43. incito    |
| 13. terreō  | 29. exploŕo    | 44. serveō    |
| 14. instruo | 30. dimitto    | 45. contineō  |
| 15. mitto   | 31. sustineo   | 46. premo     |
| 16. compleo |                |               |

## EXERCISE 232

Conjugate *sum* in the (1) present indicative, (2) imperfect indicative, (3) future indicative.

## EXERCISE 233

*Add the proper endings to the participles and translate:*

*Note.* Remember that in a compound tense the perfect participle passive agrees in number and gender with the subject of the sentence.

1. *Vos laudatēstis.*
2. *Oppidum traditēst.*
3. *Principes re tentsunt.*
4. *Copia frumenti comparatēst.*
5. *Omnia loca exploratēst.*
6. *Hostes presssunt.*
7. *Tu laudatēst.*
8. *Nos laudatsumus.*
9. *Voces auditsunt.*
10. *Nautae retentsunt.*
11. *Exercitus superatēst.*
12. *Castra motēst.*

## EXERCISE 234

*Add the proper form of the verb sum:*

1. You have been praised. *Vos laudati!*
2. They have been conquered. *Victi*
3. You have been warned. *Tu monitus*
4. The courage of the soldiers has been strengthened. *Virtus militum confirmata*
5. All the places had been reconnoitered. *Omnia loca explorata*
6. We had been held back. *Nos retenti*
7. It has been prepared. *Comparatum*
8. The camp has been fortified. *Castra munita*



## EXERCISE 235

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Vos laudati eratis. 2. Tū monitus es. 3. Equitēs superāti sunt. 4. Pōns incēnsus est. 5. Frūmentum portātum est. 6. Castra dēfēsa sunt. 7. Omnia ferē loca occupāta erant. 8. Ei pulsi sunt. 9. Duct! sumus. 10. Ea gesta sunt. 11. Oppidum oppugnātum erat. 12. Arma eis trādita sunt. 13. Audit! estis. 14. Vehementer territi erāmus. 15. Militēs instructi sunt. 16. Litterae missae sunt. 17. Mōns hominibus complētus erat. 18. Tēla parāta sunt. 19. Victi sumus. 20. Appellāti erātis. 21. Pāx petita est. 22. Frūmentum eis datum est. 23. Actum est. 24. Rēs administrāta est. 25. Castra mōta erant. 26. Centuriōnēs vocāti erant. 27. Galli pressi sunt. 28. Cōpia tēlōrum comparāta erat. 29. Ducēs retenti sunt. 30. Occisi sunt. 31. Montēs explōrāti erant. 32. Principeſ dimissi erant. 33. Impetus sustentus erat. 34. Spēs in virtūte posita est. 35. Oppidum mūnitum est. 36. Legiōnēs ibi collocātae sunt. 37. Omneſ rēs comparātae erant. 38. Pāx cōfirmāta est. 39. Territi sumus. 40. Frūmenta in agris incēnsa sunt. 41. Adjūtus sum. 42. Pulsi estis. 43. Visus es. 44. Pulsus est. 45. Vehementer perturbātus eram. 46. Obtentum est imperium. 47. Lēx cōservāta nōn est. 48. Gentēs finitimae incitātae erant. 49. Legid prima pressa est. 50. Signum servātum erat. 51. Undique content! sumus. 52. Pressi sunt.

## EXERCISE 236

[Drill]

*Translate:*

1. I was praised by Caesar. 2. You were warned by the slave. 3. We were conquered by the enemy. 4. A large number of slaves was had by the Romans. 5. Grain had been carried into the winter quarters. 6. The town had been bravely defended. 7. The hills were seized by the cavalry. 8. The Romans were led by a brave general. 9. War had been waged with the Gauls.

10. The city had been attacked. 11. We were handed over to the enemy by the leader. 12. The speech was heard by the chiefs. 13. You had been terrified by the darts. 14. The legions were drawn up by Caesar. 15. The letter was sent by the chief. 16. The wall was filled with men. 17. Arms had been gotten. 18. We were not conquered. 19. God had been called upon. 20. Peace was sought. 21. The swords were given to the soldiers. 22. The enemy was driven into the forest. 23. The war was managed by a brave general. 24. The camp had been moved into a safe place. 25. The centurions had been called by the general. 26. The enemy was routed by darts. 27. All things had been got ready. 28. The king had been held back. 29. The leaders had been killed by swords. 30. All the places had been reconnoitered. 31. The slaves were dismissed. 32. The attack was withstood by the battle line. 33. The camp had been pitched there. 34. The camp was fortified with a wall. 35. A horseman had been stationed on the bridge. 36. Peace had been strengthened. 37. The grain had been burned by the Romans. 38. They were helped by both slaves and free men. 39. Soldiers had assembled. 40. He had been seen by the horseman. 41. The cavalry were repulsed. 42. The first battle line was disturbed. 43. The royal power was held by a good man. 44. The state had been preserved by brave men. 45. The legion was sent into the camp. 46. The faith has been kept by many Christians. 47. The soldiers were restrained by the leaders.

## EXERCISE 237

## OMNIA BELLA SIMILIA SUNT

*Translate:*

1. Propter bellum gladii et tela<sup>1</sup> a Rōmānis comparāta erant; hodiē<sup>1</sup> etiam multa et magna arma ab Americanis cōmparantur.

2. In castris Rōmānōrum saepe fuit magna omnium rerum inopia; in castris Americanis etiam saepe est rerum inopia.

---

<sup>1</sup> hodiē, *adv.*: today.

3. In bellis Rōmānōrum omnia loca ab equitibus saepe explōrāta sunt; in bellis autem hodiernis<sup>1</sup> omnia loca ab aviātoribus<sup>2</sup> explōrantur.

4. Turn hostēs ab equitatū saepe press! sunt; hodie<sup>3</sup> hostēs ab armigeris<sup>4</sup> premuntur.

5. Bellum Gallicum<sup>5</sup> a Caesare administrātum est. Quis bellum commūne hodie<sup>3</sup> administrat?

6. Caesar, impētor Rōmānōrum, propter victōriam laudātus est. Laudaūturne duces American! propter victoriam?

### READING NO. 11

### PICTURES FROM THE PAST

#### AN IMAGINARY INTERVIEW WITH A CENTURION

The professor cleared his throat. We waited expectantly. "Gentlemen," he said, "I have invited you here tonight to see the first demonstration of my electrical wave detector. This machine cannot only gather and combine into a picture the waves being sent off from any part of the earth at the present time, but it can detect even the smallest remnants of waves which, sent off at some past time, are yet vibrating in the universal medium of all electrical waves. However, this is not an explanation of a theory but a demonstration of success. Watch carefully. I set this control for time (*with growing excitement we watched him turning the dial*), and this (*he began moving a larger dial on the huge machine*) for space. Now, I throw the power switch (*A large screen or mirror became suddenly illumined with splotches of changing colors.*) This should put our picture at approximately 58 B. c. somewhere in southern Gaul."

"I have not yet," he added apologetically, "succeeded in exactly correlating my controls with the longitudes and latitudes of the earth's surface." As he was speaking, the screen had

<sup>1</sup> hodiernus, a, um: *modern*.

<sup>2</sup> aviātor, aviātoris: *airman*.

<sup>3</sup> hodiē, adv.: *today*.

\* annigerum, i: *tank*.

<sup>5</sup> Gallicus, a, um: *Gallic*.



focused into a very realistic picture of a wild forest. The movement of a breeze through the trees was quite discernible. There was a gasp of astonishment, but the professor held up his hand. "Now," he said, "I set the sound control." A roar of static rose from a speaker to the left of the screen, then settled down to the quiet sounds of a forest—no, there was something else—growing louder—the sound of horses and the clang of metal. Then, before our amazed eyes, a troop of cavalry rode onto the scene. The leader, a bronzed, sturdy man who rode his horse with the assurance of long custom, halted, and gazed off to the left. In the silence that followed we heard something else—distant cries, a shouting as if a whole army were in an uproar—then, yes, the centurion (he looked just like a picture of a centurion I had seen in a high-school Latin book) turned his head in our direction. He became paralyzed with amazement. But the professor was almost leaping with excitement. "He sees us! It works! It works!" He rushed to the machine and began pulling several levers. "Perhaps," he muttered, "perhaps the sound can be reversed too, but then, ..." He stepped back and cleared his throat.

"Estisne vōs" (*yes, the professor had been a good Latin student in high school*), "estisne vōs militeſ Rōmāni?" (*We held our breath. Slowly the paralysis of surprise passed, and we saw the centurion open his mouth. . . . yes, then we heard*):

CENTURIO. NOS equites Rōmāni sumus. Vos autem . . .

PROFESSOR (*excitedly interrupting him*). Ubi estis?

C. In Galliā sumus. In agris hostium sumus. Nunc, sicut videtis, in magnis silvis sumus.

P. Quis imperator vester est?

C. Caesar, vir et nōbilis et fortis, imperator noster est. Bellum ab eo fortiter administrat.

P. Bellum? Geriturne bellum?

C. Ita. Cum Gallis legiones Rōmānae nunc pugnant. (*He pointed off to the left.*) Auditure a vōbis clamor et hostium et Rōmāndrum?

P. Paraveruntne Galli bellum? Erantne cupidi belli?

C. Ita. Victoriae et belli gloriae cupidi erant. Itaque ante<sup>1</sup> bellum arma et tela a Gallis parata sunt. Virtus edrum a ducibus et principibus confirmata est. Oppida et urbes ab eis munitae sunt. Frumentum in oppida et a Gallis et ab eorum servis portatum est. Ita omnes res paratae erant.

P. Quid autem nunc agunt Galli?

C. Telis et armis oppida et agros defendunt. Colles et pontes ab eis occupantur, nam bellum nobiscum gerunt.

P. Et Caesar? Quid is ante<sup>1</sup> bellum egit?

C. Castra in colie ab eo posita sunt. Frumentum in castra a servis portatum est. Arma et tela etiam ab eo parata sunt. Equites a Caesare in fines hostium dimittebantur. Omnia loca ab eis explorata sunt. Castra nostra muro munivimus. Caesar virtutem et spem militum oratione et praemiis confirmavit.

P. Vincenturne Galli a vōbis?

C. Ita. (*He roared with laughter.*) Galli fortiter pugnant, sed nos non vincent. Nos armis et virtute eos vincemus. Rōmāni

<sup>1</sup> ante, prep. w. acc.: before.

enim neque vincuntur neque de pace cum hostibus agunt. En!<sup>1</sup> (*He pointed towards the shouting.*) Jam<sup>2</sup> nunc a militibus Romanis Galli et terrentur et occiduntur. Caedes! Urbes (*with a sweeping gesture*), oppida, colles, silvae, portus, agri ab exercitu Romano occupantur. Imperium omnis Galliae a Caesare obtinebitur! Gladiis (*his voice became harsh*) rem geremus! Multi Galli a nobis occiduntur. Frumenta ab equitibus Romanis incenduntur; pontes et oppida a legionibus incenduntur. Post bellum frumentum et servi et arma a Gallis nobis tradentur. Ita pax in Galliam confirmabitur. Victoria nostra erit! (*He tossed up his head proudly.*) Victoria! Ah!

P. Quid autem vos nunc agitis?

C. In proelium a Caesare mittimur. Ecce nos post aciem hostium sumus. Per silvas longa via venimus et . . . (*Suddenly there was the high piercing note of a trumpet, once—and again.*) Signum est! Signum a Caesare datur! (*He threw up his arm.*) In hostes!

The whole troop rushed madly off the scene towards the left.

I shivered for the Gauls. The cry of panic rose and mounted, shrill, of men in ultimate pain. Then the professor switched off the power. We sat there long in silence.

---

<sup>1</sup> en: behold.

<sup>2</sup> jam, adv.: already.

## MASTERY REVIEW VOCABULARY NO. 2

[Units Three, Four, and Five]

### FIRST CONJUGATION

#### VERBS LIKE *LAUDO*

adjuvō, adjuvārē, adjuvī, adjutus, <i>I, tr.</i> <sup>1</sup>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{help} \\ \text{aid} \end{array} \right.$
administro, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{manage} \\ \text{attend to} \end{array} \right.$
appello, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{address} \\ \text{call (upon)} \end{array} \right.$
colloco, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{place} \\ \text{station} \end{array} \right.$
comparō, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{get} \\ \text{prepare} \end{array} \right.$
cōfirmō, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{encourage} \\ \text{strengthen} \end{array} \right.$
cōservō, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{preserve} \\ \text{spare} \end{array} \right.$
dō, dare, dedi, datus, <i>I, tr.</i> <sup>^</sup>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{give} \end{array} \right.$
explōrō, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{reconnoiter} \\ \text{find out} \end{array} \right.$
incitō, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{incite} \\ \text{arouse} \end{array} \right.$
laudō, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{praise} \end{array} \right.$
occupo, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{seize} \end{array} \right.$
oppugno, <i>I, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{attack} \\ \text{assault} \\ \text{storm} \end{array} \right.$

---

<sup>1</sup>Adjuvō and dō form their perfect stems differently from laudō. Therefore you must memorize the principal parts. Dō is also peculiar in that the a which begins the endings is short throughout the indicative except in the second person singular present indicative active, daŕ.

**orō**, *1, tr.*

**parō**, *1, tr.*

**perturbo**, *1, tr.*

**portō**, */, tr.*

**pugno**, *1, intr.*

**servo**, *1, tr.*

**superd**, *1, tr.*

**vocō**, *1, tr.*

{ beg  
pray  
prepare  
get ready  
confuse  
disturb  
carry  
fight  
guard  
keep  
overcome  
conquer  
surpass  
call

## SECOND CONJUGATION

### VERBS LIKE *MONEO*

**compleo**, **comple**, **complevi**, **completes**, *fill (with)*  
*2, tr.; w. abl.<sup>1</sup>*

**contineo**, **continere**, **continui**, **contentus**, *2, tr.* { restrain  
hold in

**habeo**, *2, tr.*

**maned**, **manere**, **mans**, **mansurus**, *2, intr.* have  
remain

**moneo**, *2, tr.*

**moved**, **movere**, **movi**, **motes**, *2, tr.* { warn  
advise  
move

**obtimeo**, **obtinere**, **obtinui**, **obtentus**, *2, tr.* { hold  
occupy

**retineo**, **retinere**, **retinui**, **retentus**, *2, tr.* { hold back  
keep

**sustineo**, **sustinerere**, **sustinui**, **sustentus**, *2, tr.* { sustain  
withstand

<sup>1</sup>When **compleo** is modified by a **w:īA**-phrase, this **w:7A**-phrase is translated by the ablative *without* a preposition. Hence the notation "**v. abl\*\***".



teneo, tenerē, tenui, tentus, 2, *tr.*  
 terreo, 2, *tr.*  
 timeo, timērē, timui, 2, *tr.*<sup>1</sup>  
 video, viderē, vidī, visus, 2, *tr.*

*hold*  
*terrify*  
*fear*  
*see*

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## VERBS LIKE MITTO

agō, agere, egī, actus, 3, *tr.*

*drive*  
*do*  
*act*  
*treat*  
*give (w. gratias)*

cēdō, cedere, cessī, cessurus, 3, *intr.*

*give way*  
*yield*

contendo, contendere, contendī, 3, *intr.*

*strive*  
*contend*  
*hasten*

dēfendo, defendere, defendī, defensurus, 3, *tr.*

*defend*

dīmīto, dimittere, dīmīsi, dīmissus, 3, *tr.*

*send away*  
*dismiss*

ducō, ducere, duxī, ductus, 3, *tr.*

*lead*  
*guide*

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, 3, *tr.*

*carry*  
*carry on*  
*wage (w. bellum)*

incendo, incendere, incendī, incensus, 3, *tr.* •

*set fire to*  
*burn*

Instruo, instruere, instruxī, instructus, 3, *tr.* ■

*draw up*  
*equip*

mitto, mittere, misi, missus, 3, *tr.*

*send*

occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus, 3, *tr.*

*kill*

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, 3, *tr.*

*drive*  
*repulse*  
*rout*

<sup>1</sup> Timeo has no fourth principal part.

petō, petere, petivi, petitus, 3, tr.	{ seek beg request
pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus, 3, tr. <sup>1</sup>	{ put place set pitch (w. castra)
premo, premere, press!, pressus, 3, tr.	{ press press hard
trādō, tradere, tradidi, traditus, 3, tr.	hand over
vinco, vincere, vic!, victus, 3, tr.	conquer

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## VERBS LIKE AUDIO

audio, 4, tr.	hear
convenio, convenire, conveni, conventum, 4, intr.	{ come together assemble
mūnid, 4, tr.	{ fortify construct (w. viam or viaſ)
venio, venire, veni, ventum, 4, intr.	come

## IRREGULAR VERBS

absum, abesse, afui, afuturus, intr.; ab (a) w. abl. <sup>2</sup>	I am away I am distant
sum, esse, fui, futurus, intr. <sup>3</sup>	am

<sup>1</sup> Pōnō means *pitch* only when it is used of a camp. When an -n-phrase is used to modify pōnō, the in always takes the ABLATIVE.

<sup>2</sup> Absum is a compound of the preposition ab and the verb sum. Therefore it is conjugated LIKE SUM. The place away from which something is, is expressed by the preposition ab (a before consonants), *from*, and the ablative.

<sup>3</sup> Sum has no PASSIVE; therefore it has no perfect participle passive; the future participle active is given as the fourth principal part. We shall study these participles later.

## NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

fortūna, ae	<i>fortune</i>
Italia, ae	<i>Italy</i>
litterae, litterarū <sup>1</sup>	<i>{ letter (i. e., an epistle) dispatch</i>

## NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (MASCULINE)

ager, agri	<i>field</i>
locus, i ( <i>pl., loca, locorū</i> ) <sup>2 *</sup>	<i>place</i>
numerus, i	<i>number</i>
puer, pueri	<i>boy</i>
vir, viri <sup>8</sup>	<i>man</i>

## NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (NEUTER)

arma, armdrum <sup>4</sup>	<i>arms</i>
hibema, hibernorū <sup>5 **</sup>	<i>winter quarters</i>
proelium, I®	<i>battle</i>
tēlum, i	<i>dart</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Litterae is a plural noun of the first declension (like *copiae*).

<sup>2</sup> Locus becomes a neuter noun in the plural: *loca*. When locus is modified by an adjective, the preposition *in* is frequently omitted with the ablative. *In an unfavorable place, loco alieno.*

<sup>8</sup> Vir means a man as opposed to a woman or a child. Homo means a human being, a man as opposed to an animal.

<sup>4</sup> Arma is a neuter plural of the second declension (like *castra*).

<sup>8</sup> Hiberna, like *castra*, is declined only in the plural.

® The ablative of *proelium* is generally used *without in* in such expressions as: *in many battles, multis proeliis.*

## NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

centurio, centurioni	<i>a centurion</i> <sup>1</sup>
civitas, civitati	<i>state</i>
finis, finium, <i>m.</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>territory</i>
mors, mortis	<i>death</i>
oratio, orationis	<i>f speech</i> <i>[Prayer]</i> <sup>2</sup>

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

alienus, a, um	<i>{ unfavorable</i> <i>{ another's</i> <i>{ foreign</i>
integer, integra, integrum	<i>{ fresh</i> <i>{ uninjured</i> <i>{ whole</i>
liber, libera, liberum	<i>free</i>
miser, misera, miserum	<i>wretched</i>

## PRONOUNS

ego, mei	<i>I</i>
is, ea, id	<i>he, she, it</i>
meus, a, um	<i>{ wy</i> <i>{ mine</i>
nos, nostri	<i>we</i>
noster, nostra, nostrum	<i>{ our</i> <i>{ ours</i>
quid	<i>what?</i>
quis	<i>who?</i>

<sup>1</sup>A Roman army officer in charge of one hundred men. The rank was similar to that of our captain.

<sup>2</sup>Finis is a plural noun like partes.

<sup>3</sup>Oratio means *prayer* only in Christian Latin.

suī	{ himself herself itself themselves
tū, tui	you (sing.)
tuus, a, um	{ your (when referring to yours ONE person)
vester, vestra, vestrum	{ your (when referring to MORE yours THAN ONE person)
vōs, vestri	you (pi.)

## ADVERBS

cūr, adv.	why?
etiam, adv.	also
ferē, adv.	almost
fortiter, adv.	{ bravely strongly
ibi, adv.	there
interim, adv.	meanwhile
ita, adv.	{ so thus
longē, adv.	{ far by far
postea, adv.	afterwards
saepe, adv.	often
semper, adv.	always
tamen, adv.	nevertheless
turn, adv.	{ then at that time
ubi, adv.	where?
undique, adv.	{ from all sides on all sides
vehementer, adv.	{ greatly violently

## CONJUNCTIONS

atque (ac), <i>conj.</i> ,	<i>and</i>
aut, <i>conj.</i> ,	<i>or</i>
aut . • . aut, <i>conjs.</i>	<i>either ... or</i>
enim, <i>conj., postp.</i> ,	<i>for</i>
nam, <i>conj.</i> ,	<i>for</i> <sup>1</sup>
neque, <i>conj.</i>	<i>{ nor</i>
	<i>{ and . . . not</i>
neque . . . neque, <i>conjs.</i> ,	<i>neither , , , nor</i>
sicut, <i>conj.</i>	<i>as</i>

## PREPOSITIONS

ab (a), <i>prep. w. abl.</i> ,	<i>{ by (expressing agency)</i>
	<i>{ from (w. absum)</i>
dē, <i>prep. w. abl.</i> ,	<i>{ concerning</i>
	<i>{ about</i>
per, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>through</i>
sine, <i>prep. w. abl.</i> ,	<i>without</i>
trans, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>across</i>

## OTHER WORDS

in principio	<i>in the beginning</i>
in saecula saeculorū	<i>{ world without end</i>
	<i>{ forever</i>
-ne	<i>particle used in questions</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> When *for* means *because* and introduces a REASON.

## UNIT SIX

### LESSON 22: THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE; PURPOSE CLAUSES

#### INTRODUCTION

We have studied the INDICATIVE MOOD. We saw that it was used in ordinary STATEMENTS OF FACT and in DIRECT QUESTIONS.

We shall now study the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. This mood is used in many special constructions, both in main clauses and in subordinate clauses. Latin uses the subjunctive in sentences where the English uses auxiliary (or helping) verbs, such as *may*, *might*, *should*, and the like. But Latin also uses the subjunctive where English uses the indicative. The MEANING of the subjunctive, therefore, will have to be learned as we study the DIFFERENT LATIN CONSTRUCTIONS REQUIRING THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### 1. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the present tense of the subjunctive in the four conjugations, GRAMMAR, NOS. 186, 194-196. Learn the meaning in purpose clauses. Note that (1) the *vowels* which begin the endings are not the usual ones in each conjugation, (2) the final personal signs are regular.

#### EXERCISE 238

[First Conjugation]

*What forms are these f*

- |              |                |               |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. collocet  | 5. pugnent     | 9. laudet     |
| 2. det       | 6. perturbemus | 10. appellet  |
| 3. perturbet | 7. occupent    | 11. confirmet |
| 4. laudēs    | 8. perturbent  | 12. laudētis  |

## EXERCISE 239

[Second Conjugation]

*What forms are these?*

- |              |               |              |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. moneā̄s   | 4. habeat     | 7. teneat    |
| 2. terreant  | 5. moneam̄us  | 8. moneāt̄is |
| 3. sustineat | 6. terreat̄is | 9. obtineant |

## EXERCISE 240

[Third Conjugation]

*What forms are these?*

- |              |             |              |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. mittā̄mus | 5. defendat | 9. Instruant |
| 2. dūcant    | 6. cedant   | 10. incendat |
| 3. pellat    | 7. poñat̄is | 11. vincant  |
| 4. petant    | 8. pellant  | 12. mittas̄  |

## EXERCISE 241

[Fourth Conjugation]

*What forms are these?*

- |              |               |            |
|--------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. audiā̄mus | 4. audiās̄    | 7. veniant |
| 2. veniat    | 5. convenient | 8. mūniat  |
| 3. mūniant   | 6. audiāt̄is  | 9. audiam  |

## 2. MOOD IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

*He is fighting in order that he may defend the city.**Pugnat ut urbem defendāt.*

“He is fighting” is a MAIN clause.

“In order that” introduces a SUBORDINATE clause.

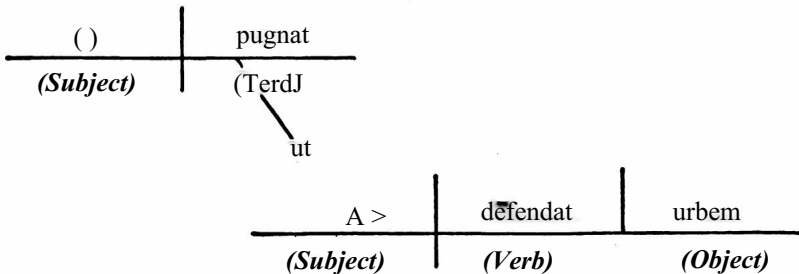
“In order that he may defend the city” is a SUBORDINATE clause. This subordinate clause expresses the PURPOSE of his fighting. It answers the QUESTION: “For what purpose is he fighting?” ANSWER: “In order that he may defend the city.”

A subordinate clause expressing PURPOSE is called a PURPOSE CLAUSE.



**RULE: A PURPOSE CLAUSE IS INTRODUCED BY  
UT (TN ORDER THAT'). THE VERB IN THE PUR-  
POSE CLAUSE IS PUT IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE.**

A purpose clause is an ADVERBIAL clause. It expresses the PURPOSE of the action in the main clause, and so, like an adverb, modifies the main verb.



#### VOCABULARY

vita, ae	life
vallum, I	wall
	[ rampart
amicitia, ae	friendship
fossa, ae	ditch
celeriter, adv.	swiftly

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Vital; amicable; vitamin; celerity.*

#### RELATED LATIN WORD

**Amicus**

**LAUDĀBO DEUM MEUM IN VITA MĒA.**

—From the *Roman Breviary*

## EXERCISE 242

1. Translate;
2. Point out the MAIN clauses;
3. Point out the SUBORDINATE PURPOSE clauses;
4. Diagram Sentences 1 and 2:

1. Castra valid munit ut ea defendat. 2. Damusne praemia amicis ut amicitiam confirmemus? 3. Fortiter pugno ut vitam meam conservem. 4. Hilberna fossa muniunt ut impetum hostium sustineant. 5. Equites celeriter veniunt ut frumenta incendant.

## 3. PRIMARY TENSES

The present, future, and future perfect in the INDICATIVE are called PRIMARY TENSES. When the verb of the main clause is in a PRIMARY tense, the PRESENT subjunctive must be used in a PURPOSE clause. In these sentences *pugnat*, *pugnabit*, and *pugnaverit* are PRIMARY tenses. Therefore *defendat* is in the PRESENT subjunctive.

**Pugnat ut urbem defendat.**

*He is fighting in order that he may defend the city.*

**Pugnabit ut urbem defendat.**

*He will fight in order that he may defend the city.*

**Pugnaverit ut urbem defendat.**

*He will have fought in order that he may defend the city.*

**RULE: WHEN THE MAIN VERB IS IN A PRIMARY TENSE, USE THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE PURPOSE CLAUSE.**

## EXERCISE 243

*In which sentences should the present subjunctive be used?*

1. Pugnavit ut ..... 2. Pugnaveŕas ut ..... 3. Veniet ut..... 4. Hostes terret ut..... 5. Praemium eis dedit

ut 6. Pugnāt ut 7. Venio ut 8. Pugnā-  
verit ut

We can express purpose in English in DIFFERENT ways:

He fights *in order that* he may defend the city.

He fights *that* he may defend the city.

He fights *in order to* defend the city.

He fights *to* defend the city.

All these MEAN the same thing and MAY be translated into Latin in the same way:

Pugnāt ut urbem defēdat.

#### EXERCISE 244

[Essential]

*Translate each sentence in four different ways:*

1. Milkēs glōriae cupidi pugnant ut hosēs vincant. 2. Pugnā-  
buntne viri liberi semper ut civitatem nostram servent? 3. Arma  
ā nobis parantur ut vitās nostrās conservemus. 4. Castra valid  
et fossā muniunt ut impetum hostium sustineant. 5. Amicitiam  
cum omnibus gentibus confirmabimus ut pacem cum eis servemus.

#### EXERCISE 245

*Translate:*

1. They fight to defend the lives of good men. 2. He fortifies  
the hill with a rampart to hold it. 3. They are sending grain in  
order to strengthen peace. 4. They help the Romans in order to  
strengthen friendship with them.

In virtutē posita est vera<sup>1</sup> felicitas.<sup>2</sup>

—Seneca<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> verus, a, um: true.

<sup>2</sup> felicitas, felicitatis: happiness.

<sup>3</sup> Lucius Annaeus Seneca, a Roman philosopher, essayist, and dramatist (died A.D. 65).

## 4. NEGATIVE PURPOSE CLAUSES

*He fights in order that the enemy may not burn the city.*

*He fights lest the enemy burn the city.*

*Pugnat ne hōstes urbem incendant.*

A purpose is expressed in the subordinate clause of these sentences, but the purpose is NEGATIVE (*NOT, LEST*).

**RULE: WHEN THE PURPOSE CLAUSE IS NEGATIVE, *NE* (IN ORDER THAT . . . NOT, 'LEST') IS USED INSTEAD OF *UT NON*.**

Notice that the meaning of *ne* is *in order that . . . NOT*. Therefore in the example the English *not* is translated in the word *ne*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the present subjunctive of *sum*, GRAMMAR, NO. 352.

## VOCABULARY

<i>expecto, 1, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{wait for} \\ \text{wait} \end{array} \right.$
<i>novus, a, um</i>	<i>new</i>
<i>diu, adv.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a long time} \\ \text{long} \end{array} \right.$
<i>acriter, adv.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{bitterly} \\ \text{eagerly} \end{array} \right.$
<i>expugno, 1, tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{storm} \\ \text{take by storm} \end{array} \right.$

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Great *expectations* The *acrid* smell of burning sulphur. I am *expecting* a friend. Not so many years ago the radio was a *novelty*.

## RELATED LATIN WORDS

*Dit̄ pugnāvīmus. Oppidum oppugnāvit.*

## EXERCISE 246

1. *Translate;*
2. *Point out the main clause;*
3. *Point out the subordinate clause;*
4. *Explain the tense in the subordinate clause;*
5. *Diagram Sentences 1 and 2:*

1. Frūmentum in castra ā servis portātur nē inopia frūmenti sit. 2. Continetne milites in castris ut copias novās exspectet? 3. In agrōs hostium venit ut eos terreat. 4. Galli diū et acriter pugnant nē Rōmāni frūmenta incendant. 5. Virtūtem militum oratione cōfirmat ut victōriae cupidi sint. 6. Praemia principibus dat ut amicitiam cum eōrum gentibus cōfirmet. 7. Galli pugnant nē servi sint. 8. Centurid frārem adjuvat ne hostes eum occidant. 9. Castra valid et fossa munit nē hostes ea expugnent.

## EXERCISE 247

*Translate:*

1. They fight in order to conquer. 2. They assault the town in order to take it by storm. 3. They are coming to hear the speech. 4. They are seizing the bridge to burn it. 5. They will come to see Rome. 6. They pray in order to be good. 7. They will fortify the town lest the enemy take it by storm. 8. They warn the chief in order to preserve his life. 9. He fights in order to be king. 10. They are yielding lest there be a slaughter. 11. They station soldiers to defend the bridge. 12. They are handing over arms to strengthen peace. 13. They prepare arms to wage war. 14. He will come to kill the commander in chief. 15. He is coming to seek peace. 16. He will remain to wait for new legions.

## EXERCISE 248

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. God helps us in order that the enemy may not overcome us. 2. Mary prays for us that we may have the grace of God.

3. I shall fight bravely and long to preserve your life. 4. He is fortifying the camp with a ditch to defend it. 5. We are waiting for Caesar lest the enemy conquer us. 6. Is he leading new legions into Gaul to take the cities (by storm)? 7. He is burning the crops in order that there may be a scarcity of grain in Gaul. 8. He is strengthening friendship with all tribes lest there be war. 9. They are coming to storm the town. 10. The enemy is pressing them hard. Therefore they will give way lest the enemy kill them.\*<sup>1</sup> 11. They are assembling to hear the king.

### EXERCISE 249

1. *Identify and translate these forms;*
2. *Use each in a Latin sentence:*

1. contendat	8. pellat	15. dūcat
2. vincam	9. expectābit	16. cōfirmat
3. timeant	10. veniat	17. appelleſ
4. expugnat	11. veniet	18. geris
5. laudet	12. vincit	19. occupent
6. vincet	13. adjuvet	20. occidant
7. pugnat	14. dēfendant	21. adjuvant

**VĪTA SINE LITTERIS<sup>2</sup> MORS EST.**

### NOTE ON TRANSLATION

Very often several meanings are given for a Latin word in the vocabularies. In translating you should choose the meaning that makes GOOD SENSE. For example, in the following sentences *altus* must be translated in different ways. Explain how you know which meaning to use.

1. Hannibal cōpiaſ tranſ montes *ālt os* dūxit.
2. Hannibal cōpiaſ tranſ flumīna *alt a* dūxit.

<sup>1</sup> *Them:* U<sup>n</sup>slate here by te.

<sup>1</sup> *Litteris* here does not mean *letters*, *i, e.,* an epistle, but *literature* or *writing*.

## EXERCISE 250

[Essential Review]

*Translate and explain the case of the italicized words:*

1. *Multi* hominēs in *Italiam* veniunt ut Rōmā videant. 2. Hominēs celeriter conveniunt ut res *novas* et audiant et videant.
3. Milites diu et fortiter pugnant ut victoriae gloriā comparent.
4. Milites cum *hostibus* acriter contendunt ut *eds* pellant atque occidant. 5. Dominus malus a servis *miseris* laudatur ut vitam *edrum* servet. 6. Caesar, *vir* bonus et fortis, cum militibus in *aciē* saepe pugnat ut edrum *virtutem* confirmet. 7. Castra valid et fossa a Rōmānis muniuntur ne hostes *ea* expugnent. 8. Duces *militibus* saepe et grātiās agunt et praemia dant ut fortiter pugnent. 9. Suntne imperatores saepe *glōriae* atque victōriae cupidi ?

## READING NO. 12

## WOE TO THE WEAK!

TIME. About 55 B. c.

PLACE. A town somewhere in Gaul. The gates are shut; a few Gauls are seen standing about. Suddenly horses are heard approaching. The guards at the gate are on the alert.

GUARD. Quis es?

VOICE OUTSIDE THE GATE. Centurio Rōmānus sum. Venio ut cum principibus de fe gravi agam.

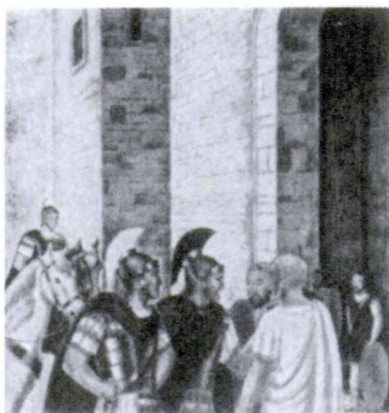
GUARD. Eds vocabimur. (*A slave is sent off. Several elderly and distinguished Gauls return. The gates are opened. A Roman centurion and several horsemen ride in.*)

PRINCIPES. Cur venitis ? Quid petitis ?

CENTURIO. Venimus ut copiam frumenti petamus. Est frumenti inopia in castris nostris. Itaque Caesar nos mittit ut frumentum comparemus.

PRINCIPES. Nos autem non magnam frumenti copiam habemus neque sunt frumenta in agris.

CENTURIO (*firmly*). Dabit tamen nobis. Estisne amici populi



"FRUMENTUM PETIMUS."

Rōmāni ? Nōbīs frūmentum dabitīs . . . ut amici semper sitis populi Rōmānī.

PRINCIPES. NŌS etiam hominēs sum us. Pueri et matrēs et . . .

CENTURIO (*interrupting and speaking slowly and threateningly*). Gēns vōbīs finitima frūmentum nōbīs nōn dedit. Jam oppida et urbēs eōrum expugnantur et incenduntur; pueri et viri occiduntur; matrēs in castra dūcuntur ut servae<sup>1</sup> sint. Vōs tamen amici

(*ironically*) estis populi Rōmāni! (*Interim multi Galli convēnērunt. A murmur of resentment runs through the crowd. The chiefs look about uncertainly.*)

PRINCIPES. NŌS amici Caesaris et populi Rōmāni semper fuimus. Etiam equitēs misimus. Cum eō bellum nōn gessimus. Pācem cum Caesare et populo Rōmāno semper servavimus.

CENTURIO (*insolently*). Itaque cūr exspectatis? Frūmentum nunc petimus!

PRINCIPES (*in despair*). Copiām autem non habemus!

VOICES FROM THE CROWD. Non dabimus! Pugnabimus! (*The crowd moves menacingly towards the centurion. He whirls his horse about and charges through the opening. The gates slam shut behind him. There is a long silence.*)

PRINCEPS (*fearfully*). Veniet Caesar!

(*Such scenes were common not only in Caesar's wars with the Gauls but in all wars when the might of arms crushed the rights of the innocent and the weak.*)

<sup>1</sup> serva, ae: o female slave.



## LESSON 23: THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

### 1. IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the imperfect subjunctive, GRAMMAR, Nos. 187, 197-199.

**Note.** Here is an easy way to remember the imperfect subjunctive: ADD THE REGULAR FINAL PERSONAL SIGNS (-m, etc.) TO THE PRESENT INFINITIVE. For example:

1. laudare + -m = laudarem
2. laudare + -s = laudares, etc.

#### VOCABULARY

tribūnus, i	tribune
cōsilium, i	{ plan counsel
concilium, i	council
lēgatus, i	{ envoy lieutenant
lātus, a, um	wide
facile, adv.	easily

#### NOTE

**Tribūnus** is often used with the genitive **militum**. **Tribūnus militum** (literally, *a tribune of soldiers*) is to be translated *a military tribune*. The military tribune was an officer a rank above the centurion.

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The American *Legation*. The *latitude* and the *longitude* of the earth. The papal *legate*. His manner was *facile*. Control of the

air *facilitates* military victories. Practice can produce remarkable *facility*.

#### RELATED LATIN WORD

Iter per provinciam **facile** erat.

#### EXERCISE 251

[First Conjugation]

*What forms are these?*

- |                |               |                  |
|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. exspectāret | 5. ōrāret     | 9. portarēt      |
| 2. parāret     | 6. laudārem   | 10. superārent   |
| 3. appellārent | 7. pugnārent  | 11. exspectārent |
| 4. oppugnārent | 8. laudāremus | 12. laudāretis   |

#### EXERCISE 252

[Second Conjugation]

*What forms are these?*

- |              |               |               |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. habēret   | 5. monērēmus  | 9. monerēm    |
| 2. obtinerēt | 6. movēret    | 10. vidērēm   |
| 3. monērētis | 7. sustinerēt | 11. terretet  |
| 4. terretēt  | 8. tenēret    | 12. complerēt |

#### EXERCISE 253

[Third Conjugation]

*What forms are these?*

- |              |               |                 |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. pe terent | 5. mitterēmus | 9. gererent     |
| 2. gereret   | 6. mitterēs   | 10. incenderet  |
| 3. mitterem  | 7. trāderent  | 11. Instruerent |
| 4. premeret  | 8. cēderent   | 12. contenderet |

#### EXERCISE 254

[Fourth Conjugation]

*What forms are these?*

- |              |              |                |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. audirēmus | 3. mūnlret   | 5. mūnīrent    |
| 2. veniret   | 4. audiretis | 6. convenirent |

- |             |                 |                |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 7. audirem  | 9. conveniretīs | 11. audirent   |
| 8. audirēs | 10. venirent    | 12. conveniret |

## EXERCISE 255

[General]

*What forms are these?*

- |               |                 |                |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. vincit     | 6. sint         | 11. vidēret    |
| 2. expugnet   | 7. audiret      | 12. portārent |
| 3. pelleret   | 8. contenderent | 13. sitis      |
| 4. veniet     | 9. veniam       | 14. audiat     |
| 5. expectēmus | 10. oppugnat    | 15. portet     |

## 2. SECONDARY TENSES

The imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative are SECONDARY TENSES.

When the main verb is in a SECONDARY tense, use the IMPERFECT subjunctive in the purpose clause.

**Pugnāvit ut castra occupāret.**

*He fought in order that he might seize the camp.*

*He fought that he might seize the camp.*

*He fought in order to seize the camp.*

*He fought to seize the camp.*

## RULE

**PURPOSE CLAUSES ARE INTRODUCED BY UT  
(NEGATIVE: NE);**

**USE THE SUBJUNCTIVE;**

**USE THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN THE  
MAIN VERB IS PRIMARY;**

**USE THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN THE  
MAIN VERB IS SECONDARY.**

Pugnabat ut castra occuparet.

*He was fighting in order that he might seize the camp.*

Pugnaerat ut castra occuparet.

*He had fought in order that he might seize the camp.*

## EXERCISE 256

[Essential]

1. Translate;
2. Parse the italicized words;
3. Diagram Sentence 1:

1. Caesar legiōnēs novās et integrās saepe expectāvit ut hostēs facile *vinceret*. 2. Galli oppidum valid alto et *fossā lātā* mūniverunt ne Rōmāni *id expugnārent*. 3. Lēgātus centuriōnēs et tribunōs militum appellavit ut fortiter et diu *pugnarent*. 4. Dūxitne Hannibal omne cōpiās trāns lātā flūmina et per montēs alto ut cum Rōmānis in Italiā bellum *gereret* ? 5. Jēsūs Christus, Dei Filius, in mundum vēnit ut vitam et salūtem nōbis *daret*. 6. Galli saepe lēgātōs in castra Caesaris misērunt ut pācem et amicitiam *peterent*. 7. Concilium saepe ab imperātoribus vocātur ut dē rē gravi in conciliō *agant*. 8. Dux lēgātis praemia dedit ut cōsilium laudarent.

## EXERCISE 257

[Drill]

*Translate:*

1. They fought in order to conquer. 2. They assaulted the town in order to take it (by storm). 3. They seized the bridge to burn it. 4. They came to hear the plan. 5. They came to see Rome. 6. They prayed in order to be good. 7. They fortify the town lest the enemy storm it. 8. They warned the chief in order to spare his life. 9. He waged war in order to seize the royal power. 10. They are yielding lest there be a slaughter. 11. They stationed horsemen to defend the hill.

12. They handed over the arms in order to preserve peace.  
 13. They prepared arms in order to wage war. 14. The chiefs were dismissed lest the tribes wage war. 15. He came to kill the king. 16. The soldiers were drawn up to defend the city. 17. He waited for Caesar in order to conquer the enemy. 18. He came to seek peace. 19. They assembled to hear the speech. 20. He remained to wait for the chief.

## EXERCISE 258

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. The Romans fortified the camp with a wide ditch lest the enemy should easily take it (by storm). 2. Caesar, in the council, often strengthened the courage of the lieutenants and military tribunes in order that they might fight bravely. 3. They fought bitterly lest the enemy storm the town. 4. After a war were the chiefs and leaders of the enemy often killed by Caesar? 5. The lieutenant held the soldiers in the camp lest the enemy should see the plans. 6. Caesar stationed soldiers on the bridge lest the enemy should come across the wide river.

## READING NO. 13

## DE FRĀTRUM FORTIUM MORTE

A STORY BASED ON THE REPORT OF THE AFFAIR MADE BY CAESAR.

In hōc<sup>1</sup> proeliō multi equitēs occisi sunt; in<sup>2</sup> \* eis vir fortis et nōbilis, Pisō Aquitānus. Is amicus erat Populi Rōmāni. Ejus frāter in proeliō vulnerātus<sup>8</sup> erat et ab hostibus premēbātur. Nōn erat spēs salūtis. Pisō id vidit; vidit frātre; vidit hostēs. Tamen in hostēs contendit ut frātre adjuvāret. Ab hostibus autem circumventus<sup>4</sup> est atque occisus est. Turn frater Pisōnis morie

<sup>1</sup> hōc: *this*,<sup>2</sup> in here means *among*.<sup>8</sup> vulnerd, 1, tr.: *wound*.<sup>4</sup> circumvenio: *surround*.



ACRITER PUGNAVERUNT

Ējus vehementer mōtus est et in hostēs contendit. Acriter pugnavit; tamen is etiam ab hostibus occisus est. Ita occisi sunt frātrēs fortēs et boni. Laudam⁹sne eds ?

*Answer in complete Latin sentences:*

1. Quis fuit Piso Aquitan⁹s?
2. Quis ab hostibus premebāt⁹r ?
3. Quis in hostēs contendit?
4. Cūr in hostēs se m⁹isit ?
5. Estne Piso Aquitan⁹s occisus?
6. Estne fra⁹ter ej⁹s occisus ?

## EXERCISE 259

[Review]

1. Name the primary and secondary tenses of the indicative.
2. Give the rule for the ablative of means.

### 3. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS; IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the use of adjectives as nouns (GRAMMAR, NOS. 845-848) and the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**, (GRAMMAR, NO. 353).

## VOCABULARY

<b>labor, laboris</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{effort} \\ \text{toil} \end{array} \right.$
<b>ordo, ordinis, m.</b>	<i>rank</i> (of soldiers)
<b>obses, obsidis, c.</b>	<i>hostage</i>
<b>inter, prep. w. acc.</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{between} \\ \text{among} \end{array} \right.$
<b>statim, adv.</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{at once} \\ \text{immediately} \end{array} \right.$

## NOTE

**Obses** is marked *c* (= common gender); that is, it may be either masculine or feminine, as hostages were men and women. However, use it as masculine unless it clearly refers to women.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Line the men up in *order*. Hard *labor*. *Interstate* commerce.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY

<b>sum, esse, fui, futurus, intr.</b>	<i>am</i>
<b>absum, abesse, aŕui, aŕtuturŕus, intr.;</b>	<i>J am away</i>
<b>ab (a)w, abl.</b>	<i>[am distant</i>
<b>ab (a), prep. w. abl.</b>	<i>from ("• absum)</i> <i>[by (agency)</i>

## IDIOM STUDY

**Inter** is a preposition which governs the accusative. It means *between* or *among*. Study its idiomatic use with REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS and **DO**.

**Obsidēs inter nōs damus.**

(Literally, *We are giving hostages among ourselves.*)

*We are exchanging hostages.*

**Obsidēs inter vōs datis.**

(Literally, *You are giving hostages among yourselves.*)

*You are exchanging hostages.*

**Gentēs Galliae obsidēs inter sē dant.**

(Literally, *The tribes of Gaul are giving hostages among themselves.*)

*The tribes of Gaul are exchanging hostages.*

Therefore *dō, dare, dedi, datus, I, tr.* with *inter* and the proper REFLEXIVE pronoun means exchange.

**PROPTER TĒ OMNIA AGŌ ET SUSTINEO.**

—From the *Following of Christ*

## EXERCISE 260

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the use of the italicized words:*

1. *Laudāt*urne Deus *ab* omnibus *sānctis*? 2. Galli saepe obsidēs *inter sē* dederunt ut *pācem* cōfirmarent. 3. *Fortēs* propter metum nō cedūnt. 4. Caesar, vir fortis, *omnia* fortiter egit. 5. Caesar multa bella gessit ut imperator et p̄nceps esset. 6. *Adjuvat*ne Deus *fortēs*? 7. *Nostri* fortiter et ācrit̄er semper pugnant ut liberam civitātem nostram cōservent. 8. *Fortēs*



fortūna adjuvat (*a Roman proverb*). 9. Nostri cessērunt nē magna caedēs esset. 10. Omnia *virtutē* agō ut bonus servus Christi sim. 11. Legātus in agro statim contendit *ne* longē ā proeliō abesset. 12. Sāncti labōrēs gravēs propter Christum sustinent. 13. Hostēs equitēs in aciem statim misērunt ut ordinēs nostrōrum perturbārent. 14. Principes obsides inter sē dabant ut pāx in Galliā esset. 15. Principes Galliae semper inter sē dē impend omnis Galliae contendēbant. 16. Erat iter et difficile et angustum inter montēs et flūmen. 17. Duce sē in conciliō dē rē gravi agunt.

**LABOR OMNIA VINGIT.**

(Motto of the State of Oklahoma)

**EXERCISE 261**

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Meanwhile cavalry were sent by the general into the territory of the enemy to find out their plans. 2. The Romans often fortified the camp with a wall lest the Gauls take it (by storm.) 3. The Gauls strengthened peace by means of hostages. 4. Cavalry were immediately sent against the enemy in order to disturb their ranks. 5. They often exchanged hostages that they might preserve peace and friendship. 6. A council assembled in the town at once in order that the chiefs might treat among themselves about peace and war.

**EXERCISE 262**

[Review]

1. What is the rule for the ablative of means?
2. What is the rule for the ablative of the agent?
3. Name the primary tenses of the indicative.



OBSIDES

## READING NO. 14

## DE OBSIDIBUS

Galli obsidēs inter sē saepe dedērunt ut amicitiam et pācem cōfirmārent. Itaque per obsidēs amicitia cōfirmāta est atque ita pāx in Galliā est cōfirmāta. Galli saepe obsidēs etiam Rōmānis dedērunt ut fidem cōfirmārent. Rōmāni autem obsidēs Gallis nōn dedērunt, nam, omnis Galliae imperii cupidi, gentēs Galliae armis et virtūte vicerant. Itaque Galli Rōmañōs timebant et cum eis bella saepe gesserunt ne ōbsides ēis darent.

Obsidēs autem pueri et viri et mātres et patrēs erant. Saepe etiam erant filii principum et rēgum Galldrum. Liberi autem nōn erant obsidēs. Eōs enim Rōmāni in castris et hibernis et oppidis tenebant ut propter edrum salūtem Galli pācem servārent. Itaque obsides saepe miseri erant. Nam, si<sup>1</sup> post pacem Gallī

---

<sup>1</sup> si: *if*.

bellum cum Rōmānis gesserunt, Rōmāni omneſ edrum obsideſ occidebant ut postea<sup>1</sup> Galli propter metum fidem servarent. Ita Galli caede obsidum saepe terriți sunt et bellum cum Rōmānis saepe nōn gesserunt ut obsidum vitas cōservarent.

*Answer in complete Latin sentences:*

1. Cūr Galli inter se ōbsideſ dederūt?
2. Cūr Galli Rōmāniſ obsideſ dabant?
3. Erantne obsideſ liberi ?
4. Ubi tenebantur obsideſ a Rōmāniſ ?
5. Erantne obsideſ saepe miseri? Cur?

**“DUCIS IN CŌSILIŌ POSITA EST VIRTUS  
MĪLITUM”**

—Publius Syrus

---

<sup>1</sup> postea, *adv.*: afterwards.

## LESSON 24: RELATIVE CLAUSES; THE USE OF *AD*

### 1. *QUI, QUAE, QUOD*

The RELATIVE PRONOUN in English is:

1. *WHO* (*whose, whom*) for PERSONS;
2. *WHICH* for THINGS;
3. *THAT* for PERSONS or THINGS.

The RELATIVE PRONOUN introduces a SUBORDINATE ADJECTIVE CLAUSE.

The Gaul—who was in the camp—was a slave.

Those—who fight bravely—do not always win.

The MAIN clauses are:

The Gaul was a slave.

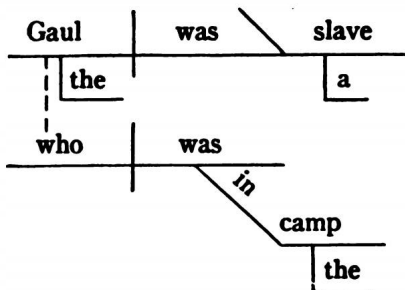
Those do not always win.

The SUBORDINATE clauses are:

who was in the camp

who fight bravely

These subordinate clauses are ADJECTIVE clauses because, like an adjective, they modify (describe) a noun (*the Gaul*) or a pronoun (*those*).



In English the relative pronoun :

1. May be EXPRESSED:

1. *The Gaul—who was in the camp—was a slave.*
2. *The column—which was in the forest—was long.*
3. *The column—that was in the forest—was long.*

2. May be IMPLIED:

4. *The Gaul—I saw—was a slave.*

Note. *Whom* is understood after Gaul. The full sentence would read:

*The Gaul—whom I saw—was a slave.*

In Latin the relative pronoun—*qui, quae, quod*—is ALWAYS EXPRESSED.

1. *Gallus—qui in castris erat—servus erat.*
2. *Agmen—quod in silvis erat—longum erat.*
3. *Agmen—quod in silvis erat—longum erat.*
4. *Gallus—quem vidi—servus erat.*

Note. *Quem* is masculine singular because it must AGREE with its antecedent, *Gallus*, in GENDER and NUMBER. But *quem* is in the ACCUSATIVE case because it is the object of *vidi*, the verb in its own clause.

**THE GENERAL RULE FOR THE AGREEMENT OF  
PRONOUNS (GRAMMAR, NO. 479) APPLIES  
TO RELATIVE PRONOUNS ALSO.**

The ANTECEDENT of a relative pronoun (i. e., the word to which the pronoun refers) is sometimes UNDERSTOOD in Latin when it would be in the nominative case. Express the antecedent when translating into English.

***Qui fortiter pugnant, belli glōriam habent.***

***THOSE who fight bravely have the glory of war.***

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the declension of **qui, quae, quod** (GRAMMAR, NO. 139) and the rule for the agreement of pronouns (GRAMMAR, NO. 479).

### VOCABULARY

<b>qui, quae, quod</b>	{ <i>who (whose, whom)</i> <i>which</i> <i>that</i>
<b>auxilium, i</b>	{ <i>help</i> <i>aid</i>
<b>auxilia, auxiliorum</b>	<i>reinforcements</i>
<b>memoria, ae</b>	<i>memory</i>
<b>memoria tened, teneŕe, tenui, tentus, 2, tr.</b>	{ <i>keep in memory</i> <i>remember</i>

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The pilot turned on the *auxiliary* motor. They held a *memorial* service.

### EXERCISE 263

*Supply the correct form of the relative pronoun:*

1. Caesar, who was a great general, conquered the Gauls.  
Caesar, imperator magnus fuit, Gallos vicit.
2. The Gauls whose leaders Caesar killed were not friends of the Romans.  
Galli duces Caesar occidit amici Romanorum non fuerunt.
3. Caesar, whose victories we all praise, was a great general.  
Caesar, victorias omnes laudamus, imperator magnus fuit.
4. God, to whom we give thanks, is our Father.  
Deus, gratias agimus, Pater noster est.
5. The soldiers to whom Caesar gave rewards were brave.  
Milites Caesar praemia dedit fortes erant.

6. Caesar, whom the Romans praised, was a great general.  
Caesar, ----- Rōmānī laudaverunt, imperator magnus fuit.
7. The Gauls whom Caesar conquered fought bravely.  
Galli Caesar vicit fortiter pugnauerunt.
8. The Gauls with whom Caesar fought were brave.  
Galli-cum Caesar pugnavit fortes erant.
9. The war about which the Senate sent letters into Gaul was long and difficult.  
Bellum desenatus litteras in Galliam misit longum et difficile fuit.
10. The town that Caesar stormed was large.  
Oppidum Caesar oppugnavit magnū fuit.
11. The army with which Caesar came into Gaul was large.  
Exercitus-cum Caesar in Galliam venit magnus erat.
12. The victory for which Caesar was eager was not easy.  
Victoria Caesar cupidus erat facilis non erat.
13. The Gauls burned the baggage that was in the camp.  
Galli impedimenta in castris erant incenderunt.

## EXERCISE 264

[Essential]

Z. Translate;

2. Explain the case and agreement of the italicized relative pronouns; •

3. Diagram Sentences 1 and 2:

1. Rōmāni Christum, *qui* erat Filius Dei, occiderunt. 2. Maria, *quam* laudamus, Māter Dei est. 3. Gentes *quae* prōvinciae finitimae erant lēgātōs miserunt ut auxilium peterent. 4. Legio *quae* trāns flūmen fuerat in silvās statim missa est ut hostēs pelleret. 5. Bella *quae* patrēs nostri gesserunt memoriā semper tenebimus. 6. Oppidum in *quo* frūmentum erat ā Rōmānis oppugnabatur. 7. Imperatōres *quodrum* memoriam laudamus fortēs erant. 8. Lēgātus obsidēs *quod* in castris tenebat occidit ut Gallōs terreret. 9. Ego, *qui* Rōmānus sum, tibi nōn cēdam. 10. Caesar

auxilia in silvas statim misit ne hostes nostros vincerent. "

11. Legatus servum cui hostes gladium dederant occidit.

12. Hiberna in quibus Romani sunt angusta sunt. 13. Dabisne nobis, qui Galli sumus, frumentum? 14. Regem pro quo pugnavi omnes homines memoriam tenebunt. 15. Romani eos quibuscum pugnaverant saepe occidebant. 16. Caesar, quo cum eram, mihi praemia dedit. 17. Qui legem Christi servant, sancti sunt. "

18. Gentēs in quorum finēs Caesar venit fortiter cum ed pugnāvērunt. 19. Legionēs quās trans flūmen lātum primā lūce videram ā Caesare in castra ductae sunt. 20. Caesar imperium cūjūs cupidus erat obtinuit.

#### EXERCISE 265

[Essential]

Z. Translate;

2. Explain the agreement and the case of all relative Pronouns in the Latin translation:

1. The Romans always killed slaves who had helped the enemy.
2. The mountains of Gaul, across which Caesar often led the Roman forces, were high. 3. Caesar often killed the leaders of the tribes with which he fought. 4. Caesar led the troops across many rivers which were long and deep. 5. Christ, who is the Son of God, was killed by the Romans. 6. The legion which was in the forest was fighting bravely. 7. The legion to which the Gauls gave grain was led into winter quarters. 8. The legion the centurions of which were brave conquered the enemy. 9. The legions which Caesar led into the province were brave. 10. The legion with which the Gauls fought was brave. 11. The soldiers whose courage Caesar praised are in winter quarters. 12. The soldiers to whom the general gave thanks had withstood many attacks of the enemy. 13. The Gauls often bravely defended the towns which the Romans stormed. 14. The territory of the enemy into which Caesar led all the Roman forces was full of dangers. 15. The affair concerning which Caesar was treating with the Gauls was serious. 16. The forest through which Caesar



often led the Roman legions was full of dangers. 17. The Roman people on whose behalf Caesar fought was great and renowned.

18. Caesar seized many cities from which Rome was far distant.

19. The roads which were constructed by the Romans were long and safe. 20. The things on account of which peoples and tribes wage war are serious. 21. Caesar immediately gave the soldiers the grain which the slaves had carried into the camp. 22. Caesar conquered the soldiers with whom the enemy had filled the bridge. 23. I, who am a Christian, will always praise Christ and Mary. 24. We all praise Caesar, whose victories were many and great. 25. The Gauls were storming the camp which had been pitched in their territory. 26. Caesar held the power for which he had been eager. 27. To you who are enemies of the Roman name I shall give neither grain nor arms. 28. We soldiers who fight for Rome are eager for victory and fame. 29. The hill on which the Romans pitched the camp is high.

#### EXERCISE 266

*Translate:*

1. "Bis<sup>1</sup> vincit qui se vincit in victoria."—*Publilius Syrus*.
  - a. What is the antecedent of qui ?
  - b. Why is se used instead of eum ?
2. "Omnes enim filii Dei estis per fidem quae est in Christo Jesu."—*St. Paul*.
  - a. Explain the case of filii.
  - b. With what does omnes agree ?
3. Iesus Christus, qui pro nobis mortem semel<sup>2</sup> \* vicit, semper mortem in nobis vincit.
  - a. Give the rule for the case of mortem.
4. Templum<sup>8</sup> Dei sanctum est, quod estis vos.—*Adapted from St. Paul*.

---

<sup>1</sup> bis, adv.: twice.

<sup>2</sup> semel, adv.: once.

<sup>8</sup> templum, i: temple.

## READING NO. 15

THE MOST IMPORTANT "PER" IN THE HISTORY  
OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Jesus Christ is our Savior. This means that all grace and salvation comes to us *through* Him. Without Him we can do nothing. He has brought us back to God through His death on the cross, and this is why today the cross surmounts our churches and the crucifix stands above all our altars.

Per Jēsum Christum grā-  
tiam Del habemus. Per Jēsum  
Christum et per ejus mortem  
salutem et spem glōriae habemus. Per eum in terrā tūti sumus; per eum in Caelum post mortem veniemus.

Therefore most of the public prayers of the Church today end with this or a similar formula: '

. . . per Dominum nostrum Jēsum Christum Filium tuum, qui tēcum vivit<sup>1</sup> et rēgnat<sup>2</sup> in imitātē<sup>3</sup> Spiritūs Sāncti Deus per omnia saecula<sup>4</sup> saeculdrum.<sup>4</sup>

The *per* which begins this formula is therefore the most important and significant *per* that has ever been written or spoken.

---

<sup>1</sup> vivit: *lives*

<sup>2</sup> rēgnat: *reigns*.

<sup>3</sup> ūnitās, ūnitātis: *unity*.

<sup>4</sup> saeculum, i: *age*.

2. THE USE OF *AD*

We have studied a number of prepositions, some governing the ablative case, others the accusative. The preposition *in*, for example, used with the accusative case after verbs of motion, means *into, in, onto, upon*.

**In flūmen puls! sunt. *They were driven into the river.***

**In castra contendit. *He hastened into the camp.***

Another preposition which takes the ACCUSATIVE is *ad*. This word has several meanings and uses.

1. *Ad* is used with verbs of motion (and occasionally others like *pertinere*) to mean *to* or *up to*.

**Ad flūmen pulsī sunt. *They were driven to the river.***

**Ad castra contendit. *He hastened (up) to the camp.***

**Ea omnia ad helium pertinent.**

***AU those things pertain to war.***

2. *Ad* is used in expressions of time to mean *to, until*.

**Ad noctem pugnāvērūt. *They fought until night.***

3. *Ad* sometimes also means *at*, both with verbs of motion and with other verbs.

**Ad flūmen pervēnerunt. *They arrived at the river.***

**Ad flūmen castra posuerunt. *They pitched camp at the river.***

4. *Ad* is used with certain adjectives to mean *for*.

**Ad omnia parātus. *Prepared for all things.***

**Ad helium utilia. *Things useful for war.***

5. *Ad* is sometimes strengthened by the adverb *usque*, *all the way*. *Usque* can be frequently left untranslated.

**Usque ad urbem contenderunt.**

***They hastened to. (all the way to) the city.***

## VOCABULARY

ad, *prep. w. acc.*usque, *adv.*perveniō, pervenire, perverū, perventum,  
4, *intr.; in or ad w. acc.*pertinēd, pertinēre, pertinui, 2, *intr.; ad  
w. acc.*

parātus a, um; w. ad

ūtilis, e; w. ad

nox, noctis

{ to  
 until  
 at  
 for (with adjectives)  
 all the way  
 arrive  
 { pertain to  
 stretch to  
 prepared (for)  
 useful (for)  
 night

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *pertinent* remark. No one doubts the *utility* of water power. China has never been able to *utilize* all its resources. The bat is a *nocturnal* animal. Usque is a Latin *adverb*.

## RELATED LATIN WORDS

Veniō; teneo; paro.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY

in, *prep. w. abl.*in, *prep. w. acc.*portō, 1, *tr.*moved, movēre, mōvi, motus, 2, *tr.*contendō, contendere, contend!, 3, *intr.*

{ in  
 on  
 { in  
 into  
 against  
 upon  
 onto  
 on  
 carry  
 move  
 { strive  
 contend  
 hasten

## IDIOM STUDY

A verb is used impersonally when it has no DEFINITE SUBJECT. In English we use the indefinite *IT* as a subject for impersonal verbs.

*It rains.*

In this sentence *it* does not refer to any definite thing.

In Latin many verbs are used impersonally in various constructions. When a verb is used impersonally it is always in the THIRD PERSON SINGULAR, and, in compound tenses, the participle is always NEUTER SINGULAR. For the present learn only these two common expressions:

**Ācrit̄er pugnātum est.**

(Literally, *It was fought bitterly.*)

*There was bitter fighting,*

(or) *They fought bitterly.*

**Ad flūmen perventum est.**

(Literally, *It was arrived at the river.*)

*They arrived at the river.*

Always translate Latin impersonal verbs into GOOD ENGLISH. The Romans used many verbs impersonally which we cannot so use in English.

## EXERCISE 267

[Drill on the use of *ad* and *in*]

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the meaning of the prepositions:*

1. *In* fines hostium pervenerunt.
2. *Ad* flūmen pervenerunt.
3. *Ad* flūmen pugnauerunt.
4. *Usque ad* noctem pugnauerunt.
5. Arma *ad* bellum utilia sunt.
6. Primā lūce *ad* castra perventum est.
7. Primā lūce *in* castra pervenit.
8. Erat inopia omnium rerum *in* hibernis nostris.
9. *Ad* impedimenta acriter pugnatum est.
10. Milites *ad* omnia parati erant.
11. *In* locum tutum castra movit.
12. Frumentum *in* castra portabatur.
13. Duxitne milites *in* urbem?
14. Duxitne milites *usque ad* urbem?

15. Militeſ Rōmānī, *ad* mortem parati, p̄o portis instruct! sunt.  
 16. *In* silvās contendēbat. 17. *Ad* silvās contendēbat. 18. Eōs *in* prōvinciam misit. 19. Eōs *ad* prōvinciam misit. 20. *In* loca aliēna militeſ dūxit. 21. *In* hiberna lēgātum misit. 22. *Ad* Caesarem lēgātōs misērunt. 23. Miles *in* pontem missus est. 24. Miles *ad* pontem missus est. 25. Caesar undique principēs *ad* sē vocāvit. 26. *Ad* flumēn perventum est.

## EXERCISE 268

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. *Ad* impedimēta acriter usque *ad* noctem pugnatūm est.
2. Lēgāti *in* castra celeriter pervenerunt ūt auxilium peterent.
3. Mittesne litteras et lēgātōs *ad* mē? 4. Christiān! propter Christum *ad* labōrem et mortem parāti sunt. 5. Omnia quae *ad* bellum pertinent ab hostibus nostris comparantur; itaque nōs etiam ea quae *ad* bellum utilia sunt comparabimus. 6. Hostēs, glōriae cupidi, usque *ad* castra nostra vēnerunt. 7. Duces de omnibus rēbus quae *ad* militum salutē pertinent in cōsiliū inter sē agunt. 8. Militeſ *ad* labōrem praemiis facile incitantur. 9. Primā lūce *ad* finēs hostium perventum est. 10. Ibi flūmen lātum erat, sed pōns pertinuit *ad* urbem quam lēgatus tenebat. 11. Imperātor omnēs lēgātōs et militeſ *ad* sē statim vocavit. 12. Tribūnds militum *ad* omnēs civitatēs finitimās dimisit ut praemiis et orātidnibus amicitiam cum eis confirmarent.

## EXERCISE 269

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. They arrived at a river which was wide and deep. 2. There was bitter fighting<sup>1</sup> at the river. 3. They hastened to Caesar to help him. 4. Did the Romans fight until night? 5. Are the soldiers prepared for battle? 6. Swords and arms are useful for

---

<sup>1</sup> Use a Latin idiomatic expression.

war. 7. They prepared everything which pertained to the journey. 8. They stationed soldiers on the bridge which stretched to Rome. 9. They hastened to the river to defend the bridge. 10. The fresh legions were sent against the Gauls by the lieutenant. 11. They hastened to the hill and fortified it with a rampart and a ditch lest the enemy seize it.

### WARNING!

Do not confuse *ad* and the dative of the indirect object. *Ad*, *to*, is used with VERBS OF MOTION. The indirect object is rarely used with verbs of motion.

*He came to us. Ad nōs vēnit.*

*He gave rewards to us. Nōbīs praemia dedit.*

### SEMPER PARATUS

(Motto of the United States Coast Guard)

### EXERCISE 270

[Drill]

*Translate:*

1. They handed over the arms *to* the Romans.
2. They hastened *to* the Romans.
3. They gave hostages *to* the Romans.
4. They carried grain *to* the army.
5. He called the lieutenants *to* him.
6. He sent envoys *to* all the neighboring tribes.

### EXERCISE 271

[Review]

1. Give the rule for the ablative of accompaniment.
2. Give the rule for the ablative of agency.
3. Name the secondary tenses of the indicative.
4. Explain the use of *sancti*:

*Omnes sancti Deum laudant.*

### 3. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

A RELATIVE CLAUSE is very frequently used in Latin instead of an *ut*-clause to EXPRESS PURPOSE.

The rules for MOOD and TENSE are the same in relative clauses of purpose as in *ut*-clauses of purpose.

***Equitēs misit qui cōsilia cognōscerent.***

<b><i>He sent cavalry</i></b>	}	<i>who should learn the plans,</i> <i>in order that they might learn the plans,</i> <i>in order to learn the plans,</i> <i>that they might learn the plans,</i> <i>to learn the plans.</i>
-------------------------------	---	--

A relative clause of purpose should be used instead of an *ut*-clause whenever possible. It may be used whenever the relative pronoun can, WITHOUT CHANGING THE MEANING, be made to agree with a noun or pronoun in the main clause, thus:

1. ***He sent envoys to seek peace.***

Before translating into English, change to :

2. ***He sent envoys WHO should seek peace.***

***Lēgātōs misit QUI pācē pETERENT.***

Sentences 1 and 2 MEAN THE SAME THING, but Sentence 2 shows how the sentence should be translated into Latin.

**EXCEPTION.** A relative clause of purpose cannot be used when the relative pronoun would have to agree with the SUBJECT of an ACTIVE MAIN VERB.

***He came to see Rome. Vēnit ut Rōmā videret.***

This cannot be changed to: *He came who should see Rome.*

**A relative clause may be used to express purpose.**

**Mood: SUBJUNCTIVE.**

**Tense: Same as in *ut*-clauses of purpose.**



## VOCABULARY

deducō, deducere, deduxi, deductus, 3, tr.	{ lead lead away
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvi, cognitus, 3, tr.	{ learn find out
nuntius, I	{ messenger message
nātūra, ae	nature
-que, conj.	and
injūria, ae	{ injustice wrong

## NOTE

The conjunction -que is always added to the first word that follows the *and*.

Maria sanctique Dei. *Mary and the Saints of God.*

Senātus Populusque Rōmānus. *The Roman Senate and People.*

If et were used these would be:

Maria et sancti Dei; Senātus et Populus Rōmānus.

You have now learned three words for *and*:

1. **et**, which is the ordinary conjunction in Latin;
2. **atque**, which is more emphatic and emphasizes the second part of the combination;
3. **-que**, which joins things that are more closely associated.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *injured* party brought suit. Sherlock Holmes solved crimes by *deduction*. A papal *nuncio*.

## RELATED LATIN WORD

Dūcō

Injuria nōn excusat<sup>1</sup> injuriam.

<sup>1</sup> excūsō, I, tr.: excuse.

## EXERCISE 272

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Diagram Sentences 1 and 2:*

1. Hostēs servum in castra Ckesaris misērunt qui cōsilia ējus cognōsceret. 2. Dux militeſ ad omnia parātōs in aciem dedūxit qui hostium cōpiās sustinērent. 3. Nuntium ad te mittam qui dē injūriis tecum agat. 4. Dux militeſ ad collem statim misit qui eum valid fossāque mūnirent. 5. Misitne reſ ad Caesarem nuntium qui auxilium peteret? 6. Equiteſ ad fluūmen misit qui loci nātūrā cognōscerent. 7. Propter injūriāſ lēgātum misit qui obsideſ occideret.

**“Deo autem grātiās,<sup>1</sup> qui dedit nobis victoriā per Dominum nostrum J ēsūm Christum.”**

—Vōx Sāncti Pauli

## EXERCISE 273

[Essential]

*Translate:*

(Use a relative clause of purpose *whenever possible*.)

1. They immediately sent envoys into the camp of Caesar to seek peace. 2. A messenger was sent to Caesar to beg help. 3. In front of the gate he stationed soldiers who were prepared for everything. 4. Soldiers were stationed on the bridge to defend it. 5. The chief came to seek grain. 6. He fortified the camp with a rampart lest the enemy storm it. 7. He sent a lieutenant into Italy to lead away the new legions into Gaul.

## EXERCISE 274

[Review]

1. What is the rule for the ablative of agency?
2. What is the rule for the ablative of means?

---

<sup>1</sup> Agō or agimus is understood in this sentence.

3. Name the secondary tenses of the indicative.
4. How are verbs used impersonally in Latin? Give an example.

## READING NO. 16

### HOW A HOSTILE KING HONORED THE HEROIC PATRIOTISM OF MUCIUS SCAEVOLA

Porsenna<sup>1</sup> regnum Etruscorum<sup>2</sup> \* <sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> \* obŕinebat. Is erat vir fortis et imperii atque glŕiae cupidus. Itaque cum Rŕmānis dē imperiŕ Italiae contendit et Rŕmā magnis cŕpiis oppugnābat. Rŕmāni autem cŕpiam frŕmenti nŕn habēbant et vehementer terrēbantur. Erat autem in numero Rŕmānŕum vir fortis, Mŕcius Scaevola.<sup>8</sup> Ab eŕ virtus Rŕmānŕum cŕfirmābatur. Eis enim, "In castra Etruscoŕum,"<sup>2</sup> inquit,\* "contendam et Porsennam<sup>1</sup> rēgem occidam. Ita Rŕmā servabb."

Itaque in eŕum castra tŕtus pervēnit. (*However, he had never seen the King, and so by mistake he killed one of the court officials instead of Porsenna.*) Itaque Etrusci eum ad rēgem duxerunt. Porsenna<sup>1</sup> autem periculo vehementer mŕtus est. Itaque Mŕciŕ,<sup>8</sup> "Ad mē vēnisti," inquit,\* "ut mē occiderēs. Vitam meam petivisti. Id nŕn sine auxilio neque sine cŕsilib ēgisti. Si<sup>®</sup> dē cŕsiliis vestris me monueris, vitam tuam servabb ēt te dimittam."

Mŕcius autem rēgi, "Omnēs Rŕmāni," inquit,\* "ad mortem parāti sunt. Periculo mortis nŕn movēbuntur. Multi mittentur in castra ad tē qui tē occidant. Nŕn vitam sed civitatem nostram servābimus. Ego enim neque ā tē terror neque metŕ mortis terrebŕr."

Erat autem ibi ante<sup>®</sup> regem ignis.<sup>7</sup> Turn Mucius, ŕt rex vir-

<sup>1</sup> Porsenna, ae: *Porsenna* (a proper name).

<sup>2</sup> Etrusci, Etruscoŕum: *the Etruscans* (a people who dwelt north of Rome).

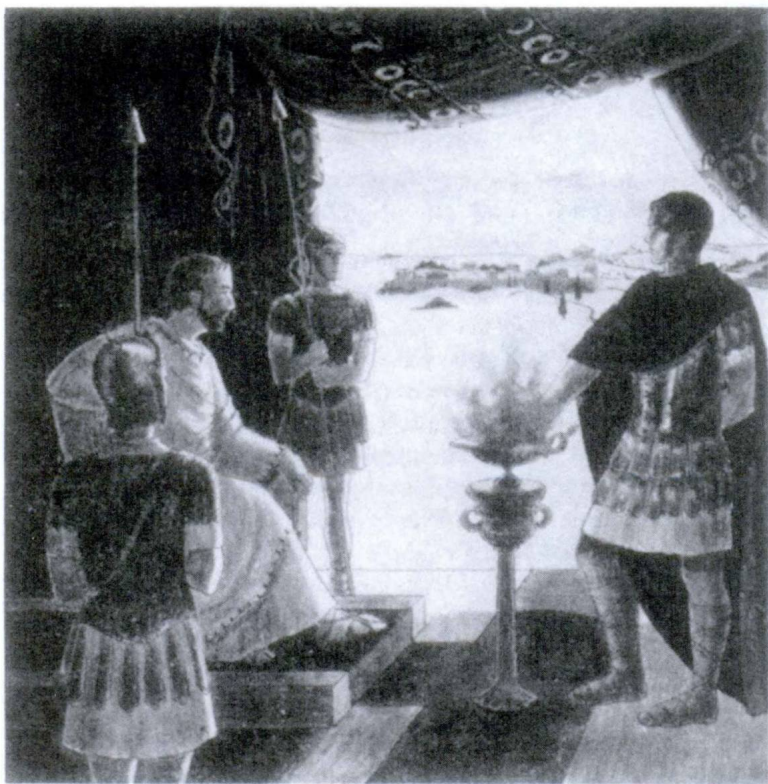
<sup>8</sup> Mŕcius (i) Scaevola (ae): *Mucius Scaevola*.

<sup>4</sup>inquit: *he said*. Inquit, as here, is always put after the first words of a direct quotation.

<sup>5</sup> si: *if*.

• ante, prep. w. acc.t before.

<sup>7</sup> ignis, is, m.: *fire*.



Mucius MANUM IN IGNE POSUIT.

tūtem Rōmānam cognōsceret, manum dexteram<sup>1</sup> in igne<sup>2</sup> statim posuit neque dolore<sup>3</sup> superātus est. Porsenna autem virtute MUCII vehementer mōtus est. Itaque ejus et vitam cōservāvit et virtutem laudāvit. Eum etiam in castra Rōmānōrum dimisit. Post id rēx legātōs ad imperātōrem Rōmānum misit qui pācem peterent. Ita civitas Rōmāna virtute Mucii sērvata est.

<sup>1</sup> manum dexteram: *right hand*.

<sup>2</sup> ignis, is, m.\* *fire*.

<sup>3</sup> dolor, doloris: *pain*.

4. PURPOSE CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *QUO*

When a purpose clause contains a COMPARATIVE, *quo* is used instead of *ut* but not instead of *ne*. *Quo* in these clauses never changes its spelling. We shall study comparatives later. For the present remember only that the sign of a comparative is the adverb *more* or the ending *-er*. These are comparative adverbs:

*diūtius, longer*  
*facilius, more easily*

*He sent reinforcements that the legion might more easily conquer the enemy.*

*Auxilia misit quo facilius legio hostes vinceret.*

But:

*He sent reinforcements lest the enemy fight longer.*

*Auxilia misit ne diūtius hostes pugnarent.*

**Note.** The comparative stands regularly IMMEDIATELY AFTER the *quo* or *ne*.

**MEMORIZE THE COMPLETE RULE FOR PURPOSE CLAUSES, GRAMMAR, NO. 546.**

## VOCABULARY

<i>diūtius, comparative adv.</i>	<i>fonger</i>
<i>facilius, comparative adv.</i>	<i>more easily</i>
<i>appropinquō, I, intr.; w. ad or dat. j</i>	<i>[draw near to [approach</i>
<i>vastō, I, fr.</i>	<i>[lay waste [ravage</i>
<i>custōs, custōdis</i>	<i>guard</i>

## NOTE

1. Guards are usually soldiers. Therefore what gender is *custōs*?

2. Appropinquo<sup>m</sup> is intransitive. The English object of *approach* or *draw near to* is expressed in Latin by AD with the accusative or by the DATIVE. This is the meaning of the notation: "*intr.; w. ad or dat.*" in the vocabulary.

**Hostēs ad hiberna (hiberns) appropinquant.**

*The enemy draws near to the winter quarters.*

(or) *The enemy approaches the winter quarters.*

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Modern war brings terrible *devastation*. The police took the criminal into *custody*. I am the *custodian* of this property.

#### RELATED LATIN WORDS

**Facilis; facile.**

#### EXERCISE 275

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Diagram Sentence 1:*

1. Lēgātus custōdēs ad flūmen statim collocāvit quō facilius pontem dēfenderent. 2. Duceſ Rōmāni agroſ Gallōrum vasta-  
bant nē diūtius bellum gererent. 3. Caesar centurioñē et tri-  
būds militum saepe appellābat quō diūtius pugnārent. 4. Im-  
perātor auxilium in primam aciem misit quō diūtius et facilius  
militeſ hostēſ pellerent. 5. Equiteſ ad mūrū appropinquā-  
vērunt; militeſ autem portae appropinquaverūnt.

#### EXERCISE 276

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. They killed the guards that they might more easily approach the camp. 2. They killed the hostages that the enemy might not fight longer. 3. They drove the enemy into the town that they might more easily lay waste the fields. 4. The lieutenant gave rewards to the soldiers that they might fight longer. 5. They stationed guards on the bridge to defend it more easily. 6. They

fortified the winter quarters with a rampart and a ditch that they might repulse the enemy more easily.

## EXERCISE 277

[Review]

1. Parse the italicized words:

*Rēges saepe sunt glōriāe cupidi.*

2. Give the rule for the ablative of means.

ARMIS VIGIT; VITUS<sup>1</sup> VIGTUS EST.

—Seneca writing of Alexander the Great

## READING NO. 17

## REPORT FROM THE FRONT

The radio has brought the great events of the world into our own parlors. Ringside and battlefront broadcasts keep us up with the news as it happens. Let us imagine that we are ancient Romans, seated in our home at Rome and listening to a broadcast direct from a winter quarters of Caesar's army in Gaul.

"Your announcer is Quintus Titurius Mucius, with the Second Legion in their Belgian winter quarters. Your friends here have been enjoying a very quiet winter. The Belgians (*clāmōrēs subitd<sup>2</sup> per radiophōniam\* ā nōbis audiutitur*) . . . (*Excitedly*) Friends, this is it . . . Hostes appropinquant. Hibernis nostris appropinquant! . . . Usque ad portās celeriter appropinquant I Auditis clāmōrem et hostium et nostrorum. Principeſ et ducēs, viri fortēs, etiam cum eis appropinquant. Etiam Rēgem eorū video<sup>3</sup> I Custōdēs nostrōs statim gladiis occidunt et eds qui in mūrō sunt tellis occidunt quō facilius hiberna oppugnent. Nostri omneſ statim ad arma vocantur. (*Vocēs centuriōnum per radiophōniam\**

<sup>1</sup> vitium, i: vice.

<sup>2</sup> subitd, adv.: suddenly.

<sup>3</sup> radiophōnia, ae: radio.

*audiuntur.*) Tribuñi militum mūrōs hominibus complent! Equitēs per portās celeriter mittuntur. Ācrit̄er cum Gallis pugnant! . . . (*Magnus clamor subito*<sup>1 2 3 4</sup> *auditur.*) Rex . . . Rex hostium tēll̄s occisus est! Nunc hos̄tes pelluntur! Cēdunt! Silvās petunt! Sed lēgātus noster, vir bonus et fortis, equitēs nunc mittit qui eds omnēs occidant. Friends, it's all over and may that be a lesson to them. Fortunā legidnes Rōmañas sēmp̄er adjuvat."

### NOTE ON TRANSLATION

The English meanings given in the vocabularies for Latin words give only the basic or general meaning of the Latin. Frequently in translating from Latin into English you should use some other English word, generally a synonym, which expresses the same MEANING as the Latin word but which sounds better in English. Remember your translations should always MAKE SENSE and be GOOD ENGLISH.

For example, you have learned that *magnus*, *a*, *um* means *large* or *great*. The Romans used *magnus* much more frequently than we do *large* or *great*. We would often use different adjectives in English to modify different nouns. Thus *magna spēs* would be better translated by *high hope* than by *large hope* or *great hope*.

### EXERCISE 278

*See whether you can pick the best English adjectives from this list to translate magnus in the following phrases.*

ENGLISH ADJECTIVES: *hard, bright, large, loud* (to be used twice), *extreme, extensive, bloody*.

Example: *magna spes*

Translation: *high hope*

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>magnus clamor</i> | 5. <i>magna inopia</i>   |
| 2. <i>magnus labor</i>  | 6. <i>magnae silvae</i>  |
| 3. <i>magna vox</i>     | 7. <i>magnus numerus</i> |
| 4. <i>magna caedes</i>  | 8. <i>magna lux</i>      |

<sup>1</sup> *tubito*, adv.: *suddenly*.



# UNIT SEVEN

## LESSON 25: DIRECT QUESTIONS

### INTRODUCTION

Ordinary-questions which are addressed directly to a person are called DIRECT QUESTIONS and are generally in the indicative mood.

Direct questions, as we have seen, may be introduced by:

1. Interrogative adverbs: **Cur v̄enisfi?** *Why have you come?*
2. Interrogative particles: **Videsne?** *Do you see?*
3. Interrogative adjectives and pronouns: **Quid vldisti?** *What did you see?*

### 1. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

Questions may be introduced by INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS.

Ubi fuisti? Where were you?

Cur v̄enit? Why did he come?

Since these words are adverbs, they are not declined and never change their spelling.

### VOCABULARY

ubi	where?
cūr	why?
unde	{ whence? from what place? where . . . from?
quō	{ whither? where . . . (to)? to what place?

## NOTE

Ubi and quō can translate the English *where*. Ubi can be used only when the *where* refers to place IN WHICH and implies REST; quō can be used only when *where* refers to place TO WHICH and implies MOTION or direction. Unde can be used only of place FROM WHICH and implies MOTION or direction.

Ubi es? *Where are you?*

Quō contendis? *Where are you hastening?*

Unde venis? *Where do you come from?*

## EXERCISE 279

*Translate:*

1. Ubi ēras? 2. Quō contendis? 3. Unde vēnisti? 4. Cūr Caesar bellum cum Gallis gessit? 5. Quō lēgātus ā senātū missus est? 6. Cūr sunt Christianī! et ad labōrēs et ad mortem parātī? 7. Cūr Galli saepe obsidēs inter sē dederunt? 8. Cūr victoriās patrum nostrorum semper memoriā tenēbimus? 9. Cūr nōs Americā! amicitiam cum omnibus gentibus cōfirmāmus? 10. Cūr grātiās Deō agimus? 11. Cūr Rōmāni hiberna valid fossāque muniverunt?

## EXERCISE 280

*Answer in complete Latin sentences as shown in Sentence 1:*

(Consult map on page 166)

1. Ubi est urbs Roma? (ANSWER. Urbs Rōma est in Italia.)
2. Ubi est flumen Tiberis? 3. Ubi sunt Alpēs? 4. Ubi erat prōvincia cūjus imperium Caesar obtinebat? 5. Ubi erant Galli?
6. Ubi Caesar, imperator Rōmānus, cum Gallis bellum gessit?
7. Quō Caesar ā senātū missus est?

Per magnos labores ad magna praemia pervenimus.

—Adapted from the *Roman Breviary*

## EXERCISE 281

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Where were the guards? 2. Whence have you led the new forces? 3. Where have you hastened from? 4. Where will the lieutenant lead the legions? 5. Whither will you hasten? 6. To what place are you sending the envoys? 7. Why did you yield to the enemy? 8. Why did the Romans fortify the camp with a ditch and a rampart?

## EXERCISE 282

[Review]

1. Give the complete rule for purpose clauses.

## 2. INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 502-503.

## VOCABULARY

certus, a, um	{ certain sure
barbarus, a, um	barbarian
apud, prep. w. acc.	{ among in the presence of
plurimum, adv.	{ very much very
valeo, valerē, valui, valitflrus, 2, intr.	{ am strong am well am influential
cernd, cemere, 3, tr.	{ distinguish see

## NOTE

**Barbaras** can, of course, be used as a noun to mean *barbarian*:

**Barban p̄uls! sunt.** *The barbarians were routed.*

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *valid* argument; a *valiant* warrior.

## EXERCISE 283

[Essential]

*Translate, and give the "expected" answer in complete Latin sentences:*

1. Valesne? 2. Num milites sine certā spē fortiter pugnant?
3. Nōne legiones Romānae barbaros faciliē superaverunt?
4. Nōne viri qui fortes sūnt apud barbaros plurimum valent?
5. Num amicus certus et fortis facile cernitur? 6. Nōne vir fortis in mortis periculd facile cernitur? 7. Nōne victōriās legionum Rōmānarum laudābis? 8. Num Columbus sine magnō labōre ad terrās novās pervenit? 9. Vidistine Rōmam? Veniēsne in Italiam ut eam videās? 10. Nōne ācritē pugnābimus ut civitātem nostram dēfendāmus? 11. Nōne Caesar plurimum apud Rōmānos valēbit? 12. Num imperatores apud Americanos plurimum valent? 13. Nōne amici apud amicos plurimum valent?

## EXERCISE 284

*Translate:*

1. Was the chief influential among the Romans on account of his faithfulness?
2. You won't hand over the arms to the Romans, will you?
3. You will defend our free nation, won't you?
4. The lieutenant said:<sup>1</sup> "You see the battle line of the barbarians. They are prepared both for death and for victory. Surely you don't fear them, soldiers! You are brave, are you not? You are Romans, are you not? Will you fight bravely for the Roman name? Are you not fighting with a sure hope of victory? Is not the cavalry prepared for battle? Haven't we a large supply of arms and darts? What do you fear? Do you fear death? But men who are eager for glory are always prepared for either death

---

<sup>1</sup> *said: inquit* (after first words of quotation).

or victory. We are Romans; they are barbarians and Gauls. Barbarians will not conquer a Roman legion, will they? Is not Caesar our leader? Do not the barbarians also praise Caesar, do they not fear him? They will fight without a sure hope of victory. They will not withstand your attack. They will yield. They will be routed. Your victory will be the glory of the Roman Senate and People."

## EXERCISE 285

[Review]

1. Give the complete rule for purpose clauses.
2. Give the rule of agreement for relative pronouns.

## 3. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

Who are you?To whom did you give the sword?What did you see?Whose towns did he burn?

In these sentences *who*, *whom*, *what*, *whose* are INTERROGATIVES because they introduce a question. (**Interrogō** in Latin means *I ask, I question*.)

*Who*, *whom*, *what*, *whose* are PRONOUNS because they take the place of the person or thing to which they refer. They do not DIRECTLY modify a noun.

The Latin interrogative pronoun is **QUIS, QUID**, *who, what*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the declension of *quis, quid* in GRAMMAR, No. 140.

Study the translations of the examples given above:

**Quis** es?**Cui** gladium dedisti?**Quid** vidisti?**Quorū** oppida incendit?

## VOCABULARY

quis, quid

{ who?  
what?

ostendo, ostendere, ostendi, ostentus, 3, tr.

show

trāduco, traducere, traduxi, trāductus, 3, tr.; two

lead across

accs. or acc. and trans w. acc.

clam, adv.

secretly

socius, i

ally

## NOTE

With trāduco the thing OVER WHICH the direct object is led, is put either (1) in the accusative, or (2) with trans in the accusative.

Exercitum flumē traduxit.

Exercitum trans flumē traduxit.

He led the army across the river.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORD

A society of nations.

AMICUS CERTUS IN RE INCERTA<sup>1</sup> CERNITUR.

—Ennius

## EXERCISE 286

[Essential]

Translate:

1. Quibuscum pugnavit Caesar ? 2. Cui Galli obsides dederunt ?  
3. Qui erant Caesaris socii? 4. Legio se barbaris non ostendit ut  
dam in castra perveniret. 5. Quis plurimum apud Americanos  
nunc valet? 6. Quis exercitum flumen traduxit? 7. Quis exerci-  
tum trans montes altos et flumina lata traduxit ut in Italia cum  
Romanis bellum gereret? 8. Quis legem sanctam et lucem veri-  
tatis nobis dedit ? 9. Cui castra nostra ostendisti ?

<sup>1</sup> incertus, a, um: uncertain, dubious.



WASHINGTONIUS EXERCITUM TRANS FLUMEN TRADUCIT.

#### EXERCISE 287

##### *Translate:*

(When the English may be either singular or plural  
translate both ways in Latin.)

1. To whom did you give the reward? 2. With whom were you? 3. Whom did you see? 4. Whose courage do you praise? 5. What do you seek? 6. What (things) did you hear? 7. What did he show you? 8. Who came secretly into the camp? 9. Who are your allies? 10. For what are you prepared? 11. To whom did you send help?

#### EXERCISE 288

[Honor Work]

##### *Translate:*

Washington,<sup>1</sup> a brave and noble man whose courage we all keep in memory, was the American general in our first war. He

---

<sup>1</sup> *Washington: Washingtonius, i.*

led the troops across the river Delaware<sup>1</sup> to conquer the Germans<sup>2</sup> who were in the British<sup>3</sup> army. It was night. The soldiers were neither seen nor heard by the enemy. Thus he swiftly and easily conquered the enemy. We shall all praise Washington's<sup>4</sup> plan and courage, shall we not ?

*Answer in Latin:*

1. Quis fuit Washingtonius ?
2. Qui eum laudant?
3. Quibuscum bellum gessit?
4. Cernebanturne ejus milites ab hostibus ?
5. Quid vicit Washingtonius ?

**EXERCISE 289**

[Review]

1. Give the rule for agreement of relative pronouns.
2. When is *quo* used to introduce a purpose clause?
3. Give the rule for the ablative of means.

**4. THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE**

*Which men did you see?*

*Quid virds vldisti?*

*Quid* here modifies and agrees with *virds*. It is used, therefore, as an ADJECTIVE and not as a pronoun. It is an INTERROGATIVE because it introduces a question.

The INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE in Latin is declined exactly like the relative pronoun.

But in the NOMINATIVE MASCULINE SINGULAR *quis* is generally used as an adjective for *which* or *what*, *qui* for *what sort of*, *what kind of*.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Delaware*: Delawarenſe, Delawarenſis.

<sup>2</sup> *Germans*: Germani!, Germanidrum.

<sup>3</sup> *British*: Britannicus, a, um.

<sup>4</sup> *Washington*: Washingtonius, I.



## VOCABULARY

qui, quae, quod

{ which?  
what?

## REVIEW VOCABULARY

voco, I, tr.; two accs.

call

appello, I, tr.; two accs.

{ call  
call upon  
address

ostendo, ostendere, ostendi, ostentus, 3, tr.

show

nomen, nominis

name

## IDIOM STUDY

Verbs of calling, naming, making, showing, etc., may take two accusatives, one of the direct object, the other a predicate accusative.

Te amicum voco.

*I call you friend.*

(Ego)	vocō	tē	/ amicum
-------	------	----	----------

Caesarem imperatorem appellaverunt.

*They called Caesar general.*

But when nomen is used, nomen is in the ablative.

Caesarem nomine imperatoris appellaverunt.

*They called Caesar by the name of general.*

Caesar centuriones nomine appellavit.

*Caesar called upon the centurions by name.*

## EXERCISE 290

*Translate:*

1. With which allies? 2. With the army of which king? 3. On account of what wrongs? 4. In which towns? 5. In what camp?
6. Among which tribes? 7. Up to what river? 8. By what name did they call you? 9. What guards did he station? 10. What

man called Caesar king? 11. In what place did he pitch camp? 12. To what messenger did he give the letters? 13. To which envoys did he send the letters? 14. Christ called us brothers. 15. For what are arms useful? 16. Which town are we approaching? 17. What rivers are wide and deep? 18. What tribes are exchanging hostages? 19. To what town does the bridge stretch? 20. To what guard did he show himself? 21. To what king do they give thanks? 22. In what thing do they put hope?

## EXERCISE 291

[Essential]

## QUIZ ON AMERICAN HISTORY

Can you score 100% ?

1. Propter quas īnīurias nōs bellū cum Japonibus gessimus?
2. Quis nuntius quern omnēs memoriā tenemus per oppida contendit ut omnes adventum Britannorum exspectarent ?
3. Quis imperator Americanus trans flumen quod Delaware vocamus exercitum traduxit ut ad castra hostium clam perveniret ?
4. Cui genti<sup>1</sup> gratias Americani egimus propter auxilium quod in primo nostro bello ad nos misit ?
5. Quis dux copias nostras in Bataan deduxit quod diutius cum Japonibus pugnaret ?
6. In quo bello hostes urbem Washington incenderunt?
7. Quern ducem milites "Stonewall" appellaverunt ?
8. Qu! Galli prim! viderunt flumen quod Mississippi vocamus?

## EXERCISE 292

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Augustus primus imperator<sup>2</sup> Romanus fuit. Augustus autem non regem sed principem se vocavit, nam Romani nomen regis timuerunt.

---

<sup>1</sup> gens here means *nation*.

<sup>2</sup> imperator here means *emperor*.

2. Omnes American! Washingtonium "Patrem Patriae"<sup>1</sup> appellaverunt. Washingtonius enim civitatem nostram defendit atque conservavit sicut patres filios defendunt atque conservant.

3. Rex et imperator Germanorum se "Caesarem"<sup>2</sup> appellavit

*Answer in complete Latin sentences:*

1. Quō nōmine Augustus se vocavit?
2. Quō nōmine American! Washingtonium appellaverunt?
3. Quis rex "Caesarem" se appellavit?

READING NO. 18

A GALLIC CAPTIVE

A Gallic captive is brought before the *lēgātus* for questioning. The Roman camp is in the wilds of Belgium, a land of thick forests and fierce tribes. There have been rumors of rebellion against the Roman army of occupation. The *lēgātus* is leading a relief expedition and it is important for him to get full information concerning the enemy.

LEGATUS. Quis es? Unde venisti?

GALLUS (*with grim laugh*). Non cognovi.

LEGATUS. Ha! Non cognovisti!! Nonne tu Gallus es?

GALLUS. Non cognovi.

LEGATUS. Ubi sunt cōpiae vestrae? Qu! sunt soci! vestri?

GALLUS. Non cognovi.

LEGATUS. Tu ad mortem ducēris! Num ad mortem paratus es?

GALLUS. Ita. Ad mortem paratus sum. Ea quae petis non tibi ostendam. (*The legate summons the torturers. They torture the Gaul.*)

LEGATUS (*sarcastically*). Id diu sustinebis, nam ad mortem paratus es.

GALLUS. Eheu! Eheu! Eheu!<sup>8</sup>

LEGATUS. Quid? Num timēs? Nonne fortis es? Nonne ad

<sup>1</sup> pa tri a, ae: *country, fatherland*.

<sup>2</sup> The word *Kaiser* is a German form for Caesar.

<sup>8</sup> *eheu, eheu*: an interjection expressing grief or pain.

mortem parātus? (*The torturing stops; the Gaul lies exhausted on the ground.*)

LEGATUS. Itaque nunc ad mortem duceris.

GALLUS. Eheu! Eheu! Non! Non!

LEGATUS (*smiling*). Quid est? Num cognoviſti?

GALLUS. Cognovi.

LEGATUS. Quis plūrimum apud gentēs vestrās valet? Quern principem et ducem vocatiſ?

GALLUS. Ambiorigem<sup>1</sup> et Catuvulcum.<sup>2</sup>

LEGATUS. Qui sunt socii gentis tuae?

GALLUS. Omnes Galliae gentes atque Germani.

LEGATUS. Germani!!

GALLUS. Ita est! Cōpiās trāns flūmen Rhēnum trādūcunt et celeriter in fines nostros perveniunt.

LEGATUS. Ubi nunc sunt copiae vestrae?

GALLUS. In silvis ad flumēn castra posuerunt.

LEGATUS. Num cōpiam frūmenti habent? Omnia frūmenta quae in agris erant incendimus atque magna cōpia in hiberna portāta est.

GALLUS. Ita. Magnam cōpiam habent. Socii inter se obsidēs dedērunt et ad nōs frūmentum misērunt. Habent etiam cōpiam armdrum et tēlōrum. Nam expugnāvimus hiberna Rōmāna quae in finibus nostris posita erant.

LEGATUS. Quid? Num hiberna Rōmāna expugnāvistis? Quae castra? Num castra Romāna expugnāvistis?

GALLUS. Expugnāvimus. Magna fuit caedes.

LEGATUS. Per dedis immortāles!<sup>3</sup> Propter injuriās agrōs vestrōs vastābimus; oppida incendēmus; mātres et patres et pueros occidēmus!

GALLUS. Militeſ nostri etiam ad bellum parāti sunt. Eds nōn vincētis.

<sup>1</sup> Ambiorix, Ambiorigis: *Ambiorix*.

<sup>2</sup> Catuvulcus, i: *Catuvulcus*.

<sup>3</sup> per deōs immortāles: *by the immortal gods*.

LEGATUS. Cūr hiberna expugnāvistis ? Nōne pāx et amicitia fuit inter gentes vestras et Populum Romānūm?

GALLUS. Ita, sed Rōmānōs timēmus. Semper frūmentum petunt; arma petunt; servoſ petunt; obsideſ petunt. Imperii et belli semper sunt cupidi. Vitās nostrās et civitatēs nostrās liberās dēfendimus.

LEGATUS (*angrily*). Quod in fidē cum Populō Rōmānō nōn mānsistis, vōs omnēs occidēmini! Et tu (*he shakes his finger at the prostrate Gaul*) primus ad mortem dūcēris. (*He addresses the guards.*) Statim ad mortem!

### EXERCISE 293

[Review]

1. Give the complete rule for purpose clauses.
2. Give the rule for the ablative of means.
3. Translate, and explain the translation of the italicized phrases:
  - a. He sent help *to the first battle line*.
  - b. They handed over their arms *to the enemy*.

## LESSON 26: THE PERFECT SYSTEM ACTIVE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

### 1. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of all LATIN VERBS, regular and irregular, are formed in the same way.

- |                          |   |  |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| 1. Find the perfect stem | { | <b>laudāv-</b><br><b>monu-</b><br><b>mis-</b><br><b>audiv-</b><br><b>fu-</b> |
|--------------------------|---|--|

2. Add the endings shown in GRAMMAR, NOS. 200-207.

### VOCABULARY

**incolō, incolere, incolul, 3, tr.**

**{ inhabit  
dwell in**

**cōnsisto, cōnsistere, constiti, 3, intr.**

**{ halt  
take a position**

### EXERCISE 294

1. *Give the perfect stem;*
2. *Give the third person, singular and plural, of the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive:*

- |               |                 |              |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. pervenid   | 7. pertineo     | 13. incolō   |
| 2. retineo    | 8. agō          | 14. compleō  |
| 3. administro | 9. cēdō         | 15. contineō |
| 4. venid      | 10. cōnfirmd    | 16. contendō |
| 5. moneō      | 11. cōnsisto    | 17. instruo  |
| 6. pellō      | 12. appropinquo | 18. comparō  |

## EXERCISE 295

*What forms are these?*

- |                  |                       |                  |
|------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. fuisset       | 9. cognōvisset        | 17. constitis̄se |
| 2. cognōverit    | 10. exspectaverit     | 18. cesseris     |
| 3. incoluisset   | 11. pervēnis̄set      | 19. audiveritis  |
| 4. miserim       | 12. dedūx̄isset       | 20. monuissent   |
| 5. expugnāvisset | 13. cōnstitis̄set     | 21. pervēnerit   |
| 6. laudāverit    | 14. vastāvissent      | 22. ēgissent     |
| 7. cōnstitērint  | 15. appropinquāvisset | 23. Instrūxissem |
| 8. vicerint      | 16. incoluerint       | 24. misissēmus   |

## 2. INDIRECT QUESTIONS; PRIMARY SEQUENCE

As we have seen, a question asked directly is called a DIRECT QUESTION.

**Estne Deus bonus? Is God good?**

**Valeāsne? Are you well?**

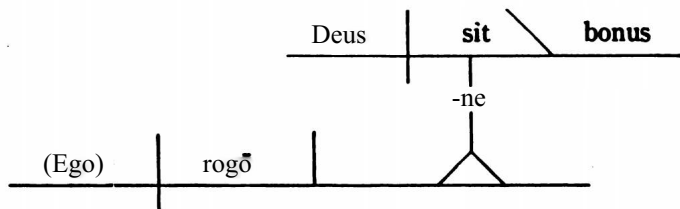
When a question, however, DEPENDS on a verb of ASKING, SAYING, THINKING, and the like, it is called an INDIRECT QUESTION.

**Rogō sitne Deus bonus. I ask whether God is good.**

**Rogō valeāsne. I ask whether you are well.**

Sitne Deus bonus and valeāsne are INDIRECT QUESTIONS because they depend on the verb rogo.

Indirect questions are NOUN CLAUSES because they are used as the OBJECT of a verb (rogo).



Indirect questions may be introduced by the same adverbs, adjectives, pronouns, and particles as direct questions, but:

-**Ne** and **num** in indirect questions mean *whether (if)*.

**Nōne** is seldom used.

**Qui** is sometimes used for *quis*.

*He asks whether Caesar conquered the Gauls.*

**Rogat num Caesar Gallos vicerit.**

*He asks who Caesar was.*

**Rogat quis Caesar fuerit.**

*He asks where, we are.*

**Rogat ubi simus.**

The TENSE in indirect questions is determined by the rule:  
TENSE BY SEQUENCE.

<p><b>THE MOOD IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS IS ALWAYS SUBJUNCTIVE.</b></p>
---

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the general rule, GRAMMAR, NOS. 524-526.

**IN PRIMARY SEQUENCE:**

1. Use the PRESENT subjunctive when the action of the verb in the indirect question happens AT THE SAME TIME as the action of the main verb.

*Caesar asks whether the soldiers are fighting.*

**Caesar rogat num milites pugnent.**

2. Use the PERFECT subjunctive when the action of the verb in the indirect question happens BEFORE the action of the main verb.

*Caesar asks whether the soldiers were fighting (fought).*

**Caesar rogat num milites pugnaverint.**



## VOCABULARY

rogō, I, tr.

ask

quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quāē situs, 3, tr. 1

fseek

ask

quantus, a, um, interrogative adj.

how large?

how great?

munīfio, munitionis

fortification

genus, generis, n.

fond

race

aqua, ae

water

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The prisoner of war was *interrogated*. He was asked many *questions*. Modern wars require a great *quantity* of *munitions*. What is the *genus* of this tree? The Romans built many long *aqueducts*. *Aquatic* sports are much in favor at the Florida beaches. *Rogation* days.

## RELATED LATIN WORD

## Mūni 6

Alcohol is called

AQUA VITAE.

## EXERCISE 296

1. Point out the indirect question;
2. Point out the introductory word;
3. Explain the mood and tense in the indirect question;
4. Diagram Sentences 1 and 5;
5. Translate:

1. Rogat num cōpiam aquae habēamus. 2. Rogat num Caesar Gallōs vicerit. 3. Quaeret ubi hostēs cōstitierint. 4. Quaeret ubi cōpia aquae sit. 5. Rogat quis imperator sit. 6. Quaerit quos

Caesar vicerit. 7. Rogābit valeantne milites. 8. Quaeret viceritne Caesar barbards. 9. Rogat quae genera hominum Americam incolant. 10. Quaerit quae genera hominum Galliam turn incoluerint. 11. Quaeret quantās mūnitiōnēs hostēs parāverint. 12. Rogābit quae mūnitiōnum genera nōs parēmus. 13. Rogat quae gentēs Galliam incolant. 14. Quaerit quae gentēs prōvinciam incoluerint.

## EXERCISE 297

[Imitation]

*Imitate the word order and structure of the model in translating:*

**MODEL: Rogo quos milites viderit.**

*I ask what soldiers he saw,*

1. I ask what hostages he killed. 2. I ask what general he praised. 3. I ask what plans he has learned. 4. I ask what hills he has occupied.

**MODEL: Rogat ubi milites sūt.**

*He asks where the soldiers are.*

1. I ask where the general is. 2. I ask where the enemy is. 3. I ask where the fortifications are. 4. I ask where the winter quarters are.

## EXERCISE 298

[Review]

1. Translate, and explain the translation of the italicized phrases :

- a. They sent letters *to the Senate*.
- b. They gave rewards *to the slave*.

2. Give the rule for the agreement of relative pronouns.

3. Translate; parse **ad** and **pugnātum est**: Ad flūmen diū pugnātum est.

4. Give the complete rule for purpose clauses.

## READING NO. 19

[Essential]

## WAR INFORMATION

It is of vital importance for a general to have the fullest possible information about the enemy before committing his troops to battle. Many military disasters have been due to ignorance either of the enemy's force and disposition or of the detail of the battleground. When the Battle of Gettysburg opened, Lee's scouts were away on a foraging expedition. The Union army was therefore able to reconnoiter and seize the most strategic points on the field and fight the action from chosen positions. Lee's army was terribly defeated.

Today every resource is used to discover vital war information. Hitler's invasion of Poland was backed by scientific study of every pertinent detail. Even the weather conditions had been calculated. During the years preceding the invasion of Europe in World War II, Allied experts studied the minutest detail of the invasion coast of Fortress Europe. Planes, spies, maps, scientists, travelers, refugees—all were used to place before the general staff the fullest possible information.

Military experts have always recognized the importance of such information. Caesar, too, though he lacked maps of modern technical excellence, as well as planes and swift-moving scouting cars, made extensive inquiries before launching a campaign. There were Roman spies, Gallic refugees, merchants—all of whom he consulted. The Roman army sent out cavalry and special scouts (*explorātōres*) to study the terrain (*indūrā loci*) and the disposition of the opposing forces.

What then would a general wish to know?

Ante<sup>1</sup> proelium imperator legatōs et tribunos militum in concilium vocat. In concilio quaerit quantum numerum et equitum et militum hostēs habeant, ubi castra hostium sint, quantās paraverint munitiōnes; num copiam aquae et frumenti habeant; quantam armorum copiam habeant. Quaerit etiam quae sint por-

---

<sup>1</sup> ante, *prep. w. acc.: before.*



CONCILIIUM

tūs et flūmina et montēs in  
hostium finibus; quae genera  
hominum eās partēs incolant;  
num omnia quae ad bellum  
pertinent parāverint; num  
fortēs sint et cupidi belli  
glōriae; num ācriter pugnent;  
quds ducēs habeant, num  
boni sint. Ante<sup>1</sup> proelia im-  
perātor equitēs mittit qui  
natūram loci expldrent et  
cognōscant ubi hostēs cōsti-  
terint. Cognōscit num aciem  
instruērint; num ad proeli-  
um sint paratī.

Ita Caesar et omnēs magni ducēs saepe hostēs superāverunt  
quod omnia quae ad proelium pertinent cognoverant.

### 3. SECONDARY SEQUENCE

We have seen that the MOOD in indirect questions is always subjunctive and that the TENSE is determined by the rule: TENSE BY SEQUENCE. Review the general rule, GRAMMAR, Nos. 524-526.

#### IN SECONDARY SEQUENCE:

1. Use the IMPERFECT subjunctive when the action of the verb in the indirect question happens AT THE SAME TIME as the action of the main verb.

**Caesar rogāvit num milites pugnarent.**

*Caesar asked whether the soldiers were fighting.*<sup>2</sup>

2. Use the PLUPERFECT subjunctive when the action of

<sup>1</sup> ante, prep. w. acc.: before.

the verb in the indirect question happens BEFORE the action of the main verb.

**Caesar rogāvit num militeſ pugnāvissent.**

*Caesar asked whether the soldiers had fought.*

#### VOCABULARY

cōgō, cōgere, cōēgi, cōāctus, 3, tr.	[ collect [force
vērus, a, um	true
inquit	he says   he said

#### NOTE

**Inquit** is always used with DIRECT quotations; that is, with quotations enclosed in QUOTATION MARKS:

**Christus, "Vos," inquit, "fratres estis."**

*Christ said, "You are brothers."*

This is a *direct* quotation because it contains the EXACT words used by Christ and is therefore enclosed in quotation marks. Notice that *inquit* does NOT stand before the quotation but is ALWAYS put after one or several words of the quotation.

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *cogent* argument. The eternal *verities*. A *veracious* witness. We cannot question the *veracity* of St. John.

#### RELATED LATIN WORDS

**Veritas**, ago.

#### EXERCISE 299

[Secondary Sequence]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the tense of the italicized words:*
  1. Legatus quaesivit quantam aquae cōpiam militeſ *haberent*.
  2. Legatus quaesivit ubi hostes *constitissent*.
  3. Barbari quaesi-

vērunt quantam militum cōpiam Rōmāni cōegissent. 4. Barbari quaesiverunt ubi Rōmāni castra posuissent. 5. Quaesiverat quae esset nātūra montis. 6. Quaesiverat quantum obsidum numerum lēgātus coegisset. 7. Quaerebat qūi portus essent in eis locis. 8. Quaerebant num hosēs colles occupavissent. 9. Rōmānus, “Quaerō,” inquit, “num Deus vester sit Deus verus.”

## EXERCISE 300

*Imitate the word order and structure of the model  
in translating:*

**MODEL: Genturio quaerebat num cōpia frūmenti in castris esset.**

*The centurion was asking whether there was a supply  
of grain in the camp.*

1. The military tribune was asking whether there was an abundance of water in the winter quarters. 2. The lieutenant was asking whether there was a bridge on the river. 3. The barbarians were asking whether there were soldiers in the forest.

**MODEL: Lēgātus quaesivit ubi Galli cōstitissent.**

*The lieutenant asked where the Gauls had taken up  
a position.*

1. The leader asked where the enemy had stationed the guards. 2. Caesar asked where the Gauls had prepared fortifications. 3. The barbarians asked where Caesar had drawn up the troops.

## EXERCISE 301

[Essential]

1. Translate;
2. Parse the italicized words:

1. Lēgātus, “Quaerō,” inquit, “qui sint socii vestri.” 2. Tribūnus militum quaesivit quae hominū genera loca incolerent. 3. Rōmāni magnas munifidnes pāraverunt quo facilius hostes

pellerent. 4. Barbari impetum in agmen fecerunt ne milites cer-  
 tum ordinem servarent. 5. Quaerit num Caesar plurimum apud  
 Romanos valuerit. 6. Quaerit num amicus verus atque certus  
 facile cernitur. 7. Nonne Christian! Christum nomine regis ap-  
 pellant? 8. Quaero num Christum regem atque Dominum vocetis.  
 9. Rogavit quo principes convenissent. 10. Diu atque acriter  
 pugnatum est in loco angusto et difficili ne hostes agmen flumen  
 traderent. 11. Legatum misit qui obsides clam ad castra deduce-  
 ret. 12. Dux rogavit quantam copiam aquae frumentique servi  
 in hiberna portavissent. 13. Eques duellum ostendit ubi copiae  
 hostium ednstitissent. 14. Quo principes copias coegerunt?  
 15. Ei custodes occiderunt et usque ad castra nostra appropinqua-  
 verunt. 16. Romani collem validum fossaque muniverunt quod diutius  
 copias hostium sustinerent. 17. Quaerit cum gentes barbarae  
 obsides inter se dederint. 18. Dux equitem celeriter misit qui  
 auxilium peteret. 19. Imperator quaesivit num tribuni militum  
 omnia comparavissent. 20. Rogat unde equitatus contenderit.

## EXERCISE 302

[Essential]

Translate:

1. I asked where the enemy was. 2. They asked whether the  
 chief led the barbarians across the river. 3. They asked whom  
 we called king and emperor. 4. We asked what chief was influen-  
 tial among them. 5. We asked where the barbarians had taken  
 up a stand.<sup>1</sup> 6. They ask what races of men inhabit Gaul now.  
 7. We ask what kinds of arms they have. 8. The lieutenant asked  
 how great fortifications they had prepared. 9. We asked why  
 they were fighting without a sure hope. 10. We asked where  
 they had led the allies. 11. He asked whence they had come.  
 12. They had secretly collected the hostages into a safe place.  
 13. He asked whether they had seen the column of the enemy.  
 14. He said, "Aren't you a brave and sure friend?" 15. He ad-

---

<sup>1</sup> take up a stand - take a position.

dressed the centurions by name, that they might fight longer.

16. He asked where there was an abundance of water.

### EXERCISE 303

[Formal Review of Unit Seven]

1. How may direct questions be introduced in Latin? What mood is used?
2. What is the difference between *ubi* and *quo* ?
3. What is the difference between *-ne*, *num*, and *nōne*? Give Latin examples of each, and translate the examples of *num* and *nōne* several ways into English.
4. Decline the interrogative pronoun. Why is it a pronoun?
5. Decline the interrogative adjective *qui*.
6. When is *quis* used as an adjective?
7. Is *qui* ever used for *quis* ?
8. What construction do verbs of TRANSPORTING take?
9. What construction do verbs of CALLING, *etc.*, take?
10. What are the endings of the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active? What stem is used?
11. What are indirect questions?
12. What mood is used in indirect questions? How are they introduced ?
13. Can *-ne*, *nōne*, and *num* be used in indirect questions?
14. Is *qui* ever used for *quis* in indirect questions?
15. Give the rules for sequence.
16. What does *inquit* mean and how is it used ?
17. Give Latin examples illustrating the use of each subjunctive tense in an indirect question.

### READING NO. 20

#### BATAAN!

Vos omnes cognovistis quāntās cōpias nostri milītes in Bataan<sup>1</sup> diu sustinuisse. Japones enim magnum et fortem impetum in

---

<sup>1</sup> Bataan, *indecl. noun: Bataan*.





MUITES AMERICANI FORTITER PUGNANT.

insulās<sup>1</sup> Philippines<sup>2</sup> fecerunt. Omnia armdrum et telōrum genera quae nunc ad bellum ūtilia sunt habebant. Etiam magnum numerum omnium generum militum in insulās<sup>1</sup> traduxerant. Quaesiverant qui portūs, quae loci nātūra, quae flūmina essent. Omnia quae ad bellum pertinēbant cognoverant. Itaque dux noster, vir magnus et fortis, omnēs cōpiās nostrās in loca difficilia et angusta quae Bataan vocant dēdūxit quō diūtius impetum hostium sustinēret. Mūnitiōnēs celeriter parāvit; custōdēs collocāvit; milites instrūxit; impetūs hostium exspectāvit. Undique nostri ab hostibus et loci nātūrā continēbantur neque erant multi milites Americāni in Bataan; tamen diu et ācriter ibi pugnatum est. Nam nostri fortēs erant et glōriae nōminis Americāni cupidi erant. Multōs impetūs fortiter sustinuerunt; saepe hostes post magnam caedem pepulērunt.

Interim cognōvimus quanto in periculō nostrae legiōnēs essent et quārebāmus cūr ducēs nostri magnam armdrum et militum cōpiam nōn mitterent. Ei tamen omnia pericula cognōverant. Itaque auxilia nōn miserūt ne hōstes eā occiderent.

<sup>1</sup> insula, ae: *island*.

<sup>2</sup> Philippinus, a, um: *Philippine*.

Tandem<sup>1</sup> nostri, propter magnum hostium numerum, non diutius sustinuerunt. Itaque hostibus se dedērunt atque arma tradiderunt. Dux autem noster, "The President," inquit, "of the United States ordered me to break through the Japanese lines and proceed from Corregidor to Australia for the purpose, as I understand it, of organizing the American offensive against Japan. A primary purpose of this is the relief of the Philippines. I came through and I shall return."

Nonne virtutem militum fortium semper laudabimus atque memoriam tenebimus? Gloria enim edrum gloria nostra est.

---

<sup>1</sup> tandem, *adv.: finally.*

## UNIT EIGHT

### LESSON 27: THE VOCATIVE; IMPERATIVE MOOD

#### 1. THE VOCATIVE

*You, O Lord, I praise.*

*We shall not help you, Caesar!*

In these sentences *O Lord* and *Caesar*:

1. Show the PERSON ADDRESSED OR SPOKEN TO.
2. Are therefore in the VOCATIVE case—the case of the PERSON ADDRESSED.
3. Are set off by commas because they are independent of the grammar of the rest of the sentence.

**Tē, Ō Domine, laudo.**

**Tē, Caesar, noñ adjuvābimus.**

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the rule for the formation of the vocative, GRAMMAR, NO. 28.

#### VOCABULARY

**avē!** *interjection*

*hail!*

**mora, ae**

*delay*

**doceō, docēre, docui, doctus, 2, tr.**

{ *teach*  
*inform*

**tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublatūs, 3, tr.**

{ *raise (up)*  
*take away*

**peccātum, I**

{ *mistake*  
*sin* (in Christian Latin)

## NOTE

Docet takes two accusatives when it means *teach someone, something*.

**Christus nōs viam salutis docet.**

*Christ teaches us the way of salvation.*

However, docet can also be used with other constructions:

**Gustōs Caesarem docuit ubi hostēs essent. (Indirect question.)**

*The guard informed Caesar where the enemy was.*

**Lēgātus eum dē omnibus rēbus docuit. (Dē w. abl.)**

*The lieutenant informed him about all the things (the whole matter).*

**RULE OF POSITION: THE VOCATIVE IN LATIN  
GENERALLY DOES NOT STAND FIRST  
IN THE SENTENCE.**

## EXERCISE 304

*Give the vocative, singular and plural, for the following:*

- |                          |                           |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. dux                   | 12. eques                 | 23. māter           |
| 2. lēgātus               | 13. Christus <sup>1</sup> | 24. puer            |
| 3. nuntius               | 14. frāter                | 25. Gallus          |
| 4. custōs                | 15. Christianus           | 26. senātus         |
| 5. Spiritus <sup>1</sup> | 16. miles                 | 27. rēx magnus      |
| 6. barbarus              | 17. Rōmānus               | 28. amicus bonus    |
| 7. socius                | 18. tribūnus militum      | 29. frāter meus     |
| 8. Maria <sup>1</sup>    | 19. vir                   | 30. dominus nobilis |
| 9. Jēsūs <sup>1</sup>    | 20. homō                  | 31. vir liber       |
| 10. centurid             | 21. dominus               | 32. miles fortis    |
| 11. amicus               | 22. filius                | 33. filius meus     |

---

<sup>1</sup> Give the singular only.

## EXERCISE 305

*Translate:*

1. Nonne gr̃atiās agēmus, fr̃atrēs mei, Dominō nostrō Jēsu Christo, qui peccata m̃undi sustulit et nos veritatē dōcuit?
2. Avē, Caesar! Docebo tē ubi hōstes castra posuerint.
3. Vos, milites, sine morā pontem occupābitis nē barbari eum occupent.
4. Te, Fili Dei, laudāmus.
5. Centurid, "Hostes, legāte," inquit, "magnum clamōrem sustulerunt et se nōbis sine morā dedērunt."
6. In te, O bone Jēsu, est spēs omnium.
7. Hostēs, rēx magne, virtūte et armis vicimus.
8. Tibi, Deus, gr̃atiās agō; tē, Deus, laudd; in tē, O Deus, est omnis spēs mea.
9. Tū, Domine, servābis nōs. (*From the Roman Breviary.*)
10. Avē, Caesar, imperātor et rēx noster es!
11. Avē, Jēsu Christe, qui pro nōbis multos laborēs atque mortem miseram sustinuisti.

## EXERCISE 306

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. O good Jesus, in You we place all our hope and faith.
2. Thou, O God, hast taught us Thy ways.
3. My son, God will always defend you.
4. Soldiers, without delay we shall occupy the bridges and the hills.
5. O noble king, we have come to seek peace.
6. Hail, Mary!
7. The enemy raised up a shout on all sides to terrify us.
8. Hail, Caesar! To you do we all give thanks, for you have spared our lives.
9. Soldiers, we are held in on all sides by the enemy, who is eager for victory and glory.
10. General, I shall inform you where the enemy has pitched camp in order that you may attack it.

## EXERCISE 307

[Review]

1. How are -ne, num, and nōne used (1) in direct questions? (2) in indirect questions?
2. What is the difference between ubi and quo?

## 2. PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

The imperative mood is used in giving commands.

*Praise God! Laudā Deum!*

(Singular; addressed to ONE person.)

*Fight bravely! Pugnate fortiter!*

(Plural; addressed to MORE THAN ONE.)

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 208, 216-218. Note that the imperative is formed on the PRESENT STEM, that it has a SINGULAR and a PLURAL form.

**RULE OF POSITION; THE IMPERATIVE MORE  
FREQUENTLY STANDS FIRST IN  
THE SENTENCE.**

## VOCABULARY

regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus, 3, tr.	{direct
at, conj.	{rule
mēns, mentis	but
dolor, doldris	mind
miserēre nōbis	pain
adōrō, 1, tr.	j sorrow
	have mercy on us
	adore

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Congress *regulates* interstate commerce. A *regent* was appointed to govern for the boy king. Education produces *mental* habits. *Dolorous*.

## RELATED LATIN WORDS

**Miser; ōrd; reŕ.**

## EXERCISE 308

*Translate:*

1. Praise God, Christians! 2. Help me! 3. Hold the hill, soldiers! 4. Slaves, prepare grain. 5. Hand over your arms.
6. Terrify the soldiers. 7. Wage war, O king. 8. Take away our sins. 9. Storm the town. 10. Fear God. 11. Seek help. 12. Carry the sword, slave. 13. Hear the leader. 14. Dismiss the chiefs. 15. Call upon God. 16. Wait for help.

**MOMENTS AT MASS NO. 2**

When the priest turns to the people at the Communion, he holds a host above the chalice and says:

**Ecce<sup>1</sup> Agnus<sup>2</sup> Del, Ecce<sup>1</sup> qui tollit peccatā mundi!**

## EXERCISE 309

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Rege, Domine, mētes nostras ut in Caelum contendamus.
2. Tolle, Domine, peccata nostra, tolle dolores nostros! 3. Instrue, lēgāte, milites pro portā at equites mitte in silvas. 4. Deus, qui omnem mundum regis, rege etiam mentem et corpus meum.
5. Jēsu, qui dolores graves pro nobis sustinuisti, miserere nobis!
6. Adjuva nos, Domine, ne hostis nos superet. 7. Defendite, lēgati, agros nostros! 8. Ostende nobis, serve, ubi hostes sint.
9. Sancta Maria, ora pro nobis. 10. Adorate, Christiani, Deum vestrum. 11. Doce me, Domine, vias tuas ut gratiam tuam semper habeam. 12. Time Deum, Regem Caeli et terrae, Christiani!! 13. Voca, lēgāte, milites ad arma. 14. Colloca in primā acie legiones integras quae equites pellant. 15. Porta, serve, frumentum in castra ne inopia sit. 16. Incendite oppida, op-

<sup>1</sup> ecce: *behold*.

<sup>2</sup> agnus, i: *lamb*.

pugnate urbēs, pellite equitēs, occidite militēs, at vitās principum cōservate! 17. Gratias, fratres mei, Deō agite! 18. Christus autem nobis, "Habete," inquit, "pācem inter vōs." 19. "Timete Dominum, omnes sancti ejus." (*From the Roman Breviary.*) 20. Christus, "Date," inquit, "et dabitur vdbis." 21. Christus, "Petite," inquit, "et dabitur vdbis." 22. Mane nobiscum, Domine.

<b>AGE QUOD AGIS</b>
----------------------

**EXERCISE 310***Translate:*

1. Find out, lieutenant, what the plan of the enemy is.
2. Soldiers, wait for the arrival of Caesar lest the enemy conquer us.
3. Keep in memory the courage of our fathers.
4. Arrive, cavalry, at the bridge at dawn.
5. Lieutenant, lead away the legion.
6. Approach the enemy swiftly.
7. Soldiers, lay waste the fields of the barbarians. Burn their crops. Attack their towns. Kill their hostages. Seize their towns, hills, bridges!
8. Call Caesar king and general.
9. Address the centurions by name.
10. Be well.
11. Slave, show us where the enemy has stationed guards.
12. Centurion, lead the soldiers across the river and into the forest.
13. Ask the envoy why he has come.
14. Fight bravely for your king!
15. Inform us how large the army of the enemy is.
16. Raise up a shout and storm the city.
17. Guide, O Lord, my mind and my life.
18. Jesus Christ, have mercy on us.
19. Adore Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

**EXERCISE 311**

[Review]

*Explain the italicized words:*

1. Caesar *centuriones* *ndmine* appellavit.
2. Milites *Caesar* *em imperatorem* appellaverant.





**“VENITE AD ME.”**

**(Ita Christus omnēs hominēs ad se vocat.)**

#### READING NO. 21

#### A CHRISTIAN SERMON

Jēsūs Christus, sicut vōs, Christianī!, cognōvistis, est et Filius Dei et frāter noster. Propter nōs enim et propter nostram salūtem in mundum vēnit. Magnōs labōrēs et dolōrēs gravēs prō nōbis sustinuit. Mortem etiam miseram prō nōbis sustinuit. Deus est qui mundum regit, qui terram et caelum fecit;<sup>1</sup> attamen<sup>2</sup> ad mortem prō nōbis ductus est. Per ējus autem mortem vita atque salūs nōbis datae sunt. In mundum enim vēnit ut peccāta nostra misera tolleret.

Nōne eum, filii mei, laudabimūs atque adorabimūs? Nonne ei grātiās agebimūs? Nōne eum Dominum et Regem appellabimūs?

Spem vestram, O Christianī!, in eo ponite nē hostis vos per-

<sup>1</sup> fēcit: (he) made.

<sup>2</sup> When at and tamen are used together, they are written as one word.

turbet. Lēgem ējus s̄āctam cōservāte ut gr̄atiam Dei habeātis. Fidem servāte ut Deus mentēs vestrās regat et vōs viam salūtis doceat. Tenēte fortiter et semper vērītatem Christi, qui est lūx mundi. Ōrāte et gr̄atiam petite nē peccātum in vdbis sit. Adjuvāte omnēs fr̄atrēs vestrōs sicut fr̄ater noster, Christus, nōs adjūvit. Sustinēte, fr̄atrēs, sustinēte fortiter injuriās et dolōrēs ut similēs ei sitis qui mortem etiam prō vōbis fortiter sustinuit. Is enim per dōrdrem et mortem ad gl̄oriam pervēnit; nōs etiam per dōrdrem et mortem ad gl̄oriam pervenimūs.

Itaque, Christianī!, contendite in Caelum ut cum s̄āctis Dei, cum Jōsēphō et Mariā, Patrem et Filium et Spiritum S̄āctum laudētis in saecula saeculdrum. Amen.

### 3. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES AND EXHORTATIONS

1. Wishes. In *wishes* the present subjunctive in main clauses is to be translated by a verb with the auxiliary verb *may*. Utinam is often used as the sign of wishes in Latin; it need not be translated. The negative is *nē*. Notice that the compound verb (e. g., *may . . . give*) can be separated in English.

Deus det nobis pacē. May God give us Peace.

Utinam veniat. May he come.

Nē veniat. May he not come.

Adjuvet nōs Deus. May God help us.

2. Exhortations. In English we urge others to do something with us by using the auxiliary verb *let*, as "Let us give thanks." Latin uses the first person plural of the present subjunctive, called the HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE, for exhortations. In translating such verbs, use the English form *let us*.

Veniāmus. Let us come.

Gr̄atiās agāmus. Let us give thanks.

Fortiter pugnēmus. Let us fight bravely.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the rules, GRAMMAR, NOS. 511, 518. Review the present subjunctive of all four conjugations and of **sum**, GRAMMAR, NOS. 186, 194-196, 352.

**EXERCISE 312***Translate:*

1. Utinam veniat. 2. Pugnēmus. 3. Comparēmus arma. 4. Dēfendāmus pueros nostros. 5. Ne vincāt. 6. Expugnet urbem. 7. Teneant collem. 8. Convenīamus. 9. Incendāmus frūmenta. 10. Vincant! 11. Nē cēdāmus. 12. Nē eds occidat! 13. Mitāmus auxilium. 14. Ne exspectet.

**EXERCISE 313***Translate:*

1. May he fight bravely! 2. May they conquer the barbarians! 3. May God give us a reward! 4. Let us call the soldiers. 5. Let us pray. 6. May they fear God! 7. May they not hold the bridge! 8. Let us hasten and see the king. 9. Let us withstand the forces of the enemy. 10. May God defend us! 11. May Thy kingdom come! 12. May God lead us into the kingdom of heaven! 13. Let us not yield. 14. Let us send them help. 15. May Caesar conquer! 16. May they rout the barbarians! 17. Let us hear the speech of the chief. 18. May he be brave! 19. May Christ remain with us! 20. May God help us! 21. May God strengthen us! 22. May God preserve us! 23. Let us not wait for his coming. 24. Let us remember his courage. 25. May he arrive safe! 26. May they be well! 27. May you be well!

**EXERCISE 314***Translate:*

1. "Domine, exaudi<sup>1</sup> dratiōnem meam, et clāmor meus ad tē veniat." (*From the Mass.*) 2. "Deus autem pācis sit cum omnibus vōbis. Amen." (*St. Paul.*) 3. "Oremus." (*From the Mass.*)

---

<sup>1</sup> exaudiō, 4, tr.: hear.

4. "Divinum<sup>1</sup> auxilium maneat semper nōbiscum." (*From the Roman Breviary.*) 5. Regē<sup>2</sup> martyrum<sup>2</sup> \* Dominum, venite, adōrēmus. (*From the Roman Breviary.*) 6. Sāctus Paulus: "Ipse<sup>8</sup> autem," inquit, "Dominus pāds det vōbis pācem sempiternam<sup>4</sup> in omni loco." Dominus sit cum omnibus vobiſ.

## EXERCISE 315

*Identify these forms:*

- |           |            |               |
|-----------|------------|---------------|
| 1. veniam | 3. laudet  | 5. regat      |
| 2. vincet | 4. portent | 6. convenient |

## EXERCISE 316

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized forms:*

1. *Veniat* celeriter. 2. *Vincat* Christus Rēx! 3. *Valedmus.*  
 4. *Valeās.* 5. *Veniāmus.* 6. *Venite, addrēmus.* 7. *Videāmus* puerum. 8. *Valēte.* 9. *Nē* pugnēmus. 10. *Adjuvēmus* omnēs hominēs. 11. *Petāmus* grātiā Dei. 12. *Vocāte* militeſ ad arma. 13. *Regat* Christus mentes<sup>2</sup> nostras. 14. *Bonus sis.*

## READING NO. 22

## A SCENE FROM THE FIRST CHRISTMAS

SCENE : A country place in Judea. A group of country folk are gathered around a fire.

CHOIR (*softly in the distance*).

Adeste,<sup>5 6</sup> fidēſes,<sup>®</sup>

Laeti,<sup>7</sup> triumphantes,<sup>®</sup>

<sup>1</sup> divinus, a, urn: *divine*.

<sup>2</sup> martyr, martyris: *martyr*.

<sup>8</sup> Ipse • • Dominus: *the Lord Himself*.

<sup>4</sup> sempiternus, a, um: *everlasting*.

<sup>5</sup> adeste: *be present*.

<sup>6</sup> fidēſis, e: *faithful*.

<sup>7</sup> laetus, a, um: *joyful*.

<sup>8</sup> triumphantēs: *triumphant*.

Venite, venite in Bethlehem.  
 Nātum<sup>1</sup> videtē Regē Angelorū,<sup>2</sup>  
 Venite, adorēmus,  
 Venite, adorēmus,  
 Venite adorēmus Dominum.

*(Enter the shepherds. Their faces are transformed and their eyes shining. The country folk look at them and speak.)*

COUNTRY FOLK. Quas vocēs audimus ?

SHEPHERDS. Auditis vocēs angelorum.<sup>2</sup> Audite!

CHOIR *(strong and clear)*. Glōria in excelsis<sup>3</sup> Deō, et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae voluntatis!<sup>4</sup>

COUNTRY FOLK. Nonne timuistis?

SHEPHERDS. Non timuimus. Angel<sup>2</sup> enim Dei sunt et magnum nobis signum ostenderunt.

CHOIR *(softly)*. Natum<sup>1</sup> videte . . . to end.

COUNTRY FOLK. Quid ostenderunt? Dicite<sup>5</sup> nobis! Quid vidistis ?

SHEPHERDS. Exercitum angelorum<sup>2</sup> cum luce magna in caelis vidimus. Regem regum et principem pacis, Iesum Christum, puerum cum Mariā matre eius vidimus. Gloriam Filii Dei in terrā vidimus.

COUNTRY FOLK *(excitedly)*. Filius Dei! in terrā! Deus homō? Cūr venit Deus in mundum ?

SHEPHERDS. Christus in mundō est ut peccata nostra tollat, ut vitam victoriamque nobis det, ut in Caelum nos miserds hominēs ducat. Glōria Deō sit! In nōmine Iesu Christi omnēs hominēs spem salutis et pacis ponent. Itaque nōmen eius laudemus et Deō grātiās agāmus. *(To audience.)* Et vōbis, amici nostri atque frātēs, sit Dei pax et gratiā!

<sup>1</sup> nātus, a, um: *born*.

<sup>2</sup> angel us, i: *angel*.

<sup>3</sup> in excelsis: *in the highest*.

<sup>4</sup> voluntās, voluntatis: *will*.

<sup>5</sup> dicite: *say, tell*.



EXERCITUM ANCELOREUM VIDIMUS.

CHOIR (*full and loud*).

Christus natus<sup>1</sup> est nobis;  
Christus datus est nobis;  
Hodie<sup>2</sup> venit Christus in mundum;  
Hodie<sup>2</sup> venit salus mundi.

(*The scene and the songs fade out together.*)

---

<sup>1</sup> natus, a, um: born.

<sup>2</sup> hodie, adv.: today.

## LESSON 28: *SUUS* AND *SUI*

### 1. *SUUS* AND *SUI* AS DIRECT REFLEXIVES

We have seen that *sui* (*sibi*, *sē*, *sē*) is used for *himself* (*him*), *herself* (*her*), *itself* (*it*), *themselves* (*them*), when these words refer TO THE SUBJECT OF THEIR OWN CLAUSE. When so used, *sui* is called a DIRECT REFLEXIVE.

*Se laudat.* *He praises himself.*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review the declension and meanings of ***sui***, GRAMMAR, NO. 127. See also the previous lesson on reflexives, page 135.

*Suus*, *a*, *um* is the POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE corresponding to *sui*. It is used to mean *his* (*his own*), *her* (*her own*), *its* (*its own*), *their* (*their own*), ACCORDING TO THE WORD TO WHICH IT REFERS. Since *suus*, *a*, *um* is an adjective, it agrees in gender, number, and case with the word which it MODIFIES. Like *sui*, *suus*, *a*, *um* is used to REFER TO THE SUBJECT OF ITS OWN CLAUSE (DIRECT REFLEXIVE).

Caesar *suos* *militēs laudavit.*

*Caesar praised his (own) soldiers.*

Māter filium *suum* *laudat.*

*A mother praises her (own) son.*

Legio signum *suum* *defendit.*

*The legion defends its (own) standard.*

Militēs imperatorem *suum* *laudant.*

*The soldiers praise their (own) general.*

When *his*, *her*, *its*, etc., do not refer to the subject of their own clause, *ejus* and *edrum* (the possessive genitives of *is*, *ea*, *id*) are to be used (EXCEPT IN SOME CASES TO BE SEEN IN THE NEXT SECTION).

Centurid fortiter pugnāvit. Itaque Caesar virtūtem eius laudāvit.  
*The centurion fought bravely. And so Caesar praised his courage.*

Caesar Gallos vicit atque eorum duces occidit.  
*Caesar conquered the Gauls and killed their leaders.*

## NOTE

Just as forms of ego, nos, tu, vos are used as reflexives of the first and second persons, so forms of metis, noster, tuus, vester are used as reflexives of the first and second persons.

Sui and suus are used for the THIRD PERSON ONLY.

*We defend our own lives.* Vitas nostras defendimur.

## VOCABULARY

suus, a, um	{ his (own) her (own) its (own) their (own)
fuga, ae	flight
dēdd, dedere, dedidi, deditus, 3, tr. <sup>1</sup>	{ give up surrender
rēs publica, rei publicae	{ state republic
diligō, diligere, dilexi, dilectus, 3, tr,	love

## NOTE

Where we say simply *surrender* in English, dēdd must always be used with an ACCUSATIVE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

*The Gauls surrendered to the Romans.* Galli Romanis se dēdiderunt.

*We surrendered to the Gauls.* Gallis nos dēdidimus. (Nos is accusative.)

Of course, dēdd may have other objects.

*We surrendered the arms to the enemy.* Arma hostibus dēdidimus.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A fugitive from justice. We shall always defend our republic.

<sup>1</sup> Dēdd always takes an object in Latin.



## RELATED LATIN WORD

Dō

## EXERCISE 317

*Distinguish:*

1. dedisti 2. dediisti 3. dediderunt 4. dederunt

## EXERCISE 318

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the use of the italicized words:*

1. Agros atque urbes *suds* defendebant. 2. Fortiter *se* defendunt. 3. Post Caesaris victoriam atque *sudrum* principum caedem, hostes *se* swaque omnia *ei* dediiderunt. 4. Barbari post equitum *sudrum* caedem fugā salutem petiverunt. 5. Nonne metres filids *suds* diligunt? 6. Barbari fugā montes petiverunt, at magnus *eorum* numerus in fuga ab equitibus Romanis occisus est. 7. Galli legatos ad Caesarem miserunt qui auxilium peterent. Itaque Caesar ad eos misit equites qui fines *eorum* defenderent. 8. Diligite, fratres mei, Deum. Deus enim pacem *suam* vobis dabit. 9. Laudavitne Caesar virtutem *sudrum*? 10. Etiam hostes saepe fortiter pugnaverunt. Itaque Caesar virtutem *eorum* laudavit. 11. Galli saepe equites ad Caesarem miserunt qui cum copiis *eius* pugnarent. 12. Legatus nuntium de periculo *suo* ad Caesarem misit. Itaque Caesar statim omnes copias *suds* in fines barbardrum clam et celeriter deduxit.

## EXERCISE 319

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Did the Romans often rout the barbarians and kill a great number of them? 2. The tribes of Gaul were exchanging hostages in order to strengthen peace and friendship among themselves. 3. Caesar stationed guards at the bridge in order that he might more easily defend his (men). 4. The lieutenant asked the slaves

where their master was. 5. They fought long and bitterly because they were fighting for their lives. 6. They fortified the camp with a ditch and a rampart in order to defend themselves more easily. 7. Caesar was a great general. The Romans always kept his victories and courage in memory. 8. The general called the centurions and the military tribunes to him. 9. We will defend our own cities and our own fields.

Chris tus nobis, "Sicut dilexit me Pater,"  
inquit, "et ego dilexi vos."

#### EXERCISE 320

[Review]

*Parse the italicized words:*

1. Lēgātus exercitum flumēn traduxit.
2. Lēgātus trañs flumēn exercitum traduxit.
3. Veniāmus ut Christum addremūs.

#### READING NO. 23

##### A ROMAN LIEUTENANT ADDRESSES HIS MEN

Quanto in periculō, milites, simus, vōs omnēs cognōvistis. In castris enim nostris est inopia frūmenti et omnium rerum. Undique autem ā barbaris continēmur. Quantus sit numerus hostium, vōs doceō; quanta autem sit eōrum virtūs, vōs vidētis. Nam hostēs populi Rōmāni usque ad castra Rōmāna appropinquant. Cupidi victōriae et belli glōriae neque equitēs neque legiōnēs nostrās timent. Litteras ad Caesarem misimus, at servus cui litteras dedimus ab hostibus visus est atque occisus. Itaque neque auxilium exspectāmus neque socios habemūs.

Itaque quid, milites Rōmāni, agēmus? Num pācem petēmus? Num ad hostēs lēgātōs mittēmus qui dē salūte nostrā agant? Num nos nostraque omnia hostibus populi Romanī trademūs?

Pōnite, milites, spem in virtute! Virtutem patrum nostrorum memoria tenete! Munite castra Impetus hostium sustinete! Copias hostium pellite, vincite, occidite! Pugnate usque ad mortem!

Imperator Romanus propter gloriam nominis Romani vos ad arma et mortem vocat!

## 2. SUUS AND SUI AS INDIRECT REFLEXIVES

When a personal pronoun of the THIRD person is in a SUBORDINATE PURPOSE clause or INDIRECT QUESTION and REFERS to the SUBJECT of the MAIN verb, sui and suus (not is, ea, id or ejus, eorum) should be used. In this use sui and suus are called INDIRECT reflexives.

Caesar milites vocavit qui se defendērent.

Caesar called the soldiers to defend him.

Caesar equites misit qui legatos suos defendērent.

Caesar sent the cavalry to defend his envoys.

### VOCABULARY

ante, prep, w, acc. before

praesidium, i	{ garrison
	{ Protection

vērō, postpositive <sup>1</sup>	{ in truth
	{ but

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Verily. Caesar's wars antedate the birth of Christ.

### IDIOM STUDY

1. Dō with in fugam means *put to flight*.

Caesar hōstes in fugam dedit. Caesar put the enemy to flight.

<sup>1</sup> Vērō is postpositive; i.e., it never stands first in a clause.

2. With proper names the ablative *nōmine*, by *name*, is frequently used. Translate *named*.

**Servus, *nōmine* Titus, in hibemis erat.**

*A slave named (by name) Titus was in the winter quarters.*

#### EXERCISE 321

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the use of the italicized pronouns;*
3. *Diagram No. 1 (first sentence):*

1. Centurid servum, *nōmine* Titum, ad Caesarem misit qui *eum* doceret quantō in periculō praesidia essent. Itaque Caesar statim exercitum *suum* dēduxit atque equitēs misit qui *eum* dē adventū *suo* docerent. 2. Galli, *verō*, oppida *sua* ante Caesaris adventum incenderunt nē praesidia in *eis* collocaret. 3. Lēgātus *eum* per nuntiōs ante proelium docuit quantō in periculō esset legid *sua*. 4. Rōmāni viās mūniverunt quō facilius cōpiās *suds* in prōvinciās dēdūcerent. 5. Caesar novās legidnēs in Galliam misit nē barbari *suds* superarent. 6. Barbari Rōmānōs proelid pepulērunt nē *el* per finēs *suds* exercitum dūcerent. 7. Galli praemia Caesari misērunt ut grātiām apud *eum* haberent. 8. Caesar, *verō*, militēs *suds* flumen tradūxit ut reliqua oppida expugnāret atque incenderet.

#### EXERCISE 322

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the translation of the italicized words:*

1. The American people heard in how great danger *their* soldiers were in Bataan.<sup>1</sup> But they did not send arms and reinforcements because Bataan was far distant from *their* territory.

2. Caesar sent reinforcements into the first battle line in order

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bataan: Bataan, indecl. noun.*

that they might help *his* legions. 3. They routed the barbarians lest they should burn *their* crops. 4. He showed them what *his* plans were. 5. Did Caesar give rewards to the slaves who were in *his* camp?

## EXERCISE 323

[Review]

*Parse the italicized words:*

1. Rogāvit *num* Christus in mundum *venis*set.
2. *Num* bellum atque caedem laudamūs?

## READING NO. 24

## THE HAIL MARY

A VĒ MARĪA

GRATIA PLĒNA

DOMINUS TĒCUM

BENEDICTA<sup>1</sup> TŪ IN MULIERIBUS<sup>2</sup>ET BENEDICTUS<sup>1</sup> FRŪCTUS<sup>3</sup> VENTRIS<sup>4</sup> TUI JĒSUS

SANCTA MARĪA

MATER DEI

ORA PRO NŌBĪS PECCATORĪBUS<sup>5</sup>NUNC ET IN HŌRA<sup>6</sup> MORTIS NOSTRAE. AMEN.

This beautiful prayer, which is known and loved by all Catholics, has its origin in the records of the New Testament. The first

---

<sup>1</sup> benedictus, a, um: *blessed*.

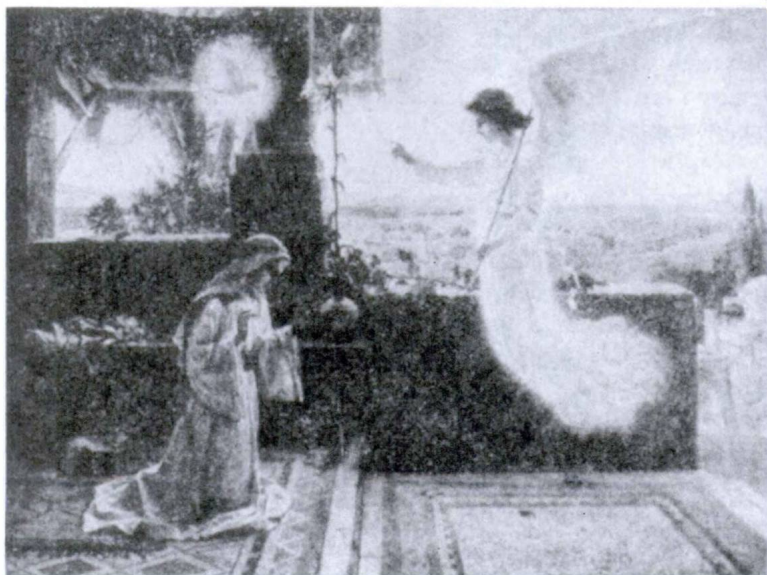
<sup>2</sup> mulier, mulieris: *woman*.

<sup>3</sup> frūctus, us: *fruit*.

<sup>4</sup> venter, ventris: *womb*.

<sup>5</sup> peccator, peccatoris: *sinner*.

<sup>6</sup> hōra, ae: *hour*.



AVE GRATIA PLENA

words were spoken to Mary by the Angel Gabriel; the second section contains the greeting of St. Elizabeth. The following account is simplified from St. Luke.

Missus est angelus<sup>1</sup> Gabriel ā Deō in civitātem Galilaeae cui nōmen [erat] Nazareth. Missus est ad Mariam. Maria autem drābat. Angelus<sup>1</sup> ei,

“AŪE GRĀTIA PLĒNA!”

inquit,

“DOMINUS TEĀCUM!”

BENEDICTA<sup>2</sup> TŪ IN MULIERIBUS!”<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> angelus, i: *angel*.

<sup>2</sup> benedictus, a, urn: *blessed*.

<sup>3</sup> mulier, mulieris: *woman*.

Mary was disturbed at the greeting, but the angel said:

"Do not be afraid, Mary, for thou hast found grace with God. The Holy Spirit shall come upon thee and the power of the Most High shall overshadow thee; and therefore the Holy One to be born shall be called the Son of God." Mary answered, "Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it done to me according to thy word."

Then Mary went into the hill country to visit her cousin Elizabeth. Elizabeth autem Mariae,

"BENEDICTA,"<sup>1</sup> inquit, "TU INTER MULIERĒS<sup>2</sup>  
ET BENEDICTUS<sup>1</sup> FRUCTUS<sup>3</sup> VENTRIS<sup>4</sup> TUĪ."

Thus, the Angel Gabriel and St. Elizabeth composed the first part of the prayer. The word *Jēsūs* and the last part (*Sdncta Maria, etc.*) were added gradually by the devotion of Catholics. The Hail Mary, in the full form to which we are accustomed, appears first in the fifteenth or sixteenth century.

This beautiful scene of the Annunciation is commemorated also in the Angelus and in the first of the Joyful Mysteries of the Rosary.

---

<sup>1</sup> benedictus, a, um: *blessed*.

<sup>2</sup> mulier, mulieris: *woman*.

<sup>3</sup> fructus, us: *fruit*.

\* venter, ventris: *womb*.

## LESSON 29: THE PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

### 1. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn GRAMMAR, NOS. 267-274. Note that the passive subjunctive is formed by changing the final personal signs exactly as was done in the indicative.

Review the rules for purpose clauses, GRAMMAR, NOS. 546-547.

#### VOCABULARY

parvus, a, um	<i>{small</i> <i>  little</i>
mds, mōis, m.	<i>f custom</i> <i>I habit</i>
manus, uŕ, /.	<i>(a band of men</i> <i>hand</i>
causa, ae	<i>cause</i>
causā, preceded by gen. for the sake of	

#### NOTE

1. The ablative of causa is used as a preposition. It governs the GENITIVE and always stands AFTER the word it governs.

aquae causa, *for the sake of water*

pācis causa, *for the sake of peace*

2. The ablative of mds (mōre) may be translated *according to custom*.

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Manual labor; manufactured goods.*

— Sancta Maria, Mater Dei, oŕa pro nobiŕ!



## EXERCISE 324

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the tenses in the subordinate clauses:*

1. They came into the forest lest they be routed (seen; overcome; conquered; terrified; held; put to flight; heard). 2. He sent a small band to fortify (seize; hold; defend; burn; assault; storm) the winter quarters. 3. He is warning the soldiers lest they be overcome (conquered; routed; put to flight; terrified; seen; held; killed). 4. He is sending the cavalry that the town may be more easily seized (burned; fortified; defended; assaulted; stormed; held).

## EXERCISE 325

[Essential]

- Z. *Translate;*
2. *Diagram Sentence 1;*
3. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Caesar *suis* nōmine appellabat atque signum legiōnis *manti* tenebat nē *sui* ab hostibus in fugam darentur. 2. Caesar *aquae* causā ad flūmen castra posuit quō *jacilius* atque diūtius impetus hostium ā *suis* sustinerētur. 3. Imperator legiōnes clam in finēs hostium dēduxit nē ab hostibus *viderentur*. Statim impetum in Gallōs fecerunt. Turn vērō principes Galldrum *belli* causā manūs cōgēbant, arma parābant, virtutem *sudrum* orātiōnibus mōre *suō* cōfirmābant. 4, Caesar cum parvā manu trāns montēs contendit nē ā militibus *suis* in *eōrum* periculō abesset. 5. Galli post proelium *sē* *suaque* omnia Caesari dēdidērunt ut vitae obsidum *sudrum* ā Caesare cōservārentur. 6. Nōne nos Americān! ante bellum exercitum cōgimus atque arma tēlaque parāmus nē ab hostibus vincāmur? 7. Portae incēnsae sunt, atque equitēs celeriter in oppidum missi sunt ut oppidum statim occupārētur. Turn barbari mōre *suō* clamōrem sustulērunt atque *sē* *suaque* omnia Rōmānis salutis causā dēdidērunt. Caesar vērō vitās *eōrum* nōn cōservāvit nē legāti *sui* ā barbaris occiderentur. Nam injūria atque caedes legātōrū fuerant belli causa.

## EXERCISE 326

*Translate:*

1. May God be praised I 2. May the enemy be conquered!  
 3. May the town be burned! 4. May the leader be warned!  
 5. May we be spared! 6. May guards be stationed! 7. May  
 they be helped by God! 8. May the state be preserved I 9. May  
 my life be ruled by God! 10. May God be loved by all men!  
 11. May they be put to flight I 12. May our sins be taken away!  
 13. May we be taught by God! 14. May help be sent to us!  
 15. May he be always kept in memory! 16. May Mary be  
 praised by all men! 17. May the grace of God be given to you  
 all! 18. May rewards be given to brave men!

**In manus tuas, Domine,  
 Commendo<sup>1</sup> spiritum meum.**

## EXERCISE 327

*Translate :*

1. The barbarians according to their custom raised a shout lest  
 they be killed by the lieutenant. 2. Christ came into the world  
 that our sins might be taken away. 3. Let the state be preserved  
 for the sake of our peace and our common welfare. 4. The Gauls  
 burned their towns with their own hands lest they be seized by  
 the Romans. 5. God will give grace to those who sustain great  
 sorrows for the sake of peace. 6. Brave and free men will always  
 fight that our state may be preserved. 7. They pitched camp at  
 the river for the sake of water. 8. He waited for reinforcements  
 lest he be hard pressed by the enemy. 9. He stationed a small  
 band of men there lest the hill be seized by the barbarians.  
 10. Caesar informs us about the customs both of the Gauls and  
 of his own soldiers.

---

<sup>1</sup> commendo, *1, tr.:* commend.

## EXERCISE 328

[Review]

*Parse the italicized words:*

1. Propter *quorū* salutē venī Christus in mundum?
2. *Quem* imperatōrem milites Romāni appellaverūnt?
3. *Quis* gentē vicit Caesar?

## 2. THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The perfect tenses of the passive subjunctive OF ALL LATIN VERBS, REGULAR AND IRREGULAR, are formed in the same way. They are COMPOUND tenses just as in the indicative. To form these tenses:

1. Find the perfect participle passive.
2. Add, as a separate word, the proper form of the verb **sum**.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 275-282. Review in direct questions, GRAMMAR, NOS. 660-662 and FIRST YEAR LATIN, pages 281 and 286.

## VOCABULARY

Sciō, scire, scivi, scitus, 4, tr.

*know*

pācō, 1, tr.

*Pacify*

subitō, adv.

*suddenly*

probō, 1, tr.

*[approve**] prove*

relinquo, relinquere, reliqui, relictus, 3, tr. /

*f leave**[leave behind*

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Science.* He is out on *probation*. He will not *relinquish* his rights. The story is not *probable*.

## RELATED LATIN WORD

**Pāx**

**GUM, WHEN**, in secondary sequence usually takes the subjunctive. Use the imperfect or pluperfect according to the general rule, GRAMMAR, NOS. 531-533.

Gum equitēs in silvīs pugnārent. Caesar mllitēs trāns flūmen trādūxit.

*When the cavalry were fighting in the forest, Caesar led the soldiers across the river.*

Caesar cum hostes vidisset, legidnes pro castris instruxit.

*When Caesar had seen the enemy, he drew up the legions in front of the camp.*

#### EXERCISE 329

##### 1. Translate;

##### 2. Explain the tenses in the subordinate clauses:

1. He knew why they had been routed (praised; overcome; called; warned; killed; terrified; seen; held). 2. They knew where they had been led (sent; collected; called). 3. He knows who was sent (sought; killed; praised; warned; called; overcome; terrified). 4. He knew where they were being stationed (left; killed; drawn up). 5. He knows whether the fields are being laid waste (seized; defended). 6. He knows where they are being led (collected; called; moved; sent). 7. He knew why he was being praised (overcome; called; warned; feared; terrified; held; left).

#### EXERCISE 330

[Essential]

##### Translate:

1. Cum omnis Gallia pācāta esset, Caesar praesidia in hibernis rellequit et in Italiam contendit. 2. Centurid ante proelium rogāvit quae cōnsilia ā Caesare probāta essent. 3. Num seis quō lēgāti missi sint? 4. Cum agmen per loca difficilia et angusta dūceretur, subito visa est acies bardrum. 5. Scitisne num legiō quae in castris fuerat ā lēgātō relicta sit? 6. Cum frumenta

ab equitibus incenderentur, milites castra valid fossaque muniebant. 7. Cum Christus Iudaeis<sup>1</sup> ostensus a Pilato<sup>2</sup> esset, Iudaei<sup>1</sup> magnum clamorem sustulerunt: "Non habemus regem nisi<sup>3</sup> Caesarem. Tollite! Crucifigatur!"<sup>4</sup>

## EXERCISE 331

*Translate:*

When the legions had been left in winter quarters in Gaul and Caesar had hastened into Italy, the Gauls exchanged hostages and treated about war among themselves. When the plans had been approved in a common council, suddenly they attacked the winter quarters. The garrisons were in great danger. Therefore a messenger was sent to Caesar that help might be sent. Caesar knew how large the enemy forces were and where guards had been stationed. He immediately led his new legions into Gaul lest the winter quarters be taken (by storm). Suddenly his column was seen by the enemy. They were terrified and at once sent envoys to seek peace. Then they surrendered to him. Thus Gaul was pacified.

## 3. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

We have seen that the CAUSE OR REASON may be expressed in Latin in various ways:

## 1. Propter:

*They Were terrified on account of the arrival of Caesar.*

Propter adven-tum Caesaris territi sunt.

## 2. Quod:

*They were terrified because Caesar had arrived.*

Territi sunt quod Caesar advenerat.

<sup>1</sup> Iudaeus, i: Jew.

\* PHŭtus, i: Pilate.

<sup>3</sup> nisi: except.

<sup>4</sup> crucifigo, 3, tr.: crucify.

3. Nam; enim (postpositive):

*They were terrified, for Caesar had arrived.*

*Territi sunt, nam Caesar advenerat.*

The ablative without a preposition may also be used to express the CAUSE OR REASON (ABLATIVE OF CAUSE).

*They were terrified at (because of, on account of, by) the arrival of Caesar.*

*Adventu Caesaris territi sunt.*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the rule, GRAMMAR, NO. 781.

**Note.** The ablative of cause is frequently merely a special variety of the ablative of means. It is therefore sometimes very difficult to distinguish between these two types of ablatives.

<b>Christe, audi nos!</b>
---------------------------

#### EXERCISE 332

*All the italicized ablatives may be classified as ablatives of cause.*

*Translate:*

1. *Socidrum victoriis sublati sunt.* 2. *Adventu Caesaris moti sunt.* 3. *Metu Caesaris territi sunt.* 4. *Oratione legati perturbati sunt.* 5. *Litteris regis motus est.*

#### EXERCISE 333

*All the italicized expressions are to be translated by the ablative of cause.*

*Translate:*

1. They were violently disturbed *on account of the slaughter of the leading men.* 2. They were terrified *because of the arrival of Caesar.* 3. They were aroused *at the wrongs of the Romans.* 4. They were violently moved *by fear of the lieutenant.*

## EXERCISE 334

[Essential Review]

*Translate:*

1. Hail, Jesus Christ, who for the sake of our salvation didst come into the world and through sorrow and toil didst take away our sins. Thou hast taught us the truth. Thou hast taught us the way of salvation. Rule our minds and our lives. Thou hast taught us where true peace is. Let us love Him and adore Him. Jesus Christ, our Lord, have mercy on us!

2. For the sake of peace Caesar left garrisons in the states which he had pacified. Then, however, Caesar hastened into Italy. When this<sup>1</sup> had been learned by the Gauls, new plans were approved by them and they exchanged hostages that peace and friendship might be strengthened among them. But Caesar, when he had learned what plans had been approved by the barbarians, left Rome and suddenly arrived in the territory of the Gauls with a small band of men. Meanwhile the Gauls had retained the envoys whom Caesar had sent to them and had assaulted the winter quarters. Caesar immediately hastened to the winter quarters lest they be stormed by the barbarians. He arrived with a small band of men. When his column had been seen by the enemy, they made<sup>2</sup> an attack on his men without delay. His men were hard pressed, but Caesar called upon them by name and held the standard of the legion with his hand lest they be routed. The enemy were put to flight. Caesar hastened with all his forces to their camp, but they, according to their custom, raised a shout and surrendered themselves and all their possessions to him. Caesar knew what had been the cause of the war. Therefore he killed the hostages of the Gauls, that his envoys might not afterwards be held and killed by them. Thus had he defended the state and, on account of his victory, the Roman Senate without delay praised him and gave thanks to him.

3. A lieutenant, by name Labienus, was often praised by Caesar.

---

<sup>1</sup> *this: hoc.*

<sup>2</sup> *they made: fecerunt.*

4. May God give us His peace and always defend us!
5. Jesus Christ, Son of God, have mercy on us!
6. They were terrified at the arrival of Caesar.

## EXERCISE 335

## [Essential Formal Review]

1. Give the rules for the formation of the vocative. Give the vocative of: (a) Deus; (b) Jēsus; (c) filius; (d) meus; (e) amicus; (f) centurid.
2. How is the present imperative active formed? Give examples.
3. Give the rule for the volitive subjunctive. Give examples.
4. Give the rule for the hortatory subjunctive. Give examples.
5. What is the rule for the use of sui and suus as direct reflexives?
6. What is the rule for the use of sui and suus as indirect reflexives?
7. What are the direct and indirect reflexives of the first and second persons? Give examples.
8. How do you translate: (a) surrender; (b) you surrender; (c) he surrenders; (d) we surrender; (e) they surrender?
9. What does the phrase in fugam dare mean?
10. Explain the use of the ablative causa.
11. Give the rule for cum, when.
12. Explain the ablative of cause. Give an example.

## READING NO. 25

## DAVID, REX

David,<sup>1</sup> vir nōbilis et fortis, sicut scitis, rēx erat Isrāelitārum.<sup>2</sup> Isrāelitae<sup>2</sup> autem bellum cum Philisthinis<sup>3</sup> gerebant ne agri sui ab eis occuparentur. Philisthini<sup>3</sup> autem Bethlehem<sup>4</sup> tenebant. Cas-

<sup>1</sup> David: *David*.

<sup>2</sup> Isrāelitae, Isrāelitārum: *the Israelites*.

<sup>3</sup> Philisthini, Philisthinorū: *the Philistines*.

<sup>4</sup> Bethlehem: *Bethlehem*.





DAVID, REX

tra enim ibi posuerant. David cum parvā hominum manū erat in praesidid et nōn longē ab edrum castris āfuit. Praesidium ibi collocātum erat ut David et suds dēfenderet et cognōsceret quae ab hostibus gererentur.

In castris autem Israēlitarū<sup>1</sup> erat magna aquae inopia. Propter id magnum dolōrem et David et militēs sustinēbant. In Bethlehēm autem, quod ā Philisthinis tenebātur, erat aquae cōpia. Itaque David, “Si habērem,”<sup>2</sup> inquit, “aquam dē<sup>3</sup> cisternā<sup>4</sup> quae est in Bethlehēm!”

Cum vērō ea ā militibus audita essent, tres® fortēs viri clam ad

<sup>1</sup> Israēlitae, Israelitarū: *the Israelites.*

<sup>2</sup> si habērem: *if only I had.*

<sup>3</sup> dē, *prep. w. abl.*, here means *from.*

<sup>4</sup> cisterna, ae: *cistern.*

\*tres®, tria: *three.*

castra hostium pervenerunt ut aquam ad regem portarent. Magnum erat periculum, tamen a custodibus hostium visi non sunt. Itaque aquam ad regem tuti portaverunt et ei dederunt.

Rex vero, cum aquam vidisset, eorum virtute et amicitia vehementer motus est. Per loca enim periculorum plena in castra hostium pervenerunt ut ad eum aqua portaretur. Scivit rex quanto in periculo propter se fuissent. Itaque eis gratias egit sed aquam in terram Domino libavit.<sup>1</sup>

David enim, "The Lord," inquit, "be merciful to me that I may not do this; shall I drink the blood of these men that went at the peril of their lives?"

---

<sup>1</sup> libo, *l* » tr.: pour out as a sacrifice (to).

## UNIT NINE

### LESSON 30: THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE

A PARTICIPLE is a VERBAL ADJECTIVE.

*The enemy, having been swiftly repulsed, hastened into the mountains.*

In this sentence *HAVING BEEN REPULSED* is a participle. It is an ADJECTIVE because it modifies the noun *enemy*.

It is a VERB because it expresses ACTION. Since it is a verb, it may be modified by an adverb (*swiftly*).

The fourth principal part of regular verbs in Latin is the PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE. It is declined like *magnus*, a, um.

*laudo*, *laudare*, *laudavi*, *laudatus, a, um*

*moneo*, *monere*, *monui*, *monitus, a, um*

*mitto*, *mittere*, *misi*, *missus, a, um*

*audio*, *audire*, *audivi*, *auditus, a, um*

#### EXERCISE 336

*Decline in full:*

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>laudatus, a, um</i> | 3. <i>missus, a, um</i>  |
| 2. <i>monitus, a, um</i>  | 4. <i>auditus, a, um</i> |

The perfect participle passive may be translated into English either by the long English form:

*laudatus, a, um, having been praised*

or the shorter English form:

*laudatus, a, um, praised*

Since the perfect participle passive is an adjective, it can modify any noun or pronoun in a sentence according as the sense requires.

Caesar multis nuntiis perturbatus novās legiōnēs in Galliam dūxit.  
*Caesar, having been disturbed (disturbed) by many messages, led new legions into Gaul.*

Caesar collem ab equitibus occupatum vallo muniuit.  
*Caesar fortified with a rampart the hill seized by the cavalry.*

Propter legātōs occisus Caesar oppida barbarorum incēdit.  
*On account of the murdered envoys Caesar burned the towns of the barbarians.*

Rōmāni Gallis victis frumentum non dederunt.  
*The Romans did not give grain to the conquered Gauls.*

Spiritus Sancte, Deus, miserere nobis!

#### NOTE

1. When a verb is INTRANSITIVE, it can have only a NEUTER participle PASSIVE. In intransitive verbs, therefore, the fourth principal part is always given as neuter, as:

**puġno, puġnare, puġnāvi, puġnafum, 1, intr.**

2. When a verb is DEFECTIVE and has no perfect participle passive at all, the FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE (which we shall study later) is given as the fourth principal part:

- cēdo, cedere, cessi, cessurus, 3, intr.

Cēdo has no perfect participle passive. The future participle active always ends in -URUS (cess-urus).

3. When a verb has neither a perfect participle passive nor a future participle active, only three parts are given, as:

**contēdo, contendere, contend?, 3, intr.**

Review the ablative of cause, page 319.

## VOCABULARY

addūcō, adducēre, adduxi, adductus, 3, tr.

{ lead to  
lead on

commoveo, commovere, commovi, commotus, 2, tr.

{ alarm  
arouse

impedid, 4, tr.

{ hinder  
impede

auctoritas, auctoritatis

{ authority  
influence

## NOTE

The perfect participle passive of impedid, **IMPEDITUS**, is used of soldiers *encumbered* by full packs, of an army *encumbered* by a baggage train, and of places in which it is *difficult* to maneuver. Hence it may frequently be translated, according to the context, as *encumbered* or *difficult*.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

There was a *commotion* in the hall. He had an *impediment* in his speech.

## RELATED LATIN WORDS

Ad + ducō; moved.

## EXERCISE 337

1. Give the perfect participle passive;
2. Give two English translations of the participle:

1. cognōscō

10. tradūcō

19. terreo

2. exspecto

11. ostendo

20. video

3. dedūcō

12. doceō

21. agō

4. addūcō

13. tollō

22. dedō

5. commoveō

14. regō

23. diligo

6. impedid

15. obtineo

24. pascō

7. vasto

16. retineo

25. adjuvo

8. quaero

17. sustineo

26. administro

9. rogō

18. teneo

27. appello

28. colloco	41. instruo	53. contineo
29. comparo	42. mitto	54. habeo
30. confirmo	43. occupo	55. moneo
31. conservo	44. oppugno	56. moveo
32. do	45. oro	57. occido
33. exploro	46. paro	58. pello
34. incito	47. perturbo	59. peto
35. laudo	48. porto	60. pono
36. defendo	49. servo	61. premo
37. dimitto	50. superbo	62. trado
38. duco	51. voco	63. vinco
39. gero	52. compleo	64. audio
40. incendo		

## EXERCISE 338

[Essential]

2. Translate;
2. Parse the italicized words;
3. Diagram Sentences 1 and 4:

1. Barbari, *spe* communis salutis adducti, equites in agmen Romanum miserunt. 2. Imperator milites caede equitum commoti *os* bratione confirmavit quo diutius pugnarent. 3. Propter oppida occupata atque agros vastatos, Galli frumentum in hibernia Romanorum non portabant. 4. Senatus Populusque Romanus, auctoritate litterisque Caesaris commotus, legiones novas in provinciam sine mora misit. 5. Turn barbari servique in agmen nostrum impedimentis *impeditum* subito impetum undique fecerunt. 6. Galli, verb, multis proeliis superati atque a sociis relictis, in loca *impedita* et angusta contenderunt. 7. Nuntius, "Milites nostri," inquit, "*impediti*, hostes non statim in fugam dederunt." 8. Centurio ad hiberna ab *hostibus* oppugnata auxilia deduxit. 9. Galli, omnium rerum inopia adducti atque *adv ent* u Caesaris commoti, legatos ad imperatorem Romanum miserunt qui pacem peterent. 10. Britanni et Americani!, a sociis *suis adjuti*, magnas copias in Galliam<sup>1</sup> traduxerunt. 11. Galli,

<sup>1</sup> Gallia, ae: France.

ā principibus ad bellum *incitātē* atque *spē* victōriae *sublatē*, castra nostra valid altō *mūnēta* oppugnāverunt. 12. Interim milites, *praesidii* causā in castris relict!, impetum hostium fortiter sustinebant. 13. Hostes autem *cōpiās* suas ad flūmen *duct* *ās* instruxerunt. 14. Multis nuntiis litterisque *commdtus*, Caesar legidnēs novās in Italiā coēgit et qui eās in Galliam *dedūceret* lēgātum misit. 15. Rēx princeps propter praemia ab eis sibi *data* laudāvit.

Hōmo doctus in sē divitiās<sup>1</sup> semper habet.

—Phaedrus

### EXERCISE 339

1. Translate;
2. Parse the italicized words:

1. Imperātor, vehementer *commdtus*, virtūtem militum *ōratiōne* cōnfirmāvit. 2. Milites, a Caesare *laudatī* atque nōmine *appellatē*, impetum equitātis sustinuērunt. 3. Duce Galldrum, caede principum vehementer *perturbatī*, arma ad bellum a se comparāta Rōmānis tradiderunt. 4. Dux, vir fortis, collem ab equitibus *occupātum* et *valid* et fossā mūnivit. 5. Barbari impetum in milites impeditis *impeditōs* fecerunt. 6. Caesar, periculō lēgātorum *perturbātus*, in finēs barbardrum magnis itineribus cum omnibus *cōpīes* contendit. 7. Litteris lēgati *commdtus*, Caesar princeps Galldrum ad se *vocāvit* atque quaesivit quantae gentes in armis essent. 8. Equites ad flūmen *collocatē* hostes in fugam dederunt atque ita magnam eōrum partem telis ac gladiis occiderunt. 9. Legidnēs ad finēs hostium hibernōrum causā *collocatae* servum ad Caesarem miserunt qui auxilia peteret. 10. Centuriōnēs et tribūni militum a Caesare nōmine *appellatē* diūtius *cōpiās* hostium sustinuērunt. 11. Hostes, *spē* victōriae *cōnfirmatē*, usque ad primam aciem nostram celeriter appropin-

<sup>1</sup> divitiae, divitiarūm: riches, wealth.

quāverunt. 12. Nostri, spē auxiliī cōnfirmiti, usque ad noctem pugnāverunt. 13. Imperator, vehementer commotus, exercitum prō portis statim instruxit.

### EXERCISE 340

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. When the enemy, having been routed by the legions, fled to the mountains,<sup>1</sup> Caesar sent the cavalry to kill them. 2. The barbarians, alarmed by the arrival of Caesar, did not attack the hill seized by the Roman legion. 3. Led on by hope of victory and safety, the Gauls exchanged hostages and prepared arms to wage war with the Romans. 4. Moved by the authority and favor of Caesar, the Gauls carried grain into winter quarters. 5. They attacked our men, encumbered by the baggage train and held in by mountains. 6. The barbarians, having been overcome in many battles, surrendered themselves and all their possessions to the lieutenant. 7. Caesar, having been informed in how great danger the legions were, sent the cavalry to help them. 8. The general, having been informed what race of men dwelt there, led his army secretly across the river. 9. Men loved by God do not fear danger or death. 10. The town, having been taken by storm, was burned. 11. They left many bodies on the hill seized by the Romans. 12. On account of the devastated<sup>2</sup> fields there was a scarcity of grain. 13. Caesar learned the plans approved by the barbarians in council before his arrival.

### EXERCISE 341

[Review]

1. What is the gender of manus ?
2. What is the difference between ubi and quo? "
3. Translate: The barbarians surrendered to Caesar.
4. Translate in two ways: They approached the camp.

---

<sup>1</sup> Translate *sought the mountains by flight*.

<sup>2</sup> *devastate: vaito, 1, tr.*



## LESSON 31: HIC, HAEC, HOC

### 1. THE DECLENSION OF HIC, HAEC, HOC

There are words in all languages that merely POINT OUT the person or thing about which we are talking:

Which do you mean?

I mean that one.

I mean this one.

Such words as *THAT* (pl. *THOSE*), *THIS* (pl. *THESE*) are called DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, i.e., "POINTING-OUT" words. (Demonstro in Latin means *I show, I point out.*)

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the declension of *hie*, **haec**, **hoc**, *this* (pl. *these*), GRAMMAR, NO. 133.

RULE FOR POSITION: *HIC, HAEC, HOC* GENERALLY PRECEDES THE NOUN IT MODIFIES.

### EXERCISE 342

**Z.** Decline;

2. Give the meaning of each case:

- |             |               |               |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. hie homo | 3. haec via   | 5. hoc regnum |
| 2. hie vir  | 4. haec legio | 6. hoc flumen |

### EXERCISE 343

**Z.** Supply the correct form of **hie**;

2. Translate:

- |                              |                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. cum _____ tribund militum | 5. pro _____ oppido   |
| 2. per _____ silvas          | 6. in _____ ponte     |
| 3. in _____ flumen           | 7. trans _____ flumen |
| 4. propter _____ rem         | 8. in _____ provincia |

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 9. in..... . periculo <sup>m</sup>        | 22. cum..... .... imperatōrē         |
| 10. post..... .... bellum                 | 23. in..... . mundum                 |
| 11. in..... . collibus                    | 24. in..... . itinere                |
| 12. propter .. ..... vulnera              | 25. per..... . agro <sup>s</sup>     |
| 13. post..... .... montem                 | 26. plēnus ... ..... rerū            |
| 14. cum..... .... puero <sup>m</sup>      | 27. ad..... .. flūmen                |
| 15. in..... . agris                       | 28. ad..... . castra                 |
| 16. sine..... .... viro <sup>m</sup>      | 29. in..... .... milite <sup>s</sup> |
| 17. post..... .... victoriā               | 30. sine..... .... spe <sup>m</sup>  |
| 18. propter . ..... victoriā <sup>s</sup> | 31. propter . ..... causam           |
| 19. in..... .. monte <sup>s</sup>         | 32. in..... . proelio <sup>m</sup>   |
| 20. cum..... .... servis                  | 33. dē..... .. re <sup>m</sup>       |
| 21. propter . ..... metum                 | 34. in..... . civitatē               |

Sancte Josēph, ora p̄rō nobis!

### EXERCISE 344

**Z.** Put these phrases in the genitive and dative;

2, Translate:

- |                                 |                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. haec mora                    | 6. hie dolor      |
| 2. hoc peccatū                  | 7. hoc praesidium |
| 3. haec re <sup>s</sup> publica | 8. haec causa     |
| 4. haec manus                   | 9. haec fuga      |
| 5. haec me <sup>n</sup> s       | 10. hie mds       |

### 2. USES OF HIC, HAEC, HOC

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study the uses of **hie**, **haec**, **hoc**, GRAMMAR, Nos. 793-794.

When hie is used as an adjective, the general rule for agreement, GRAMMAR, NO. 477, applies.

When hie is used as a pronoun, the general rule for agreement, GRAMMAR, NO. 479, applies.

## VOCABULARY

<i>contra</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>against</i>   <i>opposite</i>
<i>ā tergo</i>	( <i>in the rear</i> <i>from the rear</i> )
<i>ā fronte</i>	( <i>in the front</i> <i>from the front</i> )
<i>summus</i> , a, um	{ <i>highest</i> <i>greatest</i> <i>very great</i>

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

*Contradiction ; summit; contrary.*

## EXERCISE 345

[Hic as an Adjective]

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the agreement of the italicized words:*

1. *Haec* civitas libera nostra est; *hi* agri atque *hae* urbes nostrae sunt. Itaque pro *hdc* civitate libera *contra* hostes fortiter pugnabimus atque *hos* agros et *has* urbes semper sine mora defendemus.

2. Multa et magna erant bella et victoriae patrum nostrorum. Nonne *haec* bella atque *hae* victoriae in *hdc* civitate semper memoria tenebuntur?

3. Galli, a Caesare coacti, multos obsides ad *eum* miserant. *Hos* obsides Caesar, cum Galli bellum gererent, occidit. *Hdc* re perturbati, Galli milites novis celeriter coegerunt ut Romanos vincerent.

4. Primi milites trans flumen venerant; reliqui in flumine erant. In *hos* milites ita impeditos barbari subito impetum a tergo fortiter fecerunt atque omnes fere occiderunt.

5. Amici qui in rebus difficilibus nos adjuvant sunt veri et certi amici. *Hos* amicos diligamus.

6. Caesar, cum *hunc* nuntium audivisset, litteras ad legatum

misit. Lēgātus vēō, *his* litteris vehementer commōtus et impetū hostium territus, legiōnēs castris continuit, at equitēs ad Caesarem misit.

## EXERCISE 346

[Hie as a Pronoun]

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the agreement and reference of the italicized words:*

1. Erant in exercitū Caesaris equitēs aliēn!. *Hōs* Caesar propter fidem *edrum* atque virtutē veram saepe laudavit.

2. A tergo subito cernebantur equitēs hostium. Erant autem in primā acie legiōnēs integrae. Itaque *hae* omnēs ferē impetū hostium sustinuerunt.

3. Rōmāni multos Christiānōs propter lēgem et veritatem Christi occiderunt. Nonne *horūm* memoriam semper laudabimūs?

4. Germān! vietdriae spē adducti regisque auctoritate coacti, omnēs cōpiās flumen traduxerant. Contrā Gallōs pugnabant; frumenta et oppida occupata incendebant; principes atque regēs Galldrum occidebant; omnes agros vastabant. Galli, vēō, vehementer commōti et territi, lēgātōs ad Caesarem miserunt qui auxilium peterent. Caesar, cum *haec* omnia audivisset, statim cum omnibus cōpiis in finēs Galldrum contendit ut Germānōs trāns flumen ageret.

## EXERCISE 347

[Hie as an Adjective and as a Pronoun]

*Translate:*

1. The enemy easily aroused the neighboring tribes to war, for these tribes were brave and eager for the glory of victory.

2. Caesar fought with many kings and chiefs. These he often killed.

3. The lieutenant pitched a camp in the fields of the barbarians. This camp, fortified by a ditch and a rampart, he bravely defended.

4. The centurion sent a letter to Caesar concerning this affair. Caesar, alarmed by this letter, sent new legions into the province. These legions defended the province and drove the enemy across the river into their own territory.

5. The barbarians suddenly made an attack on the legion from the rear. This legion easily withstood the attack.

“And they put above His head the  
charge against Him, written,

HIC EST JESUS REX JUDAEORUM.”<sup>1</sup>

—Matthew 27:37

### EXERCISE 348

[Review]

**Z.** *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. *Vos amicos* appello. 2. *Legionem flumen* transduxit. 3. Multi *Romani amicitiae causa* cum exercitu Caesaris erant. 4. *Barbards in jugum* dedit. 5. *Fortiter pugnatum* est.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Jūdaeus, i: a Jew.*

## LESSON 32: THE PREPOSITIONS

EX (E), AB (A), AND DE

In expressions of PLACE:

1. The prepositions **EX (E)** or **DE** with the ablative mean *OUT OF* or *FROM*.

When the motion begins, the person or thing moving is **INSIDE THE PLACE**:

De(ex) flnibus hostium venit.

*He came from the territory of the enemy.*

2. The preposition **AB (A)** with the ablative means *AWAY FROM* or *FROM*.

When the motion begins, the person or thing moving is **NOT INSIDE** the place:

Ab hoc loco venit.

*He came away from (from) this place.*

3. The preposition **DE** with the ablative may also mean *DOWN FROM* or *FROM*.

The motion is **DOWNWARDS**.

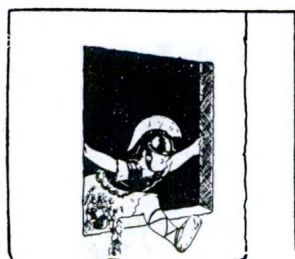
De hoc monte venit. *He came down from this mountain.*



**AB LOCO**



**DE MONTE**



Ex Loco

## STUDY THESE EXAMPLES:

dē murō, *down from (from) the wall*ē castris, *out of (from) the camp*ā castris, *away from the camp*ex flūmine, *out of the river*ā flūmine, *away from the river*

## VOCABULARY

discedd, discedēre, discessi, discessurus, 3, *intr.*{ *depart*  
*withdraw*nāvis, navīs<sup>1</sup>*ship*ex (e), *prep. w. abl.*{ *out of*  
*from*ab (a), *prep. w. abl.*{ *away from*  
*from*dē, *prep. w. abl.*{ *down from*  
*from*cadd, cadere, cecidi, casurus, 3, *intr.**fall*

## NOTE

The forms a (for ab) and e (for ēx) are never used before words beginning with a vowel or *h*.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The secretary of the *Navy* takes care of *naval* affairs. The song ended in a beautiful *cadence*.

## EXERCISE 349

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. This soldier fell from the wall. 2. Caesar hastened out of the territory of the enemy. 3. He departed from the province. 4. He

<sup>1</sup> The ablative may be either navī or navē.

moved camp from this place. 5. The army came out of the forest. 6. This sailor who had been killed by a dart fell from the ship. 7. The cavalry were sent out of this camp. 8. The legion hastened down from this hill. 9. These barbarians made an attack from the hill. 10. They departed from this river.

11. This army was led out of winter quarters. 12. They came out of this city. 13. The centurion fell from this bridge into the river. 14. This centurion was carried out of the river. 15. This soldier came away from the river. 16. These were led from the fields of the barbarians. 17. They were leading these hostages out of the town. 18. Caesar hastened from this city to Gaul. 19. This (man) hastened out of the territory of the Gauls. 20. These brave soldiers did not withdraw from the battle line.

### EXERCISE 350

[Essential]

2. *Translate;*
2. *Illustrate your translations with drawings or diagrams:*

1. Multi nautae, tells occisi, de navibus in aquam ceciderunt.  
 2. Exercitum ex hostium agris trans flumen in provinciam traduxerat. 3. Legiones novas ex Italia in Galliam deduxit.  
 4. Caesar, cum haec audivisset, oppidum ex quo dux hostium milites duxerat oppugnavit. 5. Ad flumen diu atque acriter pugnatum est. 6. Omnes fere hostes, tells occisi, de muro ceciderunt. 7. Nonne in hoc proelio multi ceciderunt? 8. Prima luce hic legatus, nomine Labienus, castra ab hoc loco in collem movit. 9. Hi barbari de montibus in agmen impeditum subito impetum fecerunt. 10. Virtutem atque fidem horum militum nostrorum qui in his proeliis ceciderunt semper memoriam tenebimus. 11. Caesar auxilia ex castris in primam aciem misit.  
 12. His litteris commotus, Caesar, cum agri barbarorum vastati essent et frumenta omnia incensa essent, exercitum ex finibus hostium per loca difficilia et impedita trans flumen in provinciam salutis causa deduxit.



**MOMENTS AT MASS NO. 3**

At the most solemn moment of the Mass—when all are silent and waiting—the priest, bowing low over the altar, unites himself with the Eternal High Priest Christ and speaks, in His name, these sacred words:

**HOG EST ENIM CORPUS MEUM**

—and the Lord Jesus Christ is present on the altar.

## EXERCISE 351

[Review]

1. *Translate:*2. *Explain the use of the italicised pronouns:*

1. Miles fugā silvas petivit nē hostēs se occiderent. 2. Hostēs mōre *sud* clamōrem sustulerunt. 3. Barbari impetum in hiberna fecerunt. Itaque Caesar obsidēs *edrum* interfecit. 4. Galli obsidēs inter *se* dant.

Sancta Agnēs, orā pro nobis!

## LESSON 33: ILLE AND IS

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 134-135 and 795-798.  
You have already learned the declension of **is, ea, id**.

### VOCABULARY

<b>is, ea, id</b>	<b>is</b> { <i>that</i> (as a demonstrative)   <i>He, she, it</i> (as a personal pronoun)
<b>ille, ilia, illud</b>	<b>ille</b> { <i>that</i> (as a demonstrative)   <i>he, she, it</i> (as a personal pronoun)
<b>numquam, adv.</b>	<i>never</i>
<b>praeterea, adv.</b>	{ <i>besides</i>   <i>furthermore</i>
<b>ratio, rationis</b>	{ <i>reason</i>   <i>manner</i>

### NOTE

**Ratio** is used in a great number of meanings; the vocabulary gives only the most general idea of them. Be sure to translate **ratio** into good English as the sense and context demand.

### RELATED ENGLISH WORD

A *rational* explanation.

### EXERCISE 352

**Z.** Supply the proper forms of: (a) **ille**, (b) **is**;

2. Translate:

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. cum..... nautis      | 7. prō.....Christianis |
| 2. prō..... porta       | 8. contra .. dominum   |
| 3. in..... provincia    | 9. cum..... filiis     |
| 4. ex..... silvis       | 10. per..... Gallos    |
| 5. propter .. victoriam | 11. sine..... gladiis  |
| 6. cum..... amico       | 12. in..... murd       |

- |                      |                                    |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 13. apud..... servos | 21. trans..... flumen              |
| 14. in..... oppido   | 22. propter..... vulnera           |
| 15. de..... colie    | 23. propter salutem..... Romanorum |
| 16. in..... ponte    | 24. propter inopiam..... rerum     |
| 17. ex..... portu    | 25. de causa..... belli            |
| 18. .... rei causa   | 26. propter..... legem             |
| 19. .... viris       | 27. de..... montibus               |
| 20. .... hominum     | 28. .... homini                    |

**Omnes Sancti discipuli<sup>1</sup> Domini, orate pro nobis.**

### EXERCISE 353

[Essential]

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the use of the italicised pronouns:*

1. Omnes Galli inter se obsides dabant et de belli ratione agebant. *Hae* res commotus Caesar legiones novas ex Italia in Galliam statim deduxit. *Illi* vero subito legatos ad *eum* miserunt qui amicitiam cum *ed* confirmarent.

2. Apud Americanos Lincoln et Washingtonius plurimum laudantur. *Hic* enim rem publicam instituit ;<sup>2</sup> *we* vero *earn* non sine labore conservavit.

3. Et Hannibal et Caesar magnas copias per Alpes duxerunt. *Hic* milites ex Italia deduxit ut Galliam pacaret, *ille* vero in Italiam exercitum duxit ut Romanos vinceret et Romam occuparet.

4. *El* qui sine spe pugnant, numquam fortiter pugnant.

5. *Eum* qui rem publicam nostram instituit<sup>2</sup> memoriam semper tenemus.

6. Et Hitler et Caesar exercitum in Galliam duxerunt ut Gallios vincerent. *Ille* copias ex Germania in Galliam misit quae *earn*

<sup>1</sup> discipulus, i: *disciple*,

<sup>2</sup> intituo, instituere, intitui, institutus, 3, tr.: *found, establish*.

vastarent et vincerent, *hie* exercitum ex Italia per montes in Galliam duxit ut *earn* pacaret atque occuparet. *Ille* a Gallis edrumque sociis victus est, *hie* verb imperium Galliae diu obtinuit.

7. Caesar, "German! et Galli," inquit, "saepe inter se proeliis contendebant. Aut enim Galli fines *suds* defendebant aut in *illorum* fines copias *suds* traducebant."

8. Gallorum dux suis, "Ego vos," inquit, "in *hunc* locum vocavi ut de belli ratione agam. *Illi* (*he points towards the distant Roman camp*) enim in fines nostros venerunt ut hos agros et haec oppida occuparent atque incenderent. Praeterea illi fortes et victoriae cupidi sunt. Ad omnia parati sunt. De vitis nostris atque de communi Galliae salute cum *eis* contendimus. Itaque eos qui fortiter contra *illds* non pugnabunt mea manu occidam. Pugnate usque ad mortem! Defendite *hds* agros, haec oppida, hos pueros nostros ab *eis*. Hostes pellamus, vincamus, occidamus 1 "

#### EXERCISE 354

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. That manner of battle was praised by the Romans.
2. Besides, those tribes have never given hostages to the Romans.
3. On account of those reasons, Caesar pitched camp at the river.
4. Besides, those tribes have always fought against the Roman legions.
5. Led on by those reasons they fought against us, but they will never conquer us.
6. These they repulsed but those they killed.
7. He who loves God will never leave the Christian faith.
8. These men came down from the mountains; but those remained in the mountains.
9. The camp was assaulted by these, but the soldiers encumbered in the river were attacked by those.
10. The cavalry were put to flight, but the soldiers took up a position on that hill and did not yield. To these, therefore, the general gave thanks, but to those rewards were not given.
11. Those chiefs, moved by the authority of Caesar, gave him hostages.

12. He asked where those tribes dwelt. 13. They will never seize this hill, but we shall seize that camp. 14. That sailor, having been killed by a dart, fell from the ship. 15. Let Us love God and all men.

**EXERCISE 355**

[Review]

*Explain the mood and tense of the italicized verbs:*

1. Rogo num Christu*s*Deus.
2. Rogo num Caesar barbards vicerit.
3. Caesar, cum in Gallia*s* esset, cum Gallis bellum gessit.
4. Caesar, cum haec vidisset, auxilia ad milites suos misit.

<b>Nunc aut numquam!</b>
--------------------------

## LESSON 34: ABLATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

### 1. THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NO. 766.

#### VOCABULARY

These words may take an ablative of separation:\*

<i>libero</i> , 1, tr.; <i>abl. of separation</i>	<i>free (from)</i>
<i>vacuus</i> , a, um; <i>abl. of separation</i>	<i>empty (of)</i>
<i>liber</i> , <i>libera</i> , <i>liberum</i> ; <i>abl. of separation</i>	<i>free (from)</i>
<i>prohibeo</i> , 2, tr.; <i>abl. of separation</i>	<i>{ ward off (from)</i> <i>{ prevent</i>

These words MAY have ab (a) with THINGS. They regularly have ab (a) with PERSONS:

<i>tutus</i> , a, um	<i>safe (from)</i>
<i>defendo</i> , <i>defendere</i> , <i>defend!</i> , <i>defensus</i> , 3, tr. <i>defend (from)</i>	

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *vacuum*. We fought to *liberate* the conquered countries. We tried *prohibition* once. Smoking is *prohibited* in streetcars. "*Liberty*" is the battle cry of Americans.

#### EXERCISE 356

[Essential]

*Translate :*

1. Bonorum vita vacua est metu. 2. Reges metu liberi numquam sunt. 3. Caesar vero, "Te," inquit, "ab hostibus defendant." 4. Libera me, Domine, ab eis qui vitam meam petunt. 5. Castra, natura loci munita, ab omni periculo futa erant. 6. Rogavit num muus a militibus vacuus esset. 7. Galli saepe cum Ger-

---

\* The words in this vocabulary, of course, take an ablative of separation *only* when the sense requires it.

mānis qui trāns flūmen Rhēnum incolunt proeliis contendunt. Aut enim suis finibus eds prohibent aut in edrum finibus bellum gerunt. 8. Caesar in Galliam missus est ut prōvinciam ab hostibus dēfenderet. 9. Post adventum Caesaris prōvincia tūta ab hostibus erat. 10. Lincoln, vir magnus et nōbilis, servōs in nostrā civitatē liberavīt.

### MOMENTS AT MASS NO. 4

#### THE AGNUS DEI

Shortly before the Communion the priest bows before the altar and says:

Agnus<sup>1</sup> Dei, qui tollis peccata mūdi, miserere nobis.

Agnus<sup>1</sup> Dei, q̄ui tollis peccata mūdi, miserere nobis.

Agnus<sup>1</sup> Dei, qui tollis peccata mūdi, dona<sup>1 2 \*\*</sup> nobis pācem.

### EXERCISE 357

[Essential]

*Translate:*

We are free from fear and the power of foreign nations. In the beginning we were freed by brave men from the power of a foreign people. In 1812<sup>s</sup> the attacks of our enemies were warded off from our territory by our soldiers and sailors. In 1861\* we waged war among ourselves, but in that war the slaves were freed from their masters and the republic preserved. Besides, after that war, peace and friendship were established<sup>5</sup> among us and have always been preserved.

The Japanese,<sup>®</sup> led on by the influence of their chiefs and

<sup>1</sup> agnus, i; *lamb*.

<sup>2</sup> dōnd, 1, tr.: *give*.

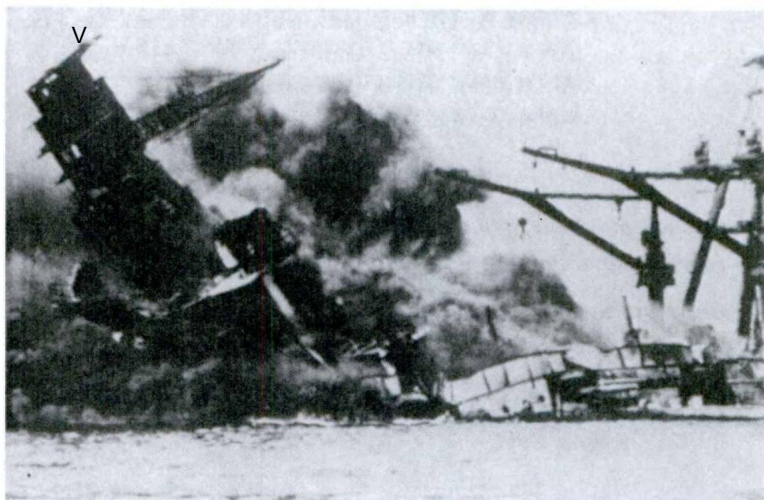
<sup>5</sup> in 1812: anno millesimō octingentesimō duodecimo.

<sup>®</sup> in 1861: anno millesimō octingentesimō sexagesimō primō.

<sup>0</sup> establish: confirmo, /, tr.

• Japanese: Japo, Japonis.





PEARL HARBOR

leaders and eager for glory and empire, made an attack on our harbors and fields. But we have been defended against them by brave men. The nations which they have conquered were freed from their power; the peoples against whom they have waged war will be safe from slaughter and death; their fields shall be cleared<sup>1</sup> of foreign armies. Let us thank the brave men who have defended us from our enemies. Let us praise them and help them. Let us always hold in memory their brave deeds,<sup>2</sup> and, prepared for death and glory, let us always preserve the republic which they have freed from fear and the dangers of war. Besides, let us always give thanks to God our Father.

## 2. REVIEW OF ABLATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

STUDY: Ablative of agent, GRAMMAR, NO. 764.  
Ablative of means, GRAMMAR, NO. 765.

---

<sup>1</sup> *cleared of* = *empty (of)*.

<sup>2</sup> *deed*: *factum, i*; or *deeds*: *res gestae*.

Ablative of accompaniment, GRAMMAR, NO. 772.

Ablative of place, GRAMMAR, NOS. 915-916.

Ablative of cause, GRAMMAR, NO. 781.

Ablative of separation, GRAMMAR, NO. 766.

### REVIEW VOCABULARY

plēnus, a, um; w. <i>gen. or abl.</i>	<i>full</i>
cum, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>with</i>
in, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>p''</i> <i>[on</i>
prō, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>{ in front of (before)</i> <i>[on behalf of (for)</i>
ab (a), <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>{ by</i> <i>{ from</i>
dē, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>{ concerning (about)</i> <i>{ down from</i> <i>{ from</i>
sine, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>without</i>
absūm, abesse, afui, afuturū, iñtr.;	<i>{ am away</i>
ab (a) w. <i>abl.</i>	<i>{ am distant</i>

### NOTE

1. In the expression *murum hominibus complet, hominibus*, though meaning *persons*, is an ablative of means.
2. When *loco* is modified by an adjective, *in* is often omitted.
3. *Proelid* is generally used without a preposition: *proeliō, in battle*.

### EXERCISE 358

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized constructions:*

1. *Legio ex Italia in Galliam a Caesare missa est.* 2. *Imperator cum omnibus cō pīs suis in provinciam contendit.* 3. *Hibema, natura loci atque valid munita, ab omni hostium impetū tuta erant.* 4. *Nonne flumen aquae plenum est?* 5. *Hostes, hac*

*caede* vehementer commōti, dē *bellō* in commūni Galliae conciliō agebant. 6. Pro commūni *salute* nostra ad arma vōs vocō. 7. Maria, Māter Jēsu Christi, *grātiā* erat p̄lena. 8. Hostēs, multis *proeliis* victi, sē suaque omnia *legatiō* dēdiderunt. 9. Ille *legatus*, nōmine Labiēnus, *impetū* hostium perturbātus mūrum *hominibus* complēvit. 10. Num *legatus* castra *locō* aliēnd posuit? 11. Sine *morā* militēs prō *portā* instruct! sunt. 12. His *litteris* commōtus, *legatus* in finēs barbarōrum contendit ne *ā castris* abesset. 13. Barbari, hāc *victōriā* sublāti, dē *montibus* impetum in agmen nostrum impeditum fecerunt. 14. Prima *luce* ex eo *locō* castra movet. 15. *Ā flūmine* in montēs celeriter contendit. 16. Multi, *tēlis* occisi, de *muro* in hostes ceciderunt.

Ab omni maid  
Libera nōs, Domine!

## EXERCISE 359

[Essential Review of Unit Nine]

*Translate:*

1. The Japanese, having been driven out of the fortifications, sought the forest in flight. 2. They departed from this river that they might be safe from attack. 3. Led on by the influence of their leaders, the Japanese suddenly made an attack on our harbors. 4. These nations were our allies, but against those nations we waged war. 5. The enemy came secretly out of the forest and were suddenly seen in the rear. Besides, the cavalry of the enemy made an attack from the front. 6. Having been killed by a dart, he fell from the ship into the water. 7. We were freed by brave men from foreign power. 8. He was praised by Caesar on account of his very great courage and faithfulness. 9. The encumbered soldiers were being killed by the cavalry of the enemy. 10. The soldiers, hindered by the nature of the place, withdrew. 11. The camp was empty. For the soldiers, alarmed by the speech of the chief, had withdrawn

into the province. 12. We shall ward off the enemy from these cities and fields. They shall never seize these fields and these cities. 13. The cavalry of the enemy were hindering our column. The leaders of the enemy therefore approved this manner of war. But we warded off their attacks.

**EXERCISE 360**

[Essential Formal Review of Unit Nine]

1. How do you find the perfect participle passive?
2. Explain the meaning of these phrases: milites impediti; agmen impeditum; loca impedita.
3. How may hic, haec, hoc be used?
4. Explain the difference between ex, de, ab.
5. When are a and e used for ab and ex?
6. Explain the uses of ille and is.
7. Give the rule for the ablative of separation. Give examples.

**Vēritas vos liberabit.**

**—John 8:32**

## UNIT TEN

### LESSON 35: *POSSUM*; THE INFINITIVE IN NOUN CONSTRUCTIONS

#### 1. INDICATIVE OF *POSSUM*

**POSSUM**, *I am able, I can*, is a compound of *pote, able*, and **sum**, *I am*. The present tenses of the indicative are formed:

1. By prefixing *pos-* to any form of *sum* which begins with an *s* (\*•£., *Pos + sum = possum*).
2. By prefixing *pot-* to all other forms of *sum* (*e. g.*, *pot + eram = poteram*).

Now, without looking in the GRAMMAR, complete the conjugation of *possum*:

#### PRESENT

**possum**, *I am able, I can*  
**potes**, *you are able, you can*  
*etc.*

#### IMPERFECT

**poteram**, *Z was able, I could*  
*etc.*

#### FUTURE

**poterē**, *I shall be able*  
*etc.*

The perfect tenses are formed with the usual endings on the perfect stem, *potu-*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 399-401.

#### VOCABULARY

**possum, posse, potui, irreg., inir.** (*am able*)  
(*can*)

#### NOTE

*I am unable, etc.*, is *non possum, etc.*

## EXERCISE 361

*Translate:*

1. Potest. 2. Poteram. 3. Num possunt? 4. Nōn possum.  
 5. Potueram. 6. Poterit. 7. Poterunt. 8. Potuērunt. 9. Nōn poterant. 10. Quis poterat? 11. Potesne? 12. Possumus.  
 13. Potuistis. 14. Non potestis. 15. Nonne potuit?

**Gloria tibi, Domine!**

## EXERCISE 362

*Translate:*

1. I can. 2. He was unable. 3. They could. 4. Who was able?  
 5. He will be able. 6. They were unable. 7. Were they able?  
 8. We can. 9. I am unable. 10. They had been able. 11. We can't, can we? 12. We have been able. 13. They were able.  
 14. You are able, aren't you? 15. Why can't they? 16. He had been able. 17. Why was he unable? 18. You can't, can you?

## 2. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT, PREDICATE NOUN, AND OBJECT

The PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE is the SECOND principal part of regular active verbs (see GRAMMAR, NOS. 209, 219-221). Thus:

**Laudd, laudare, laudavī, laudatus, 1, tr. praise**

**Present Infinitive Active: LAUD-ARE *to praise***

The PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE is formed on the present stem. For the endings study GRAMMAR, NOS. 284, 292-294.

**Present Infinitive Passive: LAUD-ARI *to be praised***

The infinitive is a NEUTER VERBAL NOUN.

As a NOUN it is used as SUBJECT, PREDICATE NOUN, or OBJECT. The infinitive is always NEUTER.

As subject: Orare est bonum.

To pray is good (is a good thing).

As predicate noun: Labdrare est orare.

To work is to pray.

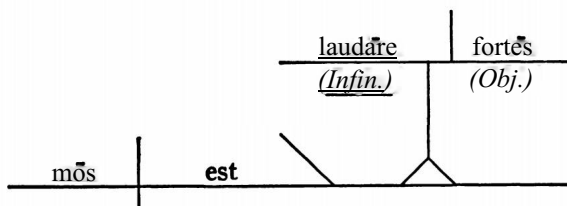
As object: Venire parant.

They prepare to come.

As a VERB the infinitive has TENSE, takes OBJECTS, and is modified by ADVERBS and ADVERBIAL PHRASES.

Infinitive with object: Mos est fortes laudare.

It is a custom to praise the brave.



Adverbial modifier: Fortiter pugnare possunt.

They can fight bravely.

Passive voice: Oppidum expugnari non potuit.

The town could not be taken by storm.

The PRESENT INFINITIVE, denoting another action of the same subject, COMPLETES the meaning of such verbs as possum, *am able, can*; contendō, *strive, hasten*; consuevi, *have become accustomed*.

**Redire** contendunt.

They hasten to return.

Galli se **defendere** non potuerunt.

The Gauls were unable to defend themselves.

Notice that in most cases the Latin construction is just like the English. After *can* the *to* of the English infinitive is not used. The infinitive, when used as subject or predicate noun, may also be translated by the English verbal noun in *-ing* or by a noun.

Orare est bonum. To pray (Prayer, praying) is good.

### VOCABULARY

possum, posse, potui, <i>irreg.</i> ; <i>w. infin.</i> j	\am able /can
adversus, a, um; <i>w. dat.</i>	/facing (towards) / unfavorable
proximus, a, um; <i>w. dat.</i>	f nearest / next
jam, <i>adv.</i>	■ /already /now (at that time)
primum, <i>adv.</i>	first

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Is it *possible* to fly to the moon? Penicillin is a *potent* drug. Meet your *adversary* fairly. Do men pray more in *adversity*? We must avoid *proximate* occasions of sin.

### RELATED LATIN WORDS

Primus; *ad* (versus means *having been turned*).

### REVIEW VOCABULARY

parō, I, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>w. infin.</i>	{ prepare get ready
timed, timerē, timui, 2, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>w. in fin.</i>	{ fear am afraid
parātus, a, um; <i>w. ad or infin.</i>	{ prepared (for ready
contendō, contendere, contend!, 3, <i>intr.</i> ; <i>w. infin.</i>	{ strive contend hasten



## NOTE

1. The *w. infin.* in the vocabularies indicates that these verbs and *parāſus* MAY, when the SENSE requires it, take an infinitive to complete their meaning. They may also take other constructions. For example, note the various uses of *paratus*:

Ad mortem paratī sūnt. *They are ready for death.*

Pugnare paratī sunt. *They are prepared to fight.*

Paratī sunt. *They are prepared.*

2. *Adversus*, *a*, *um* is frequently used with the plural of *rēs* to mean *adversity* (literally, *unfavorable things*).

*in rēbus adversis, in adversity*

## EXERCISE 363

1. Give the present infinitive active;
2. Give the present infinitive passive;

1. orō	5. audiō	9. timēd
2. retinēd	6. dēfendō	10. agō
3. complēd	7. vocō	11. tradō
4. incendō	8. vidēd	12. mūnīd

## EXERCISE 364

*Translate:*

1. Venire parant. 2. Peccatum est matrem non diligere. 3. Manere possunt. 4. Arma parare utile est. 5. Exspectare timuerunt. 6. Pervenire poterunt. 7. Roma defend! non potest. 8. Agros vastare parant. 9. Deum laudare sanctum est. 10. Castra defendere parati erant. 11. Galli pacari possunt. 12. Hiberna munire non potuerunt. 13. Impediri non potest. 14. Tutum est in castris manere. 15. Non est mos populi Romani obsides dare.

## EXERCISE 365

*Translate:*

1. They are prepared to yield. 2. It is difficult to storm a camp. 3. They cannot be freed. 4. It is easy to incite the Gauls

to war. 5. They are preparing to go away. 6. It is a sin not to love one's<sup>1</sup> father. 7. They are afraid to fight. 8. He strives to conquer the barbarians. 9. They are afraid to be seen. 10. It is difficult to fight in the mountains.

### WARNING!

THE INFINITIVE IS NOT USED IN CLASSICAL LATIN  
TO EXPRESS PURPOSE

*They prepare to wage war.*

(Infinitive as object)

**Bellum gerere parant.**

**BUT: *They prepare arms to wage war.***

(Purpose!)

**Arma parant ut bellum gerant**

### EXERCISE 366

[Essential]

/. *Translate;*

2. *Diagram Sentences 3, 6, and 9:*

1. Nonne omnes homines morare possunt? 2. Amicus certus in rebus adversis facile cerni potest. 3. Peccatum est contra amicos pugnare. 4. Propter loci naturam hostes adversi nobis consistere non potuerunt. 5. Hannibal, Caesar, Napoleon, magnas copias per montes difficiles et alios ducere potuerunt. 6. Galliam pacare difficile fuit. 7. Milites Americani! qui in Bataan erant, propter omnium rerum inopiam, impetus hostium diutius sustinere non jam poterant. 8. Caesar primum cum eis gentibus quae provinciae proximae erant bellum gessit, turn in omnes partes Galliae legatos legionesque misit ut eas etiam partes exploraret, cognosceret, vinceret. 9. In rebus adversis non facile est fortiter pugnare. 10. Possumusne nos Americani! fines nostros ab omnibus

<sup>1</sup> Do not translate *onds*.

hostibus dēfendere et eds ex finibus nostris pellere? 11. Caesar diū in finēs hostium contendit, turn cōstitit ut novās exspectāret cōpiās. 12. Americani et Britanni in earn partem Galliae quae adversa Britanniae est magnum exercitum tradūcere potuerunt. 13. Sanctum est Deum laudare atque diligere. 14. Primum Japonēs Americanōs propter inopiam eārum rerum quae ad bellum pertinent premere atque proelid pellere potuerunt. 15. Germān! Gallis proximi erant, nam trāns flūmen Rhēnum incolēbant. Itaque agros Galldrum facile vastare poterant.

## EXERCISE 367

[Essential]

*Translate:*

The Americans and British were first able to lead a large army across into Sicily. The Germans had taken up positions opposite them. There was bitter fighting there. But the Germans were not able to withstand the attacks of the Americans and their allies. The Germans had not been able to learn what plan and what manner of battle had been approved by the Allies. And so they were unable to station troops and prepare fortifications. They yielded; and the Allies conquered them. Then the Allies quickly led their forces across into Italy. They made an attack on the Germans both from the front and from the rear. They were able to seize a large part of Italy. After many battles they were able to take Rome. The Germans were now unable to withstand the forces of the Allies and they sought safety in flight. They hastened to those parts of Italy which are nearest the Alps. These places they fortified and there awaited the attack of the Allies.

## SENTENTIAE SELECTAE

1. Habere nōn potest Deum patrem qui ecclēsiam<sup>1</sup> nōn habet mātrem. (*St. Cyprian.*)
2. Amici probantur rebūs adversis. (*Proverb.*)
3. Sine virtutē amicitia esse non potest. (*Cicero.*)

---

<sup>1</sup> ecclēsia, ae: church.

4. Sine virtute nihil laudari potest. (*Adapted from Cicero.*)
5. Malum est consilium quod mutari<sup>1</sup> non potest. (*Publius Syrus.*)
6. Fortis cadere potest, cedere non potest. (*Proverb.*)
7. Sanctus Joannes, "Qui enim," inquit, "non diligit fratrem suum quem videt, Deum, quem non videt, quomodo<sup>1 2</sup> potest diligere? Et hoc mandatum<sup>3</sup> habemus a Deo: ut<sup>4</sup> qui diligit Deum, diligat et<sup>5 7</sup> fratrem suum."

## READING NO. 26

## DE REGIBUS SANCTIS

Possuntne etiam reges sancti esse? Reges qui imperium et regnum obtinent saepe agrorum alienandum cupidi sunt; saepe gloria belli incitati magnos exercitus contra gentes et reges proximos ducunt. Saepe etiam fratres suos timent atque occidunt ne regnum suum armis occupent. Reges tamen sancti esse possunt. Potuit enim Sanctus Stephanus® et regnum obtinere et bella gerere et tamen Deum diligere. Stephanus rex fuit Hungariae et populum suum fidem Christianam docuit.

Olim<sup>T</sup> venit homo quidam<sup>8 9</sup> ad Stephanum ut eum occideret. Nox erat et Stephanus dormiebat.® Cum ille ad regem appropinquaret, gladius subito ex manu cecidit. Stephanus, cum consilium illius cognovisset, neque commotus neque perturbatus, "Si<sup>10 11</sup> Deus mecum est," inquit, "quis contra me erit?"

Praeterea Wenceslaus,<sup>11</sup> Rex Bohemiae, et sanctus et rex esse potuit. Olim<sup>T</sup> Ratislaus, dux gentis finitimae, bellum contra

<sup>1</sup>mutari, tr.: change (ci. mutability).

<sup>2</sup>quomodo, adv.: how.

<sup>3</sup>mandatum, i: command (ci. mandate).

<sup>4</sup>Translate ut by that . . . should.

<sup>5</sup>Et here means also.

•The Feast of St. Stephen of Hungary is celebrated on September 2.

<sup>7</sup>olim, adv.: once.

<sup>8</sup>quidam (modifies homo): a certain.

<sup>9</sup>dormid, 4, intr.: sleep.

<sup>10</sup>si: if.

<sup>11</sup>The Feast of St. Wenceslaus of Bohemia is celebrated on September 28.



GLADIUS EX MANU CECIDIT.

Wenceslāum gerebat. Cupidus enim erat rēgni Bohemiae. Wenceslāus lēgātōs ad eum misit qui dē pāce et amicitia agerent. Tamen amicitiam cōfirmāre nōn potuit. Itaque contrā illum cum omnibus cōpiis contendit. Cum jam hostibus appropinquāret, Wenceslāus, nē caedēs esset, dē novā belli ratiōne agēbat. (*Here Wenceslaus proposed that the two kings settle the war by single combat in order to save their soldiers' lives. Ratislaus accepted.*) Itaque rēgēs inter exercitūs cōstitērunt ut inter sē pugnārent. Sed Ratislāus tēlum in sāctum Wenceslāum mittere nōn potuit. Itaque, grātia Dei victus, amicitiam cum ed cōfirmāvit. Ita servātae sunt et militum vitae et regnū Bohemiae.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE OF *POSSUM*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive of *possum* in GRAMMAR, NOS. 411-412. Note that the present subjunctive follows the rule given on page 351 of FIRST YEAR LATIN, while the imperfect subjunctive follows the rule given in Lesson 23, page 235.

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of *possum* are formed regularly on the perfect stem, *potu-*.

## VOCABULARY

<i>cōstituo, cōstituere, constīl, constītūtus</i> , 3, tr.; w. <i>infin.</i>	{ place { set up { decide { determine
<i>cōsuevī, cōsuetū</i> , 3, tr. and intr.; w. <i>infin.</i>	{ have accustomed { have become accustomed { am accustomed
<i>sententia</i> , ac	{ opinion { vote
<i>regid, regiō</i>	region
<i>omnīnō</i> , adv.	{ at all (with negatives { like <i>non</i> ) { altogether { in all (with numerals)

## NOTE

1. *Cōstituo*, of course, takes an infinitive only when the SEQUENCE requires it.

*In montēs contendere cōstituit. He determined to hasten into the mountains.*

*Militēs in colie constīluit. He placed the soldiers on the hill.*

2. The present tenses of *cōsuevī* are not common. Hence Only the perfect indicative active and the perfect participle passive are given. But note that the perfect can have a PRESENT meaning and the pluperfect can have a PERFECT meaning:

<b>cōnsuevī</b>	intransitive	<i>I have become accustomed=</i> <i>/ am accustomed</i>
	transitive	<i>I have accustomed</i>
<b>cōnsueveram</b>	intransitive	<i>I had become accustomed -</i>
	transitive	<i>I was accustomed</i> <i>I had accustomed</i>

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Let us defend the *Constitution* of the United States. The judge passes *sentence*; the jury merely determines the fact of the crime. Webster was a *sententious* writer.

Ab omni peccatō,  
Libera nōs, Domine!

## EXERCISE 368

[Drill on Forms of Possum]

*Change the persons in each sentence and translate:*

1. Arma parō ut hostes vincere possim.  
Arma parās ut hostes vincere possis, *etc.*
2. Arma parāvi ut hostes vincere possem, *etc.*
3. Quaerō num hostes vincere possim, *etc.*
4. Quaerō num hostes vincere potuerim, *etc.*
5. Quaesivi num hostes vincere possem, *etc.*
6. Quaesivi num hostes vincere potuissem, *etc.*

## EXERCISE 369

*Translate:*

1. Caesar militēs ad flūmen cōstituit quō facilius pontem dēfendere possent. 2. Rogāvit quantas cōpiās ex eis regiōnibus cōgere posset. 3. Rēx sententiam suam lēgātis ostendere cōstituit. 4. Lēgātus cōpiās novās exspectāre cōstituit nē barbari sē superāre possent. 5. Rogo num Caesar Gallos vincere potuerit.

6. Galli, cum per prōvinciam cōpiās suās dūcere nōn potuissent, per loca impedita atque angusta eas ducere cōstituerunt. 7. Caesar, cum illas regiōnēs vastāre nōn potuisset, legiōnēs trāns flūmen in prōvinciam dēdūcere cōstituit. 8. Rogo quis hoc helium fortiter administrāre possit. 9. Rogāvit num equitēs eās regiōnēs cognōscere possent. 10. Rōmāni obsideſ dare nōn cōsuēverant. 11. Militeſ Rōmāni se suaque signa hostibus dēdere nōn cōsuēverant. 12. Militeſ Americaſ! omneſ hostēſ vincere cōsuēverunt. 13. Legatus custodeſ ibi cōstituet ne hostēſ eās regiōnēs explorāre possint.

## EXERCISE 370

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. He asked whether Columbus was able to get ready three ships in all. 2. The lieutenant placed guards there lest the barbarians might be able to reconnoiter those regions. 3. In all there are ten<sup>1</sup> commandments<sup>2</sup> of God. 4. Americans were asking why we were not at all able to send help to our soldiers then. 5. "We," said the Roman leader, "are not at all accustomed to give hostages." 6. We often ask why the Gauls were not at all able to withstand the attack of the Romans. 7. He asked whether they were able to learn the opinion of the Senate. "For," he said, "I have decided not to wage this war against the authority of the Senate." 8. He asked whether this man had been freed by many votes. 9. Saints were accustomed to pray often that they might be able more easily to keep the faith and to love God. 10. Caesar had determined to reconnoiter and conquer all the regions of Gaul. First therefore he waged war with those tribes which are next to the Roman province lest they might be able to make<sup>3</sup> an attack upon him from the rear. Then he waged war with the rest of the tribes, and, after many battles and great slaughter, he was able to pacify and hold all Gaul.

<sup>1</sup> *ten*: decern, indecl. adj.<sup>2</sup> *commandment*: mandatūm, i.<sup>3</sup> *to make*: facere.



## 4. THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

Since the infinitive is a VERB it may also have a subject.

**THE SUBJECT OF AN INFINITIVE IS IN THE  
ACCUSATIVE CASE.**

When the sense requires it, the infinitive as object, subject, and predicate noun may have a subject accusative:

**Malum est homines in̄ter se puḡnare.**

*It is a bad thing that men fight among themselves.*

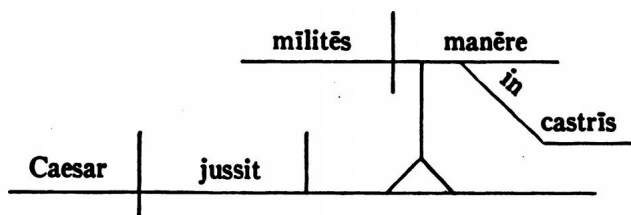
*It is bad for men to fight among themselves.*

An infinitive with accusative subject is regularly used with certain verbs; for example:

1. Jubeo, *I order, I command* is often followed by an infinitive with subject in the accusative case:

**Caesar milites in̄ castris manere jussit.**

*Caesar ordered the soldiers to remain in the camp.*



2. Oportet, *it behooves* may be followed by an infinitive:

**Oportet te Deum diligere.**

*It behooves you to love God.*

*In better English, It is necessary that you love God.*

**Oportet nos bonos esse.**

*It is necessary that we be good.*

*We ought to be good.*

## VOCABULARY

jubed, jubere, jussi, jussus, 2, tr.; acc. w. infin.

oportet, oportere, oportuit, 2, intr.; acc. w. infin.<sup>1</sup>

timor, timoris

*order*  
*command*  
*it behooves*  
*fear*

## NOTE

1. It is very difficult to translate oportet into good English. Various English idioms may be used:

*You ought to love God.*

*It is proper for you to love God.*

*You should love God.*

In translating oportet always try to find a good English expression for the IDEA or MEANING of the Latin sentence.

2. Jubed, in the passive, is used just as in English.

Lēgati convenire jussi sunt.

*The lieutenants were ordered to come together.*

Lēgatus milites ducere jussus est.

*The lieutenant was ordered to lead the soldiers.*

3. A predicate adjective after the INFINITIVE agrees with the word, expressed or understood, to which it REFERS.

Oportet milites esse paratos.

*It behooves soldiers to be prepared.*

Dux militem esse para turn jussi t.

*The leader ordered the soldier to be prepared.*

Pueri boni esse jussi sunt.

*The boys were commanded to be good.*

Mater esse fortis potest.

*A mother can be brave.*

<sup>1</sup> In translating use *it is proper; should; it is necessary, etc.*

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

We have studied the *jussive* subjunctive. A *timorous* person will not be a good soldier.

## RELATED LATIN WORD

## Timed

## EXERCISE 371

*Translate:*

(First translate literally; then into *good* English.)

1. Oportet te matrem defendere. 2. Oportet te orare. 3. Oportet vos omnes Deum diligere. 4. Oportet nos legem Christi servare. 5. Oportet omnes homines Christum diligere.

In hora mortis meae voca me,  
Et jube me venire ad te,  
Ut cum sanctis tuis laudem te  
In saecula saeculorum. Amen.

—From the *Anima Christi*

## EXERCISE 372

*Translate:*

1. Caesar legatum manere jussit. 2. Legatus milites convenire jussit. 3. Caesar obsides occidi jussit. 4. Galli Caesarem excēdere<sup>1</sup> jusserunt. 5. Imperator milites se defendere jussit. 6. Tribuni militum in acie manere jussi sunt. 7. Hostes se dēdere jussi sunt. 8. Nos sancti esse a Christo jussi sumus. 9. Pueri matres diligere a Deo jussi sunt. 10. Fortis esse jussus sum.

## EXERCISE 373

*Translate:*

1. It behooves us to help our friends. 2. Christ commanded us to pray always. 3. It behooves us to preserve our lives. 4. Caesar ordered the soldiers to burn the crops. 5. It behooves

<sup>1</sup>excēdo, excēdere, excesrf, excessum, 3, intr.: depart.

us to call upon God. 6. He ordered them to reconnoiter the forest. 7. The slave was commanded to be good. 8. We were commanded by Christ to pray always. 9. The soldiers were ordered to burn the crops. 10. They were ordered to reconnoiter the forest. 11. It behooves us to love our mothers. 12. It behooves Americans to defend their republic. 13. Lincoln ordered the Americans to free their slaves. 14. The chiefs were ordered to depart. 15. The barbarians were ordered to surrender.

## EXERCISE 374

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Militēs Rōmāni, timōre perturbāti, nōn saepe salūtem fugā petiverunt, attamen<sup>1</sup> Caesar semper eos in aciē manēre iussit. Oportuit enim eos semper virtutem Rōmānā memoria tenere.

2. Christus nōs et Deum diligere et omnēs hominēs adjuvāre iussit. Itaque oportet nos omnes hanc legem servare.

3. American! numquam bellī cupidi erant sed, cum propter injūrias graves pugnāre atque rem publicam defendere jussi essent, sine timore aut morā fortiter bellum cum Japōnibus gesserunt. Oportet nōs virtutem militum nostrorum et res ab eis gestas memoriā semper tenerē.

4. Dux, cum in agrōs alienos milites deduceret, primum equites omnia loca explorāre iussit nē in loca impedita atque angusta legionēs dūceret. Oportuit enim ducem vitas militum suorum defendere atque conservare.

## EXERCISE 375

*Translate:*

(Use oportet in each sentence.)

1. We should all love God. 2. It is proper for soldiers to fight without fear. 3. It is necessary for you to pray often. 4. We must remember the victories of our fathers. 5. It is right for Americans to defend their state.

---

<sup>1</sup>attamen: *but nevertheless*.

## READING NO. 27

## DE LEGIÖNE THEBAIA

This is the story of a heroic band of Christian Roman soldiers who were put to death for the faith by their own commander, the Emperor Maximian.<sup>1</sup> They had been recruited in northern Egypt around the city of Thebes (hence they were called the Theban Legion), but were martyred in Gaul near Lake Geneva, probably about A. D. 287.

Turn in exercitū Rōmānō erat legiō quae Thebaia vocābatur. In hāc legiōne omnes milites centurionesque Christiani erant. Erat autem eō tempore<sup>2</sup> bellum in Galliā. Itaque Maximianus, qui cum Diocletiano imperium obtinebat, legiones ex omnibus provinciis in Galliam misit ut contra eas gentes quae cum Rōmanis bellum gerēbant pugnarent. Maximianus autem vir bonus nōn erat atque multos Christianos propter nomen fidemque Christi occiderat. Itaque, cum ea legiō in Galliam venisset, Maximianus eam etiam Christianos occidere iussit. Milites verb ejus legiōnis, Christiani fortes et nobiles, quae imperator jusserat nōn fecerunt. Itaque Maximianus, vehementer hac re commotus, decimum quemque<sup>3</sup> militem occidi iussit. Post hanc caedem autem milites imperia imperatoris nōn fecerunt neque tamen contra eum pugnaverunt. Parati enim erant pro fide Christiana et pro Christo Rege occidi, at milites Rōmani erant qui contra Imperatorem Rōmanum armis nōn pugnabant. Maximianus autem rursus<sup>4</sup> decimum quemque<sup>3</sup> militem occidi iussit. Post hanc alteram<sup>5</sup> caedem, Sanctus Mauricius, qui in ea legiōne centurio erat, litteras ad Maximianum misit:

<sup>1</sup> This account is based on the record left by St. Eucherius, Bishop of Lyons. Two reasons are given for the martyrdom of these Christian soldiers. St. Eucherius says that they were martyred for refusing to execute condemned Christians; another account relates that they refused to offer sacrifice before battle. The number of those martyred has been doubted.

<sup>2</sup> eō tempore: *at that time*.

<sup>3</sup> decimum quemque: *every tenth* (agrees with militem).

<sup>4</sup> rursus, adv.: *again*.

<sup>5</sup> alter, altera, alterum: *other, second*.

“Militeſ sumus, imperator, tui, sed servi tamen Dei veri. Pro te pugnāmus, te defendimus; nam imperator es noster, et tū nobis et frumentum et praemia periculorum nostrorum dās. Deus autem nobis grātiā dat atque vitam aeternā. Itaque Deum, et nostrum et, imperator, tuum relinquere nōn possumus. In hac re gravi imperia tua nōn faciēmus. Fideſ nostra enim prohibet. Si<sup>1</sup> contra hosteſ pugnāre jusseris, si<sup>1</sup> laboreſ atque doloreſ, si<sup>1</sup> impetum barbarum sustinere jusseris, si<sup>1</sup> urbeſ hostium oppugnāre et agros vastare jusseris, pugnābimus, sustinēbimus, oppugnābimus, vastābimus. Christianoſ autem, etiam a te, imperator, jussi, occidere nōn possumus. Jam ex nobis multoſ viroſ bonos et forteſ propter Christum occidisti, tamen contra te nōn pugnāvimus. Ecce<sup>2</sup> enim arma tenēmus et nōn nōs defendimus. Parati sumus omneſ ad mortem, neque propter metum mortis Christum relinqueſ. Deum Patrem, regem omnium, et Filium ejus, Jeſum Christum, Deum adorāmus. Christianoſ gladiis occidere nōn possumus!”

Maximianus vero, cum haec audivisset, vehementer commotus, illoſ omneſ statim occidere constituit. Itaque omneſ ejus legionis militeſ centurioneſque ad mortem dūci jussit. Reliqui militeſ, qui Christiani nōn erant, eoſ gladiis occiderunt atque ita eoſ sanctoſ Dei in Caelum ad Deum miserunt. Postea omneſ Christiani eorum mortem memoriā tenebant et semper tenēbunt. Nonne nōs etiam eoſ laudamus? Nam et militeſ forteſ et Christiani! forteſ erant.

Omneſ sancti martyreſ,<sup>3</sup> orate pro nobiſ.

<sup>1</sup>si, *co\*j.*: *if*.

<sup>2</sup>ecce: *behold*.

<sup>3</sup>martyr, *martyris*: *martyr* (one who has died for the faith).

## MOMENTS AT MASS NO. 5

## AT THE SANCTUS

After reciting the "secret" prayers, the priest says in a loud voice: "... per omnia saecula saeculorum."

SERVER. Amen.

PRIEST. Dominus vobiscum.

SERVER. Et cum spiritu tuo.

PRIEST. Sursum corda.<sup>1</sup>

SERVER. Habemus ad Dominum.

PRIEST. Gratias agamus Domini Deo nostro.

SERVER. Dignum<sup>2</sup> et justum<sup>3</sup> est.

*(The priest then reads the Preface and, bowing, says:)*

PRIEST. Sanctus, sanctus, sanctus *(the bells ring)*, Dominus Deus Sabaoth.<sup>4</sup> Pleni sunt caeli<sup>5</sup> et terra gloria tua. Hosanna<sup>6</sup> in excelsis.<sup>7</sup> Benedictus<sup>8</sup> qui venit in nomine Domini. Hosanna<sup>6</sup> in excelsis.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Sursum corda: *Lift up your hearts.*

<sup>2</sup> dignus, a, um: *worthy.*

<sup>3</sup> Justus, a, um: *right.*

<sup>4</sup> Sabaoth: a Hebrew word meaning *of Hosts.*

<sup>5</sup> In Christian Latin the plural of caelum is caeli, caelorum.

<sup>6</sup> Hosanna: a Hebrew cry of joy and exultation.

<sup>7</sup> in excelsis: *in the highest.*

<sup>8</sup> benedictus, a, um: *blessed.*

## LESSON 36: NUMERALS; IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

### 1. NUMERALS

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the cardinal numerals from **ūnus**, *one*, to **decern**, *ten*, and **centum**, *one hundred*, GRAMMAR, NO. 112. Learn the declension of **ūnus**, **duo**, and **treſ**, GRAMMAR, NOS. 114-116. Notice that **ūnus** is declined like **magnus** except in the GENITIVE and DATIVE. **Treſ** is declined like the plural of **gravis**, on the stem **tr-**.

### VOCABULARY

quot, indecl. adj,	how many?
aeternus, a, um	{ eternal everlasting
caput, capitis	head

### NOTE

*Indecl*, means that the adjective **quot** never changes its form, no matter what form the noun may be with which it agrees.

**Quot homineſ?** *How many men?*

**In quot urbibus?** *In how many cities?*

**Rogavit quot militeſ in caſtris eſſent.**

*He asked how many soldiers were in the camp.*

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Washington is the *capital* of the United States. In arithmetical division which number is called the *quotient*? Many men were *decapitated* during the French Revolution.

**Fili Dei, tē rogāmus, audi noſ!**



## EXERCISE 376

[Drill on Forms]

*Translate:*

1. With three legions. 2. After two battles. 3. In five cities.
4. Without ten legions. 5. Into two cities. 6. With one general.
7. After three victories. 8. After the slaughter of a hundred hostages. 9. Across two rivers. 10. After the death of these three men. 11. On behalf of one king. 12. By one man. 13. By means of five darts. 14. On account of the courage of one man.
15. Concerning the safety of three hostages. 16. Through two provinces. 17. Out of three cities. 18. On account of one sin.
19. To one man (*dative*). 20. To two chiefs (*dative*).

Roma—Caput Mundi

## EXERCISE 377

*Respondē Latine:*

1. Quot sunt quinque et quattuor?
2. Quot sunt unū et quattuor?
3. Quot sunt sex et unū ?
4. Quot sunt quinque et unū ?
5. Quot sunt quattuor et quattuor?
6. Quot sunt sex et quattuor ?
7. Quot sunt duo et unū?
8. Quot capita habet homo ?
9. Quot manus habet homo ?
10. Quot corpora habet homo ?
11. Quot mentes habet homo ?

## EXERCISE 378

*Translate:*

1. "Audi, Israël, Deus tuus Deus unus est." (*From the Old Testament.*)
2. Unī Deo sit glōria aeterna.
3. Virtūte unius viri fortis

rēs pūblica saepe cōservātur. 4. In ūnō vir d salūs commūnis saepe posita est. 5. Per ūnum hominem, Jēsū Christum, salūtem et vitam aeternam habēmus. 6. Duo sācti, Petrus et Paulus, eds qui urbem Rōmam incolēbant fidem Christiānam docuerunt. 7. Christus cum dudbus hominibus mails ad mortem ductus est. 8. Nōmina duōrum virdrum, Washingtonii qui rem pūblicam nostram cōstituit atque Lincoln qui eam cōstitutam cōservāvit, memoriā semper tenēbuntur. 9. Trēs Persōnās,<sup>1</sup> Patrem et Filium et Spiritum Sāctum, in ūnō Deō adōrāmus. 10. Christiānus verus his tribus virtutibus, fide,<sup>2</sup> spe,<sup>3</sup> caritatē,<sup>2</sup> \* cerni potest. 11. Homo unū caput sed duas manūs habet.

## EXERCISE 379

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Through the death of one man, Jesus Christ, we have been freed from the danger of eternal death. 2. In what great and renowned city were there seven hills? 3. We Christians adore the five wounds of Jesus Christ, our Lord and God. 4. A centurion is so called because he leads a hundred men. 5. How many are four and six? 6. There are ten commandments<sup>8</sup> of God. 7. There are eight beatitudes.<sup>4</sup> 8. There are seven gifts<sup>5</sup> of the Holy Spirit.

## SENTENTIA SĀCTI PĀULI

“Ūnus Dominus, ūna fidēs, ūnum baptisma,<sup>6</sup> ūnus Deus et Pater omnium, qui est super<sup>7</sup> omneś et per omnia et in omnibus nobis.”

---

<sup>1</sup> persōna, ae: *person*.

<sup>2</sup> cāritās, caritatis: *charity*.

<sup>8</sup> commandment: mandatū, i. \*

<sup>4</sup> beatitude: beatitudo, beatitudinis.

<sup>5</sup> gift: donum, i.

<sup>6</sup> baptisma, baptismatis, n.: *baptism*.

<sup>7</sup> super, prep, w. acc.: *above*.



## MOMENTS AT MASS NO. 6

## THE LAST BLESSING

**Benedicat<sup>1</sup> vos omnipotens<sup>2</sup> Deus, Pater et Filius et Sp<sup>s</sup> Trinitus  
Sanctus. Amen.**

---

<sup>1</sup> benedicō, benedicere, benedixi, benedictus, 3, *tr.*: *bless.*

<sup>2</sup> omnipotēns (an adjective modifying Deus): *almighty.*

## 2. ADJECTIVES WITH IRREGULAR ENDINGS IN THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE SINGULAR

All the adjectives in the vocabulary are like *unus* in the genitive and dative singular.

### VOCABULARY

<b>alius, alia, aliud</b>	<i>other</i> (another (of more than two))
<b>alter, altera, alterum<sup>1</sup></b>	<i>(the one</i> <i>the other</i> (of two))
<b>uter, utra, utrum<sup>2</sup></b>	<i>which?</i> (of two)
<b>neuter, neutra, neutrum<sup>2</sup></b>	<i>neither</i> (of two)
<b>ullus, a, urn<sup>3</sup></b>	<i>any</i>
<b>nullus, a, urn<sup>3</sup></b>	<i>(no</i> <i>none</i> )
<b>solus, a, urn<sup>3</sup></b>	<i>(alone</i> <i>only</i> (as adjective))
<b>totus, a, um<sup>3</sup></b>	<i>(whole</i> <i>all of</i>  <i>the whole of</i> )

### NOTE

When *totus* modifies the ablative of a noun indicating *place* *where*, *in* is not used.

**tōtā urbe, in the whole city**  
**tōds castris, in the whole camp**  
**tōtā acie, in the whole battle line**

The only forms you have to learn for these adjectives are the genitive and dative singular, and for *alius*, that the nominative and accusative neuter singular is *aliud*. All the rest you know already.

<sup>1</sup> Like *liber* except in genitive and dative singular.

<sup>2</sup> Like *integer* except in genitive and dative singular.

<sup>3</sup> Like *magnus* except in genitive and dative singular.

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A marriage performed for Catholics by a justice of the peace is *nidi* and void. What do you mean by *total* war? The *total* number of conversions each year in the United States has been steadily growing. An infinitive in Latin is always *neuter*. Circumstances *alter* cases. There have been many saints who lived as *solitaries*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 84-88, 822-828.

MA TER BONI CONSILII,  
ORA PRO NOBIS!

## EXERCISE 380

[Drill]

*Translate:*

(Use the dative for all ^-phrases.)

1. Of another king. 2. Of the other centurion. 3. To another tribe. 4. To all Italy. 5. Of God alone. 6. To no men. 7. Not of any kingdom. 8. To this republic alone. 9. Of only this man. 10. To no mother. 11. Of no soldier. 12. Of all Gaul. 13. To the whole army. 14. Of another victory. 15. Of this boy alone. 16. Of the whole people.

## EXERCISE 381

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Aliam viam habemus nullam. 2. Soli Deo, Regi Caeli et terrae, sit gloria. 3. Gallis, cum per provinciam copias ducere pararent, Caesar respondit: "More populi Romani iter per provinciam nulli dare possum." 4. Neque ullus metus neque ullum periculum milites nostros terret. 5. Cum hiberna oppugnata essent, Caesar, litteris de ea re doctus, sine ulla mora milites

statim deduxit ut sudis adjuvaret. 6. Barbari edes solos laudant qui fortiter pugnare possunt. 7. Washingtonium et Lincoln omnes Americani! memoria tenent. Alter enim rem publicam nostram constituit, alter eam in belli periculis conservavit. 8. Caesar et cum Gallis et cum Germanis bellum gessit. Alter! enim se contra eum defendebant, alter! autem agros alienos vastare consueverant. 9. In proelio alii felles, alii autem gladiis occiduntur. 10. Alii gloriae causam bellum gerunt, alii verbum salutis causam. 11. Alii alios imperatores laudant. 12. Alii alias sententias probant. 13. Impedimenta totius exercitus in unum locum mitti iussit. 14. Totum montem hominibus compleri iussit. 15. Caesar imperium totius Galliae obtinebat. 16. Cum hostium clamor auditus esset, milites totius castris perturbati sunt atque alius ex alio causam clamoris quaesivit.

## EXERCISE 382

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. The bodies of some were in the camp; the bodies of others were in the forest. 2. Some praised Caesar; others praised Hannibal. 3. Two men taught those who inhabited Rome the Christian faith. The one was Peter; the other was Paul. 4. Caesar and Hannibal were very great generals. The one conquered the whole of Gaul; the other was conquered by the Romans. 5. Caesar alone conquered all Gaul. 6. They determined to attack the town without any delay. 7. Some are eager for war; others are eager for peace. 8. No soldiers were left in the camp. 9. We praise America; others praise other nations. 10. Caesar often thanked his whole army. 11. Lee and Grant were very great generals. The one conquered; the other was conquered. 12. Isn't Rome the glory of all Italy? 13. Let us surrender to no enemy. 14. Christ alone is the King of all men. 15. There were two leading men in this tribe. The one was a friend of Caesar and the Roman Senate; the other was not. 16. Caesar was not accustomed to give hostages to any chief. 17. Some are afraid

to fight; others are always ready to fight. 18. He seized the fields of another man. 19. The chiefs of all Gaul were conquered by Caesar. 20. Some approve one plan; others another. 21. There were two Ciceros, of whom one was in Caesar's army, the other was in the Senate. 22. Some praise one nation; others another.

### MOMENTS AT MASS NO. 7

As the priest places the Host on the tongue of the communicant, he prays:

**Corpus Domini nos tri Jesū Christi custodiāt<sup>1</sup> animam<sup>2</sup> tuam  
in vitam aeternam.**

### READING NO. 28

#### DE SANCŬ TRINITATE<sup>3</sup>

Alia est enim persōna<sup>4</sup> Patris, alia Filii, alia Spiritūs Sancti, sed Patris et Filii et Spiritūs Sancti ūna est divinitas.<sup>5</sup> . . . Aeternus Pater, aeternus Filius, aeternus Spiritus Sanctus; et tamen nōn trēs aeterni sed ūnus aeternus. . . . Ita Deus Pater, Deus Filius, Deus Spiritus Sanctus, et tamen nōn trēs Dei sed ūnus est Deus. Ita Dominus Pater, Dominus Filius, Dominus Spiritus Sanctus; et tamen nōn trēs Domini sed ūnus est Dominus. . . . Ūnus ergō<sup>6</sup> Pater, nōn trēs Patrēs; ūnus Filius, nōn trēs Filii; ūnus Spiritus Sanctus, nōn trēs Spiritūs Sancti. (*From the Creed "Quicumque," called the Athanasian Creed; composed in the fifth century, possibly in Spain.*)

<sup>1</sup> custōdiō, 4, tr.: guard, keep (cf. custos). "

<sup>2</sup> anima, ae: soul.

<sup>3</sup>Trinitas, Trinitatis: Trinity.

<sup>4</sup>persōna, ae: person.

<sup>5</sup>divinitas, divinitatis: divinity.

<sup>6</sup>ergō, adv.: therefore.

## SENTENTIA CHRISTI

Christus, "Unus," inquit, "est enim Pater vester, qui in caellis est"

## NOTE ON TRANSLATION

*Res*, as is clear from its meaning, is a very general word. It is used in Latin in many contexts where we would use in English a more specific or definite word. For example:

**Illud ad rem non pertinet. *That does not pertain to the subject.***

Avoid, as much as possible, translating *res* by *thing*. Try to find a good English word that fits the context. In this exercise choose from the list given the best English word to translate the italicized word or words in each Latin sentence:

ENGLISH WORDS: *matter; reason; new deal or revolution; circumstance; affair, subject.*

EXAMPLE: Illud ad rem non pertinet. *That does not pertain to the subject.*

1. Quā *re* (abl. of cause) eum occidisti ?
2. Galli *rerum* novdrum cupidi erant.
3. Si<sup>1</sup> *res* cogit, oportet hominem se etiam armis defendere.
4. Legatus Caesarem de totā *re* docuit.
5. Principes de *re* gravi agebant.

## READING NO. 29

## DE PACE AC BELLO

Pacem omnes homines laudant et petunt, at tamen nulla est pax.

Hannibal per Galliam trans flumina lata et montes altos copias duxit ut in Italia cum Romanis bellum gereret. Milites ejus labdres atque dolores graves sustinebant; multi ex eis in montibus difficilibus cadebant, multi ex eis occisi sunt. Ille tamen

---

<sup>1</sup> ut: if.





NAPOLEON

neque cōstitit neque pācis causā lēgātōs ad Rōmānōs misit, nam cōstituerat et Rōmānōs vincere et Rōmam occupāre. Diū cum Rōmānis proeliis contendit, tandem vēr̄b proeliō pulsus est atque victus.

Postea Rōmāni cum Gallis et omnibus ferē gentibus finitimis bella gesserunt. Illi, belli glōriā adducti, hōs virtūte et armis superāverunt atque vicērunt. Itaque diū imperium totius Italiae atque multarū gentium aliarū obtinebant.

Turn barbari, victōriae spē adducti, in urbēs et prōvinciās Rōmānās vēnerunt ut omnia vastārent atque occupārent. Post id multa alia bella in Europā gērebantur.

Napoleon, vir magnus et fortis, qui rēgnum in Galliā occupāverat, imperii atque glōriae spē adductus, totam Eurōpam vincere atque tenēre cōstituit. Itaque ille in omnēs gentēs et civitatēs Galliae finitimas exercitūs dūxit ut eōrum imperium obtinēret. Diū omnēs proeliis pepulit et bellis vicit. Magnus

hominum numerus occisus est; graveſ dolōrēſ ab omnibus sustinēbantur. Ille verō etiam virtute et armis victus est.

Post illud imperator alius, nōmine Hitler, vir glōriae et rēgni cupidus, tōtam Eurōpam vastavit atque armis vicit. Ille diū tōtius ferē Eurōpae imperium tenuit sed nunc victus est cum omnibus sociis ejus.

Nūlla est pāx. Omnēs tamen hominēs boni pācem petunt atque laudant. Bella tamen, "horrida<sup>1</sup> bella," semper geruntur. Cū nōn possumus amicitiam et pācem et fidem inter omnēs populōs cōfirmāre? Nōne bonum est in pāce esse? Nōne sāctum est aliōs adjuvāre? Nōne Christianū est omneſ homineſ inter sē diligere? Christus enim, "Vōs omneſ," inquit, "fratres estis." At malum est fratres fratres occidere. Et rursus Christus, "Dilige," inquit, "Deum ex tōtō animo tuo et proximum tuum sicut teipsum."<sup>2</sup> Illi autem qui omneſ diligunt neque cum aliis pugnant neque aliōs occidunt. Deus, Rex Caeli et terrae, "Diligite," inquit, "pācem et veritatem." Bonum et sāctum est pācem et diligere et servāre. Sanctus Paulus, "Alter," inquit, "alterius onera<sup>3</sup> portāte." Christianū est enim aliōs adjuvāre. Tamtu, sicut cognovistis, nullā est pax.

Cū hominēs, timōre mortis et belli periculis vehementer commōti, bellum tamen gerunt, agrōs vastant, hostēs occidunt, urbēs expugnant incenduntque? Alii agrōrum latōrum aliēndrum cupidi sunt. Alii spē glōriae ad bellum incitati sunt. Alii gentēs finitimās timent. Itaque bellum gerere cōstituērunt nē vincerentur. Alii, injūriis commōti, militeſ propter glōriam nōminis sui ad arma vocant.

Itaque, quod lēgēs Dei atque Christi nōn erant servātae, bella semper fuērunt, undique nunc sunt et semper erunt. Nōs tamen Christiani! pācem cōfirmemur, petamur, diligamur, conservemus:

Solus omnino est qui sine amico est. \*<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> horridus, a, um: *savage, wild*,

<sup>2</sup> teipsum: *thyself*.

<sup>9</sup> onus, oneris, n.: *burden*.

## UNIT ELEVEN

## LESSON 37: 40 VERBS; RULES FOR TIME

## 1. INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF 40 VERBS

There is a group of important verbs which have some forms like the third conjugation and some forms like the fourth conjugation. These verbs are called **-İÖ VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION**.

They can be distinguished by the endings of the first and second principal parts, which are always -io and -ere. Thus:

cap-IQ, cap-ERE<sub>y</sub>cepi,"captus, 3, tr. i f *take*  
[ *capture* ]

They follow a simple rule:

WHENEVER THE ENDING OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION BEGINS WITH TWO VOWELS, -IŌ VERBS USE THE ENDINGS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION ; OTHERWISE THEY USE THE ENDINGS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 311-314 (present system indicative). Note that the entire imperfect and future has the endings of the fourth conjugation.

The perfect tenses are formed, just like all the other verbs, on the perfect stem, *e. g.*, *cep-*, with the regular endings.

## VOCABULARY

**capiō, capere, cepī, captus, 3, tr.**

$$\begin{cases} \textit{take} \\ \textit{capture} \end{cases}$$

**fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugituruš, 3, tr.**

*flee*

**facid, facere, fecī, factus, 3, tr.**

$$\begin{cases} do \\ make \end{cases}$$

**voluntās, voluntatis**

$$\begin{cases} \text{good will} \\ \text{will} \end{cases}$$

## NOTE

1. Learn these special idioms:

- a. Iter facere, *to march.*

**Iter fecerunt.** *They marched (literally, made a journey.)*

- b. Consilium capere, *to make a plan.*

**Consilium novum ceperunt.** *They made a new plan.*

2. Remember that verbs of MAKING *may* take a direct object and a predicate accusative.

**Te regem fecimus.** *We made you king.*

3. With *tides*, *voluntas*, and similar words, in with the accusative means *towards*.

**Tua in me voluntas,** *your good will towards me.*

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *fugitive* hours. *Voluntary* contributions. We are impressed by *facts*. *Manufactured* goods. *Captives*.

## RELATED LATIN WORD

Fugā

**\*Jesu, rex gloriae, miserefe nobis!**

## EXERCISE 383

[Drill]

*Translate:*

1. Whom did they make king? 2. How great fortifications are they making? 3. Where did he march with all his forces? 4. Did he flee? 5. Who fled? 6. What plans will they make? 7. Where will they march from that place? 8. Why does he flee? 9. Did they take the city? 10. You won't flee before the battle, will you? 11. Has he made the bridge? 12. They didn't take Rome, did they? 13. Who will take that hill? 14. Hannibal, you will

never take Rome. 15. After the battle they fled in all directions.<sup>1</sup> 16. The leaders fled for the sake of safety. 17. Did they make him leader ? 18. They fled to the mountains, didn't they ? 19. The hostages also were fleeing. 20. Roman soldiers do not flee.

### EXERCISE 384

[Essential]

*Translate:*

#### 1. Dē Militibus

[Drill on the Present Tense]

Oportet militeſ forteſ et victōriae cupidus esse. Nam multōs labōrēſ et dolōrēſ gravēſ sustinent. Militeſ, ā duce ex castris dēducti, longa itinera faciunt. Castra pōnunt. In finēſ hostium dēducti, magnāſ mūnitiōnēſ celeriter faciunt. Militeſ, ā centuriōnibus in acie instructi, impetum in hosteſ faciunt. A duce jussi, collēſ et pontēſ capiunt. Militeſ qui forteſ sunt, ab hoste pressi, nōn fugiunt. Hosteſ vērō in fugam dant et cōpiam frūmenti et armdrum capiunt.

#### 2. De Militibūſ Rōmanis

[Drill on the Imperfect Tense]

Militeſ Rōmāni forteſ erant. Nōn saepe, timōre mōti, fugiēbant. Castra mūnita capiebant; urbeſ et mūrēſ et loci nātūrā mūnitaſ capiebant. Capiebant etiam multōs militēſ. Impetūſ fortiter et in acieſ et in equiſ faciebant. Longāſ magnāſque mūnitiōnēſ faciebant. Militeſ Rōmāni, ab imperātōre nōmine appellāti, propter suam in eum voluntātem ācriter et diū pugnābant. Itinera longa et per prōvinciāſ et per finēſ hostium faciebant. Militeſ Rōmāni saepe duceſ sudſ rēgēſ Rōmānōſ fecerunt.

#### 3. De Caesare Duce

[Drill on the Perfect Tense]

Caesar, dux fortis, bella fortiter administrāvit. Cōnsilia bona cēpit et magnāſ res gēssit. Urbeſ Galldrum cepit; magnāſ muni-

\* *directions: use partes.*



MILITES AMERICANI

tiōnēs fēcit; longa itinera et per silvās et per montēs fēcit. Numquam, aut tellis aut clāmōre territus, fūgit. Bonam in milītēs voluntātem habebat. Itaque ex militum sudrum caede saepe magnum dolōrem cēpit. Militeſ ab eō ducti propter ejus in sē voluntātem fortiter pugnaverunt. Militeſ propter suam in Caesarem voluntatem eum imperatōrē appellaverunt.

#### 4. De Militibus Amēricanis [Drill on the Future Tense]

Militeſ Amēricāni etiam forteſ sunt at belli nōn sunt cupidi. Pācem enim diligunt. Tamen, injūriis incitatī, et ācritē et fortiter bellum gerent. Itinera longa sine morā facient; cōpiam armdrum et telōrum parābunt. Urbeſ et portuſ et oppidā capient et capta tenēbunt. Magnās mūnitiōneſ facient et mūnitiōneſ ab hostibus factāſ capient. Impetuſ sine morā et sine metu in hostēſ facient. Cōsiliū ā ducibus captum laudābunt. Pericula mortis nōn timebunt. Timore et telis ācti, nōn fugient. Summam voluntātem in rem pūblicam ostendent, sicut patrēſ nostri in civitatē nostram liberam semper voluntātem ostenderunt. Numquam militeſ Amēricāni duceſ rēgeſ facient, nam summam in rem pūblicam habebunt voluntatē.

Nōne militeſ et Rōmānōſ et Amēricānōſ semper laudābimus et memoriā tenebimus?

## SENTENTIAE SELECTAE

1. Christus, "Non quaero," inquit, "voluntatem meam sed voluntatem ejus qu! misit me." "

2. Domine, tū es qui fecisti caelum et terram, mare<sup>1</sup> et omnia quae in eis sunt. (*From the Acts of the Apostles.*)

3. Christus, "Māter mea et frātrēs mei," inquit, "hi sunt qui verbum<sup>1 2 3</sup> Dei audiunt et faciunt."

## EXERCISE 385

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. The Japanese made a plan of war. Then suddenly they made an attack on a great harbor of the Americans.

2. The soldiers marched a long time through the territory of the Gauls. Then suddenly these were seen on a hill. The Gauls had made fortifications on that hill lest the Romans might seize it. The Romans made an attack on the hill from the front. The Gauls, terrified by the darts and swords, raised (up) a shout and fled.

3. The Gauls had stationed cavalry in the forest and soldiers at the river. These the Romans captured, but those they put to flight.

4. The chief of the Gauls said to Caesar: "On account of your good will towards my tribe, I shall make an attack on your enemies; I shall capture their fields and towns; I shall also capture those soldiers who will not have fled."

5. The general said: "How great is the number of the enemy? How large fortifications have they made? Have they captured a supply of grain? Will they flee after the attack?"

6. Napoleon made himself king and emperor of France.<sup>8</sup>

7. The leader of the allies said to Caesar: "You have stationed me and my men on this hill to hold it. On account of your

<sup>1</sup> mare, maris, *sea*.

<sup>2</sup> verbum, *I; word.*

<sup>3</sup> France: Gallia, ae.

good will towards me, I shall hold it and I shall not flee. I shall make fortifications and prepare darts. They<sup>1</sup> will never take this hill."

## 2. TIME WHEN

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 920-921.

### VOCABULARY

annus, i	year
vigilia, ae	watch
tempus, temporis, n.	time
diēs, diei, m. (f.)	day
hōra, ae	hour
primus, a, um	first
secundus, a, um 1	2 <sup>d</sup> second
alter, altera, alterum	
tertius, a, um	third

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

An *annual* celebration. The school *annual*. St. Ignatius kept *oigil* at the shrine of Our Lady. The Saints do not allow *temporal* things to worry them. *Secondary*. A *tertiary* of St. Francis.

**A.D. 1776**

A. D.—Annō Domini

### EXERCISE 386

*Answer in English:*

1. Quō annō Columbus ad novās terrās quās Americam vocāmus pervēnit?

2. Quō diē Dēo propter nostram liberam civitatem grātiās agimus?

---

<sup>1</sup>The speaker here points to the distant camp of the enemy. What pronoun would be the best to use?



3. Quō anno Lincoln servos ā dōminis eorū liberavit?
4. Quō diē Christus occisus est?
5. Quō diē homines primum Christum puerum viderunt?
6. Quō diē Christus in Caelum sublatuſ est?

**EXERCISE 387***Translate:*

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. at the third watch | 4. in the first year |
| 2. in the second hour | 5. at that time      |
| 3. on the third day   | 6. on that day       |

**TEMPUS FUGIT****EXERCISE 388***Translate:*

1. Caesar diem cōstituit quō diē omnes principes Galldrum ad sē convenirent. Ed diē omnes convēnerunt. 2. Primā vigiliā clāmor custōdum audiebātur. 3. Ed tempore bellum cum Gallis gerebātur. 4. Tertia die omnia frūmenta quae in agris erant incenderunt. 5. Ed anno Rōmāni Gallōs multis proeliis vicērunt. 6. Ed diē multi proeliō ceciderunt. 7. Ed tempore custōdēs in mūrō nōn erant. 8. Proximō diē frumentum militibus dabatur. 9. Primā vigiliā legiōnem clam ē castris deduxit. 10. Tertiō diē nuntius ad Caesarem ā legātō mittebātur qui auxilium peteret. 11. Et in bello et in pace Rōmāni fortēs erant. 12. Ed annō multa proelia adversa fecērunt. 13. Tertia vigilia ^ervus clam ē castris ad Caesarem missus est.

**EXERCISE 389****[Forms of -id Verbs and Time When]***Translate:*

1. At the third hour they fled. 2. At that time they captured the hill. 3. On the second day they marched into the mountains.

4. At the third hour they pitched camp. 5. In that year they made fortifications in the province. 6. They captured the king on the third day. 7. In the next year they captured the city. 8. At the third watch the enemy made an attack.

### SENTENTIA CICERONIS

Cicerō, "Historia,"<sup>1</sup> inquit, "[est] testis<sup>1 2 \* 4</sup> temporum, lūx vērītātis, vita memoriae."

### READING NO. 30

### THE "OUR FATHER"

And the Lord said: "Thus therefore shall you pray:

PATER NOSTER

QŪI ES IN CAELIS

SANCTIFICĒTUR<sup>8</sup> \* NŌMEN TUUM

ADVENIAT\* RĒGNUM TUUM

FIAT<sup>5</sup> VOLUNTAS TUA SĪCUT IN CAELO ET<sup>1</sup> IN TERRA

PANEM<sup>7</sup> NOSTRUM COTĪDIANUM<sup>8</sup> DA NOBĪS HODIE\*

ET DIMITTE NOBĪS DEBITA<sup>10 11</sup> NOSTRA

SĪCUT ET<sup>6</sup> NOS DIMITTIMUS DEBITŌRIBUS<sup>11</sup> NOSTRIS

<sup>1</sup> historia, ae: *history*.

<sup>2</sup> testis, testis, m.: *witness*.

<sup>8</sup> sanctificetur: *hallowed be*.

<sup>4</sup> adveniat: (may) . . . *come*.

<sup>8</sup> fiat: (may) . . . *be done*.

<sup>8</sup> et here means *also*. It may be left untranslated.

<sup>7</sup> panis, panis, m.: *bread*.

<sup>8</sup> cotidianus, a, um: *daily*.

\* hodie, adv.: *today*.

<sup>10</sup> debitum, i: *debt, trespass*.

<sup>11</sup> debitor, debitoris: *debtor, one who trespasses*.



CHRISTUS HOMINES DOCET.

ET NĒ<sup>1</sup> NŌS INDUCAS<sup>1</sup> IN TENTATIŌNĒM\* \*  
 SED LIBERA NŌS A MALO. AMEN”.

### 3. SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF 40 VERBS

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn GRAMMAR, NOS. 315-316.

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of -io verbs are formed regularly on the perfect stem.

---

<sup>1</sup> nē . . . inducās: *lead . . . not,*

\* tentatīō, tentatīōnis: *temptation.*

## VOCABULARY

conicio, conicere, con j eci, coniectus, 3, tr.	<i>throw</i> <i>hurl</i>
recipid, recipere, recepi, rēceptus, 3, tr.	<i>receive</i> <i>accept</i> <i>recover</i>
(with a reflexive Pronoun me, tē, sē, etc.)	<i>withdraw</i>
cupid, cupere, cupivi, cupitus, 3, tr.; w. infin.	<i>desire</i>
rūrsus, adv.	<i>again</i>

## NOTE

1. Notice this special use of *conjicere*:

In fugam hostes *conjecit*. *He threw the enemy into flight.*

2. *Recipid* with the proper reflexive pronoun means *withdraw*:

Ad castra se *rēceperunt*. *They withdrew to the camp.*

In silvas nos *rēcipiemus*. *We shall withdraw into the forest.*

## RELATED ENGLISH WORD

The *cupidity* of misers is proverbial.

## RELATED LATIN WORDS

*Cupidus*; *capid*.

*Jesu, Deus p̄acis, misererē nobis!*

## EXERCISE 390

[Drill on the Present Subjunctive]

*Translate :*

- Gratiam Del cupiamus.
- Capiat urbem.
- Fugiant hostes.
- Fugiamus.
- Capiamus consilium.
- Fugiat rex.
- Faciamus rursus impetum in illos.

## EXERCISE 391

[Drill on the Present Subjunctive]

*Translate:*

1. Let us desire to see God. 2. Let us march into the mountains. 3. May they take the town! 4. May they flee! 5. Let us make a plan. 6. May they make an attack again I 7. May they capture the king! 8. Let us flee.

## EXERCISE 392

1. Write a main clause for each of these sentences;
2. Complete the verbs in the subordinate clauses by adding imperfect endings:

(The main clause should make sense and should demand the imperfect subjunctive in sequence. The first sentence shows how the exercise is to be done.)

1 quo facilius tela in hostes conjic

[Munitiōnes fecerunt quo facilius tela in hostes conjicerent.]

2ne hostes collem cap

3ne milites se in castra recip

4quo facilius milites e timore se recip

5ne dux hostium impetum facere cup

6ne hostes impetum fac.....

7ne milites sui fug

8ne hostes in loca tutā se recip.....

9. ut milites victoriam cup

## EXERCISE 393

[Essential]

*Translate:*

Dux Rōmānus, his nuntiis commōtus, lēgātōs et tribūnds militum ad sē vocāvit ut cōsiliū caperet. Equitem miserat qui cognōsceret quāe hostēs facerent. Primum in conciliū hunc equitem rogat quō diē hostēs pervenerint, ubi castra posuerint,

quantaſ mūnitiōneſ fecerint, quantaſ cōpiāſ habeant, num cōpiam frūmenti et aquae habeant, quōſ colieſ cēperint. Turn ā centuridnibus quaesivit num militeſ sui victōriam cuperent, num ad proelium parātī essent, num in sē bonam voluntātem habērent, num cōpiam tēlōrum habērent. Post haec cōsiliū cēpit atque legātōſ tribunōſque militum dimisit.

Proximo die dux cum omnibus cōpiis suis primā lūce per silvās iter fecit ut collem nātūrā loci mūnitum caperet. Dux vērū hostium, cum agmen Rbmānum vidisset, cōpiāſ ex castris dūxit atque instrūxit. Turn Rōmānī appropinquaērunt ut in eōſ impetum facerent. Rōmānī, cum hosteſ nōn longē abessent, tēla in eōſ conjēcērunt. Statim multi ex hostibus, timbre mōti, cesserunt atque fūgērunt. Reliqui tamen rūrſus impetum fecērunt. Turn Rōmānī exspectāērunt quō facilius tēla rūrſus conjicerent. Itaque, Rōmānī cum rūrſus tēla in hostēſ conjēcissent, clāmōrem sustulērunt et impetum in hostēſ fecērunt. Rem gladiis<sup>1</sup> gessērunt. Magna fuit caedeſ. Hosteſ alii celeriter fūgērunt, alii mōre sub clāmōrem sustulērunt atque se suaque omnia Rōmānīſ dederunt. Ita Rōmānī et castra cēperunt et magnam omnium rērū cōpiam cēperunt. Itaque Rōmānī in castra se receperunt.

#### EXERCISE 394

##### *Translate :*

1. The Romans stationed men on the walls to hurl darts against the enemy. 2. The Romans made fortifications lest the enemy should easily hurl darts against them. 3. The general asked whether the men desired the signal to be given. 4. Caesar shows us how great sorrow the Gauls take from the slaughter of their hostages. 5. The general asked the soldiers whether they desired glory and rewards. Then said he: "Fight bravely. The enemy will flee and we shall take their camp. It is full of all these things which you desire." 6. When the soldiers had hurled the darts, he sent the cavalry against the enemy lest

---

<sup>1</sup> This was the equivalent of the modern bayonet charge.

they should recover from their fear and again make an attack. According to their, custom, the barbarians then raised (up) a shout and fled in all directions.<sup>1</sup>

#### 4. EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NO. 761.

##### VOCABULARY

<i>pēs, pedis, m.</i>	<i>foot</i> (part of body or measure of distance)
<i>passus, us</i> <sup>m</sup>	<i>pace</i> (a measure of distance = 5 Roman feet [pedes]) <sup>m</sup>
<i>mille, indecl. adj.</i>	<i>thousand</i>
<i>milia, milium, neuter noun</i>	<i>thousands</i>
<i>mille passus</i> <sup>m</sup>	<i>a mile</i> (literally, <i>a thousand paces</i> = 1,618 English yards)
<i>milia passuum</i>	<i>miles</i> (literally, <i>thousands of paces</i> )
<i>quam, interrogative adv. of how?</i>	
<i>degree</i>	

##### NOTE

1. For mille and milia, study GRAMMAR, NO. 117.
2. Quam does NOT mean 'how' in the sense of *in what way, by what means*. It CANNOT translate: "How did you do it?" It means *how* in the sense of *to what degree*, as in "how high," "how long," "how violently," etc.

*Quam longum est illud flumen? How long is that river?*

##### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *pedestrian* should be careful at crossings. A *mill* is one-thousandth part of a dollar. A *pedometer* measures the number of steps taken by a walker or runner. The *pedals* of a bicycle.

---

<sup>1</sup> *directions: use partes.* <sup>m</sup>



### TO A DOCTOR TURNED UNDERTAKER

“Nūper<sup>1</sup> erat medicus,<sup>1 2</sup> nunc est vispillo<sup>3</sup> Diaulus\*  
Quod vispillo<sup>4</sup> facit, fecerat et<sup>5</sup> medicus<sup>2</sup>” (Martial).

#### EXERCISE 395

[Drill]

1. Translate ;
2. Parse the italicised words:

1. Quinque *dies* iter *fecerunt*. 2. Quinque *milia passuum* iter *fecerunt*. 3. Castra *mille passus* ab montibus *afuerunt*. 4. Castra *duo milia passuum* ab montibus *afuerunt*. 5. *Eo die* *tria milia hominum* in proelio *cecidērunt*. 6. Montem *tribus milibus hominum* *complevit*. 7. Corpora *trium milium hominum* in agris visa sunt. 8. *Mille dies* in montibus erat. 9. *Duo milia dierum* in montibus erat. 10. Dux dudus *milibus* hominum praemia dedit. 11. *Duo milia* fere *annorum* fides Christi in terra jam est.<sup>6</sup> 12. Septem *annis* Caesar in Gallia cum barbaris bellum gessit.

<sup>1</sup> nūper, adv.: formerly.

<sup>2</sup> medicus, i: doctor.

<sup>3</sup> vispillō, vispillōnis, m.: undertaker.

\*Diaulus, i: a proper name.

<sup>6</sup> et here means also.

<sup>8</sup> est: translate by has been.



13. Hostēs quattuor diēs celeriter fugērunt. 14. *Quam* lāta fuit ilia fossa? 15. Quam altus est hie mīrus? 16. Milkēs fossam decern passūs latam fecērunt. 17. Vallum erat decern pedēs altum.

Christum Dei Filium,  
Qui sūo nōs redēmit<sup>1</sup> sanguine,<sup>2</sup>  
Venite, adorēmus!

## EXERCISE 396

[Drill]

*Translate:*

1. They marched three days. 2. They marched five miles.
3. The city was two miles distant from the river. 4. They fled for three days. 5. They held the hill five hours; then the Romans captured it. 6. They gave swords to three thousand men. 7. The hill was taken by two thousand men. 8. He marched into the province with a thousand men. 9. How high is this mountain?
10. The river was a mile away. 11. They fought for two hours. 12. This river is many feet wide. 13. He waited nine days.
14. The Saints were often able to pray for two or three hours.
15. The Americans defended Bataan for many days. 16. Shall we be able to preserve peace for many years? 17. Our state has been free many years. 18. They waged war for three years.

## EXERCISE 397

*Answer in English:*

1. Quot milia passuum longum est illud flūmen quod Mississippi vocātur ?
2. Quam lātum est illud flūmen ?
3. Quam longē abest urbs Romā a finibus nos tris ?

---

<sup>1</sup> redēmit: *redeemed*.

<sup>2</sup> sanguis, sanguinis, m.; *blood*.

4. Quot dieſ Christuſ poſt mortem ſuam in terra fuit?
5. Quot annoſ Chriſtuſ in terra homineſ viam ſalutiſ doçuit?
6. Quot annoſ Americani illud bellum quod Civil vocatur inter ſe gegereunt?
7. Quot annoſ Americani cum Germaniſ proeliis contenderunt?

### SENTENTIA CHRISŒTI

Chriſtuſ apoſtoliſ ſuiſ, “Qu! recipit vōſ,” inquit, “mē recipit; et qui mē recipit, recipit eum qui miſit me.”

### EXERCISE 398

[Eſſential]

*Translate:*

1. Chriſt waſ not ſeen for three dayſ after Hiſ death, but then He ſhowed Himſelf to Hiſ friendſ. For many dayſ He remained on the earth to teach Hiſ friendſ and to encourage them. Then He waſ raiſed up into heaven, and there He will remain in the glory of the Father forever.

2. Let uſ eſtabliſh and preſerve peace that for many yearſ we may be free from the fearſ and ſorrowſ of war.

3. Thoſe who firſt came to our land often marched many mileſ for many dayſ through narrow placeſ, through foreſtſ full of dangerſ, through difficult and high mountainſ, in order to arrive at good fieldſ and to have an abundance of water.

4. It iſ a bad thing for men to fight among themſelveſ. In all thoſe warſ which have been waged during thouſandſ of yearſ, many thouſandſ of men have been killed and captured. It iſ a good thing to remain in peace; it iſ a good thing to love peace and to preſerve it.

5. The Romanſ pitched and fortified a camp daily.<sup>1 2</sup> They often fortified it with a rampart ten feet high and a ditch five feet wide. Thuſ daily<sup>2</sup> they marched many mileſ and prepared fortificationſ for many hourſ.

<sup>1</sup> apoſtoluſ, I: apoſtle.

<sup>2</sup> daily: cotidie, ſado.

## READING NO. 31

## DE SANCCTO PETRO CLAVER, SERVDRUM APOSTOLD

Sānctus Petrus Claver erat Iēsuita. Ad portum Carthāginem,<sup>1</sup> quae urbs in Americā est, pervēnit ut servōs ibi adjuvāret. Nam eis temporibus hominēs mall ad Africam nāvigābant\* ut illōs miserōs hominēs qui illās regiōnēs incolēbant caperent atque servōs facerent. Turn eōs servōs in Americam trādūcēbant atque ibi vēdidērunt.<sup>8</sup> Illi servi nāvibus mails et parvis ex Africā trāducti sunt. In his nāvibus nōn erat cōpia aquae frumentique neque ūllārū rērū quae ad vitam ūtilēs sunt. Itaque Sānctus Petrus, cum nāvēs in portum pervēnissent, in nāvēs sine morā contendēbat ut servōs miserōs adjuvāret. Et corpora et animās\* eōrum adjuvābat. Difficile vēō est ostendere quā virtūte rēs gesserit. Nam multōs qui propter doldrem et vulnera in nāvibus cecidērunt, manibus suis ex nāvibus portābat. Eds aqua et frūmentō adjuvābat. Ita vitās multdrum servōrum cōservābat. Praeterea omnēs fidem Christiānam docuit. Docuit eōs et ōrāre et Deum diligere. Nemīnem<sup>1 2 \* 4 5 6 \*</sup> a se prohibuit; omnes vēō ad sē recipēbat. Servis miseris sē tōtū dedit. Itaque servi eum et patrem et amicum appellavērunt.

Sānctus Petrus autem multōs doldrēs servōrum salūtis causā sustinuit. Nam multi domini malam in eum voluntātem habēbant. Itaque eum impediēbant. Tamen Sānctus Petrus, his injūriis neque commōtus neque perturbātus, omnia sustinuit ut servōs, frātēs subs dilectōs, Christianos faceret. Multos annos haec

<sup>1</sup>The Port of Cartagena, on the northeast coast of South America, was a notorious slave market. Fifty per cent of the slaves are estimated to have died in the foul holds of the slave ships during the Atlantic crossing, yet 10,000 slaves were sold annually in Cartagena. The slave trade was vigorously condemned by Pope Pius III.

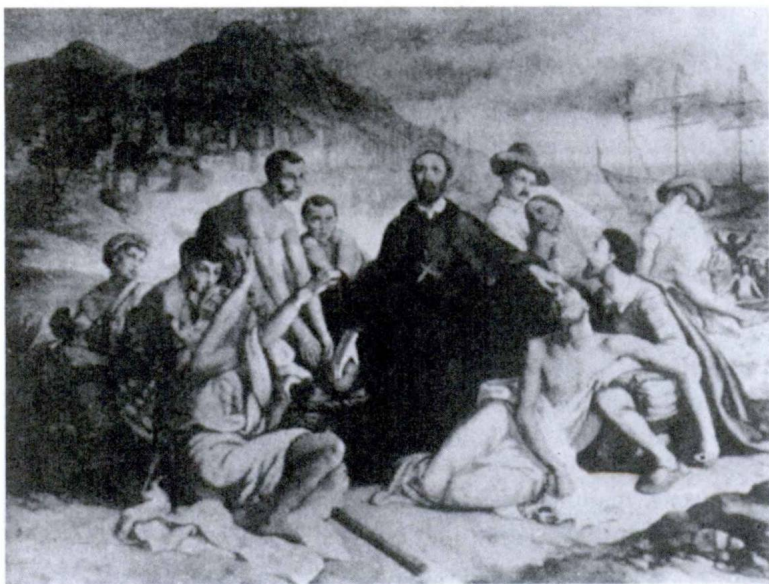
<sup>2</sup>nāvigō, /, intr.: sail.

<sup>8</sup>vēdō, vēnd ere, vēndidi, vēnditus, 3, tr.: sell.

<sup>4</sup>anima, ae: soul.

<sup>5</sup>nēmīnem: no one (accusative).

<sup>6</sup>He spent about thirty-five years in this work. He died September 8, 1654, and was canonized in 1888. His feast is celebrated on September 9. Pope Leo XIII made him special patron of all missions among the Negroes.



SANCTUS PETRUS CLAVER

agebat, et tandem<sup>1</sup> labdribus confectus<sup>1 2</sup> ad caeli praemium pervenit. Post multos annos sanctus factus est et nunc ab omnibus Christianis laudatur.

## 5. INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF 40 VERBS

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 311, 322-324.

The perfect tenses are formed regularly by using the perfect participle passive with the proper forms of the verb *sum*.

Review GRAMMAR, NOS. 312-314.

---

<sup>1</sup> *tandem, adv.: at last.*

<sup>2</sup> *confectus, a, um: worn out.*

## VOCABULARY

interficio, interficere, interfeci, interfectus, 3, tr.

kill

eripid, eripere, eripui, ereptus, 3, tr.

{ take away  
save (from)

nihil, indecl, noun

nothing

## NOTE

1. The present system passive of facid is irregular, but almost all the compounds of facid, such as interficio, are regular.

2. After eripid from is translated as ex (e) w. abl.

E periculo ereptus sum.

*I was saved from danger,*

## EXERCISE 399

*Translate:*

1. We were being killed by the enemy. 2. They were being captured. 3. The town has been taken. 4. Rome has often been captured. 5. He was saved from the hands of the enemy. 6. Many thousand soldiers were killed. 7. Darts were hurled against the enemy. 8. Two thousand of them were killed. 9. A thousand men were captured. 10. The swords were taken away. 11. Nothing was captured. 12. That town will be taken. 13. I was saved from death by a friend.

Sancte Petre Claver, Apostole Servorum,  
Ora pro nobis!

## EXERCISE 400

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Civitas nostra e magno periculo a Washingtonio erepta est.  
2. Japonenses, saepe in loca impedita et angusta coacti, telis gladiisque interficiebantur. 3. Dux militibus, "Quid," inquit, "timent

milites Rōmānī?" Centurid vero ēī, "Nihil," inquit, "timemus."

4. Centurid ab equitibus ē manibus hostium ereptus est. 5. A quō capta est urbs Rōma? 6. Lēgātī qui frūmenti causā ad civitatēs Galldrum missi erant saepe ā Gallis aut capti aut interfecti sunt. Haec caedēs saepe fuit belli causa. Nam Caesar multa milia Galldrum interficere cōstitiit ne alii lēgātī sui ab eis occiderentur. 7. Multi, telis interfecti, dē mūrō ceciderunt. 8. Sancti ā Deō saepe ē periculis eripiuntur. 9. Nihil dē hāc rē audiui. Audivistine tu dē hāc rē? 10. Propter Galldrum injūriās obsidēs ā Rōmānis saepe interficiēbantur. 11. Nihil cupitur ab eō qui cōpiam omnium rerum habet. 12. Multa ab hominibus cupiuntur, at maxime cupitur salus.

#### EXERCISE 401

##### *Translate :*

1. Who were being killed by Caesar? 2. Nothing was taken away from the town. 3. The grace of God is taken away from us by sin. 4. We were saved from eternal death by the Son of God. 5. That man was saved from death by a brave centurion. 6. Many are now being killed by wicked men. 7. Men are often saved from death by their friends. 8. What is desired by the Saints? 9. The enemy was often thrown into flight by the Romans. 10. This city was often captured by the enemy. 11. Two thousand men were captured. 12. Was Rome captured by the Gauls? 13. All the others were either captured or killed.

#### READING NO. 32

##### THE LAZY SLAVE

Dominus servum malum castigabāt.<sup>1 2 3</sup> Servus clamāvit,<sup>8</sup> "Cūr, domine, mē percutis ?<sup>4</sup> Nihil feci." Dominus, autem, "Propter id," inquit, "te percutio<sup>4</sup> quod nihil fecisti."

<sup>1</sup> maxime, adv.: most of all.

<sup>2</sup> castigō, 1, tr.: punish.

<sup>3</sup> clamō, 1, intr.: shout, cry.

<sup>4</sup> percutiō, percutere, percuss!, percussus, 3, tr.: beat.

## 6. TIME WITHIN WHICH

ASSIGNMENT: Study GRAMMAR, NO. 922.

## VOCABULARY

cōspicio, cōspicere, conspēxi, conspēctus, 3, *tr.*{ see  
catch sight ofaccipid, accipere, accepi, āceptus, 3, *tr.*{ receive  
acceptcōficio, cōficere, confect, cōfectus, 3, *tr.*{ finish  
wear outnemo, neminis, *m.*<sup>1</sup>

no one

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *conspicuous* appearance. A speech of *acceptance*. He *accepted* the nomination.

## EXERCISE 402

## THE FRIENDLESS MAN

*Translate:*

He who loves no one, praises no one, helps no one, gives thanks to no one, is alone and without friends. Within a short time he will be worn out with sorrows and toil. Help will be received from no one. He will be unable to carry on great affairs, for he will have no allies and no friends. He will be a wretched man, for life without friends and without virtue is wretched.

## EXERCISE 403

*Translate:*

1. They will arrive within three days. 2. Within two hours the column of the enemy will be seen. 3. The letter will be received within two days. 4. In two days the war will be finished. 5. Within two days the ships were caught sight of. 6. Within three hours the soldiers will be worn out with the journey and toil. 7. No one worn out with wounds can fight long and bravely.

<sup>1</sup> nullius, nullo, and nulla are usually used for neminis and nemine.

## EXERCISE 404

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Sex diebus omnes munitiōnes cōfectae sunt. 2. Milites, vulneribus cōfacti, laborem diutius sūstinere non pōtuerunt. 3. Legiō clam per silvās iter fecit neque ē castris hostium cōspecta est. 4. Tribus diebus ad flūmen perventum est. 5. Tertiā diē ad castra perventum est. 6. In omnibus partibus barbari cōspiciuntur. 7. Dux Rōmānus barbaris, "Rōmāni," inquit, "obsides accipere, nōn dare, cōsuēverunt." 8. Rōmāni illam belli glōriam quae ā patribus accepta erat semper cōservāverunt. 9. Litterae ā Caesare acceptae sunt quibus legātus doctus est quanto in periculō legiōnēs essent. 10. Apud Rōmānos servi ā dominis malis saepe injuriās accēperunt. 11. Multa vulnera in eō proelio accepta sunt.

## READING NO. 33

THE VIATICUM<sup>1</sup>

When Holy Communion is given to the dying, the priest recites this prayer:

Accipe, frāter, viaticum<sup>1</sup> Corporis Domini nostri Iēsū Christi, qui tē custodiāt<sup>2</sup> ab hoste maligno<sup>3</sup> et perducāt<sup>4</sup> in vitam aeternam. Amen.

## SENTENTIAE SELECTAE

1. Christus, "Ego," inquit, "sum via, et veritas, et vita: nēmō venit ad Patrem, nisi<sup>5</sup> per me."

<sup>1</sup> viaticum, i: *viaticum* (the word was originally used of *provision for a journey*).

<sup>2</sup> custodiō, 4, tr.: *guard* (cf. *custos*).

<sup>3</sup> malignus, a, um: *evil*.

<sup>4</sup> perducō, perducere, perdūxi, perductus, 3, tr.: *lead to*.

<sup>5</sup> nisi: *except*.



2. Sanctus Paulus, "Fundāmentum,"<sup>1</sup> inquit, "enim aliud nēmō potest pōnere, praeter<sup>1 2</sup> id quod positum est, quod est Christus Jēsūs."

3. Seneca, "Bonus verō vir," inquit, "sine Deo nēmō est."

## 7. SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF -ZO VERBS

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, Nos. 325-326.

The perfect tenses are formed regularly by using the perfect participle passive with the forms of the verb sum.

### VOCABULARY

magnitudo, magnitudinīs	{ size greatness
satis, adv.	{ enough sufficiently
animus, I	{ mind soul
satis, indecl. noun w. gen.	enough

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The magnitude of the sun astounds us. The arrangement is *satisfactory*. An *animist* believes that *inanimate* objects have souls.

### RELATED LATIN WORD

Magnus

### EXERCISE 405

*Translate:*

1. May the fortifications be finished! 2. May the town be taken! 3. May we be saved from this danger! 4. May letters

<sup>1</sup> fundāmentum, i: *foundation*.

<sup>2</sup> praeter, prep. w. acc.: *besides*.

be received! 5. May they be captured! 6. May the bridge be finished! 7. May they flee! 8. May enough water be captured! 9. May the king be taken!

## EXERCISE 406

*Translate:*

1. Benedictus Arnold, qui fidem in nostram rem pūblicam nō servāverat, ē castris Americanis se ēripuit et in aliās partēs fūgit nē ab eis interficerētur. 2. Christus interfectus est ut hominēs ē morte et peccāto eriperentur. 3. Castra ad flūmen posita erant ut satis aquae ex flumine caperētur. 4. Vitās obsidum cōservāvit nē ex eōrum caede magnus dolor ā Gallis caperētur. 5. Nōn satis tūtum erat in ed locō pugnāre. Itaque in castra contenderunt nē ab hostibus caperentur et interficerentur. 6. Ab centuriōnibus quaesivit num milites magnitudine itineris et vulneribus cōfecti essent. 7. Arma paremus nē milites nostri ab hostibus capiantur et interficiantur. 8. Omnes ducēs munitiōnes parant nē urbes et oppida ab hostibus capiantur et muniuntur. 9. Legiōnes clam per silvās ad collem dedūxit nē ā barbaris cōspicerentur. 10. Dux ā tribūnis militum quaesivit num agmen hostium cōspectum esset. 11. Lēgātus ā centuriōnibus quaesivit num post urbem captam satis frūmenti haberent. 12. Ibi multōs diēs mānsit nē milites magnitudine labdri et itineris conficerentur.

## EXERCISE 407

### AN ASSIGNMENT FOR THE INTELLIGENCE DEPARTMENT

You are a Gaul who has been sent into the Roman camp as a spy. You have managed to get into the tent of the *lēgātus* and there you have found the torn pieces of an official message of great importance. When you fit it together, it looks something like what you see on page 405. Can you supply the missing letters and discover the plan of the Roman general staff? Draw a diagram of the battle plan contained in this message.

LITTEJLAE TUA EWME HORA I' RIMA ACCEPTA JUNT  
 AGJGH HOSTIUNTOXB EQUITIBUS MEIS HORA SE-  
 <TX 1) Ayx> XSRECTUM EST. HORA TERJIA CASTRA  
 EORUM FOSITA SUNT IN COLLE QU ^JNTUM PEDES  
 A ILCMINF XHESI < TRA iBI Po3| BRUNT I T S ATIS  
 AQUAE EX FLUAHMi^txPERETI^K TtPAESIVI XUMj  
 SATIS FRUMENT AM^A^CFPIS J^ATIS^cJ  
 CEPE RUNT, ITXQVF OPORTET NOS STATIM IX F(T®  
 IMPETUM T^ERE NE EX TIMOR) ^ET LAHORE SF.  
 BECIPU|g^pTAQ(T COMAS MAS PER SILVAS ILLJj  
 COLLI PHOXIM \S ( I »^i I EUfctAM NE A ( I STODIHfIB  
 CONSPTUAMIT ALTERAM^ PARTEM COH ARIJf A'  
 I XISO IX\* SUMS CULIIX' ABO NF. HOSTES IN RILVAS  
 SOFRECTIEMIX ALI ERAM ACT EM PARTfc.M^FRONTE  
 IN HOSTES' MIT VM TE JUBEO LEGION^M'ERTIAM  
 PEL st MONI^fCLAM DEDVCERE xyfIX CASTRIR\*  
 CO WSPICLM^RJR. HAXC LEGION EM IRAN'S FLUMEN  
 COL UMINE HOSTES TRANS FI (MEN IN MONTES SE  
 REC IjjJxT. ITER ERIT SATES LONGUM ET DIFFICILE.  
 ITAQUE DJU EXSPE<TAHO ET HORA TERTI^ SIGNUM '  
 DA H U PRIMUM ALTERA PARS COW ARUM] |V AXEBIT  
 IN SILVIS AT ALTEK^I \RS IMPETUM IN JMASTR A A  
 FROXTE FACIET. HASTES. TIMORE MoTT. CONTRA  
 HOS MILIH.S i: GXWJUM fl \fH Q(1 | SILV  
 SU ST, POST SIGN! XUDATUM, IMPETUM X TERG<r  
 FACIENT ET TELA CONJICIENT. SI AUXILIUM A TE  
 CUPIAM, MITTAM NUNTIIUM QVI JUBEAT TE LEGIO-  
 NEM TERTIAM TRANS FLUM TRADUCERE. VALE.

<sup>1</sup> si, *coxj.*: *if.*



## SENTENTIAE SELEGTAE

### 1. DE ELEPHANTO

Why has an elephant a trunk? Here is Cicero's explanation:

Manus data elephanto est quia,<sup>1</sup> propter magnitudinem corporis, difficilis aditus<sup>2</sup> habebat ad pastum.<sup>3</sup>

### 2. DE SPE

Thales,<sup>4</sup> rogatus quid maxime commune esset hominibus, "Spēs," inquit, "hanc enim illi etiam habent qui nihil habent aliud."

### 3. SENTENTIA EPICTETI

Epictetus, rogatus quis esset dives,<sup>6</sup> "Cui," inquit, "satis est quod habet."

<sup>1</sup> quia: *because* (like quod).

<sup>2</sup> aditus, ūs: *approach (to), access (to)*.

<sup>3</sup> pastus, ūs: *forage, food*.

♦Thales, Thalīs: *Thales* (one of the seven Wise Men of Greece).

<sup>5</sup> Epictetus, i: *Epictetus* (an ancient philosopher).

<sup>6</sup> dives, divitis: *rich, wealthy*.

## LESSON 38: DATIVE VERBS; THE PASSIVE OF VERBS OF GALLING

1. Many verbs in Latin take cases other than the accusative. The dative is used after some intransitive verbs, especially compounds of prepositions. (GRAMMAR, NOS. 739 and 746-747.)

Legiō? praeest. *He is in command of the legion.*

Rei publicae nocet. *He does harm to the state.*

Tibi nō cedam. *I will not yield to you.*

2. We have seen that verbs of *calling, naming, etc.*, take a direct object and a predicate accusative. In the passive these verbs take a predicate NOMINATIVE.

Caesar imperator appellatur. *Caesar is called commander in chief.*

**Imperātor** refers back to the subject of the sentence and is therefore in the NOMINATIVE CASE.

### VOCABULARY

noceo, nocere, nocul, nocitūrus, 2, intr.; w. dat.	{ do harm to
	{ injure
praesum, praesse, praefui, praefuturus, intr.; w. dat.	{ am in command of
	{ am in charge of
mare, maris <sup>1</sup>	sea
ventus, I	wind
navigo, I, intr.	sail

### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *mariner*; *marine* animals; the Merchant *Marine*; the American *Marines*; a *noxious* weed; a *navigator*.

### RELATED LATIN WORDS

**Nāvis**; sum.

---

<sup>1</sup> Mare is declined like the neuter of gravis, grave, and NOT like flumēn.



MAGNAE COPIAE IN GALLIAM TRADUCTAE SUNT.

## EXERCISE 408

## D-DAY

*Translate:*

Cum diēs cōstitutā advēnisset,<sup>1</sup> ducēs Americān! propter magnitudinem vent! ad Galliam<sup>2</sup> nāvīgārī nōn potuērunt. Nam magnitūdō ventdrum nāvibus nocet. Itaque in Britannīā diūtius mānsērunt ne vent! et mare nāvibus nocērent. Postea<sup>3</sup> vērō magnās cōpiās trāns mare in Galliam<sup>2</sup> unō diē tradūxērunt ut hostibus nocērent. Hostēs magnās mūnitiōnēs fēcērant. Tamen Americān! eōrumque socii, et ad mortem et ad victoriam parāti, illās mūnitiōnēs cepērunt et hostes in fugam conjecerunt.

Dux fortis et magnus, nōmine Bradley, praefuit exercitui Americānō.

Nōne et ducem nostrum et milites nostrōs propter virtutem semper laudābimus?

<sup>1</sup> advēnisset: *had arrived.*

<sup>2</sup> Gallia, ae: *France.*

<sup>3</sup> postea, adv.: *afterwards.*

## EXERCISE 409

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. A centurion was in charge of a hundred men; a lieutenant was often in charge of two or three legions; the general was in charge of the whole army.

2. MacArthur, a great and brave leader, was in charge of that American army which was in Australia and the neighboring regions. He did harm to the Japanese ships and soldiers.

3. Sailors are brave men, for the sea is full of dangers but they do not fear to sail. The greatness of the winds injures their ships and they are often in danger of death. Therefore I praise sailors very much.

4. For many years peoples and states have contended with one another on land and sea. But in these times they have filled the sky with soldiers and arms.

5. Bad men injure the state most. It behooves us to make good men leaders and chiefs. For men without faithfulness and without virtue cannot preserve a free state. Are good men in charge of our nation now ?

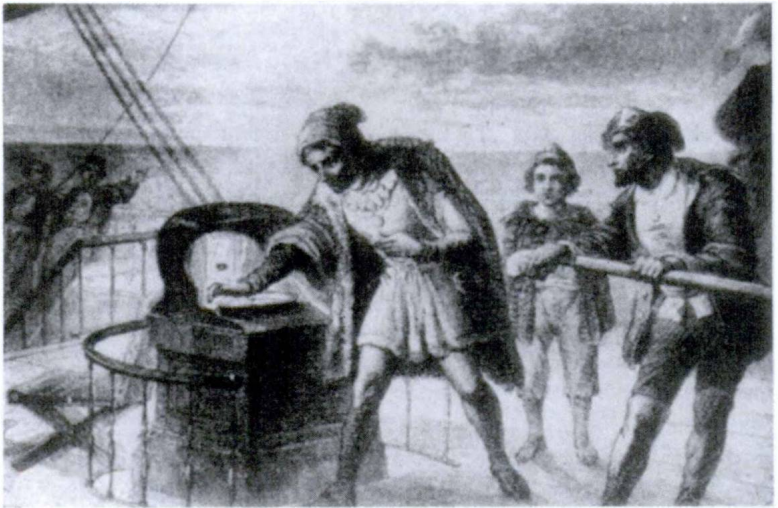
## READING NO. 34

DE COLUMBO<sup>1</sup>

Columbus, nauta fortis et bonus, constituit novis viis ad Indiam navigare. Tamen propter inopiam omnium rerum neque nave parare neque omnia quae utilia erant comparare potuit. Itaque ad castra regis Hispaniae pervenit ut auxilium peteret. Ille autem primum eum non adjuvit; turn vero a Regina Isabella adductus omnia quae cupiebat dedit. Itaque tres nave paratae atque instructae sunt. Prima navis in qua fuit Columbus, *Santa Maria* vocabatur, altera navis *Pinta* vocabatur; tertia navis *Nina* vocabatur. His tribus navibus Columbus praeerat. Centum et viginti<sup>1</sup> nautae etiam coacti sunt. Itaque cum omnia jam essent parata ex

---

<sup>1</sup> viginti: *twenty*.



COLUMBUS

portū illae trēs parvae nāvēs nāvigābant. Mare magnum erat. Nēmō ante id tempus trāns illud mare nāvigāverat. Quod nāvēs parvae erant, mare periculdrum plēnum fuit. Nōn saepe, autem, propter magnitudinem ventdrum difficile fuit navigāre.

Cum multōs diēs nāvigāvissent, terram vidērunt. Omnēs nautae vehementer commōti sunt. Ē nāvibus contendērunt atque illam terram in nōmine rēgis Hispānic! occupāvērunt. Ita Columbus ad Americam pervēnit.

### HOW GOOD IS YOUR IMAGINATION?

A newspaper reporter is rushed by plane from the front lines in the island fighting in the Pacific to San Francisco. He arrives in a dying condition. All you can get from him before he dies is this:

"Soldiers . . . sailors . . . ships . . . wind for days . . . wind!  
Got there . . . terrible ... no water . . . days on fortifications  
... no water . . . rations low . . . bombarded us . . . days . . .



and days ... no help . . . men killed . . . then they . . . attack . . . bombardment . . . thousands of Japs . . . shooting . . . bayonets . . . they got ... in . . . our camp. At last . . . routed . . . fled . . . days . . . help came ... we attack . . . terrible fighting ... they ... sur ... sur ... ”

Now your job is to write up the story here in simple Latin for a Latin newspaper. What kind of a story can you make out of it? Use simple Latin and the words and constructions you are sure of. Here are some hints:

**For *rations* use *frumentum*.**

**For *low* use *inopia*.**

**For *bombardment* use *telā conjicere*.**

**For *shooting, etc.*, use *telā conjicere*.**

**For *bayonets* use *gladii*.**

**For *Japs* use *Japonēs*.**

<p>Per adventum tuum, Liberā nōs, Jeſu!</p>
---

## UNIT TWELVE

### LESSON 39: THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE

#### 1. PERFECT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES ACTIVE

The PERFECT INFINITIVE ACTIVE of ALL LATIN VERBS, REGULAR AND IRREGULAR, is formed by adding -isse to the PERFECT stem.

**laudavi** (perfect indicative) STEM: **laudav-**

**Perfect Infinitive Active: LAUDAVISSE, to have loved**

The FUTURE INFINITIVE ACTIVE of ALL LATIN VERBS is a COMPOUND tense made up of the FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE and esse.

The FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE is formed by dropping the -us of the perfect participle passive and adding -urus.

**laudatus** (perfect participle passive) STEM: **laudat-**

**Future Participle Active: laudaturus, a, um**

**Future Infinitive Active: LAUDATŪRUS, A, UM ESSE**

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 210, 222-224; 21S, 237-239; 211, 225-227.

#### EXERCISE 410

2. *Give the principal parts and the meaning;*
2. *Give the present infinitive active;*
3. *Give the perfect infinitive active;*
4. *Give the perfect participle passive;*
5. *Give the future participle active;*
6. *Give the future infinitive active;*

1. lauds

3. superd

5. sustineo

2. paro

4. habeo

6. audio

7. dēfendō	16. pugnō	25. comparō
8. collocō	17. oppugnō	26. addūcō
9. accipio	18. instruo	27. obtineō
10. retineō	19. moneō	28. tradō
11. premō	20. terreō	29. cōstitutō
12. mitto	21. recipio	30. dō
13. dimitto	22. cognōscō	31. trāduco
14. occidō	23. expugnō	32. ostendō
15. compleō	24. capio	33. vasto

Note. Remember that, when a verb is intransitive, the perfect participle passive is always given in the neuter, as *pervenio*, *pervenire*, *pervenī*, *perventum*, \*/, *intr.* This is because the passive of intransitive verbs can be used only IMPERSONALLY (as we shall see), and so will always be in the NEUTER.

When, however, a verb has no perfect participle passive, the future participle active is given as the fourth principal part, as *maned*, *manerē*, *mansī*, *mansurus*, 2, *fw/r*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review GRAMMAR, NO. 332 and FIRST YEAR LATIN, page 326.

### EXERCISE 411

Here is a complete list of intransitive verbs which you have had. Study them and give their future infinitive active.

*appropinquō*, 1, *intr.*

*navigō*, 1, *intr.*

*pervenio*, *pervenire*, *pervenī*, *perventum*, 4, *intr.*

*convenio*, *convenire*, *conveni*, *conventum*, 4, *intr.*

*venio*, *venire*, *venī*, *ventum*, 4, *intr.*

*noceo*, *noceŕe*, *nocui*, *nociturus*, 2, *intr.*

*discedō*, *discedere*, *discessi*, *discessurus*, 3, *intr.*

*maneo*, *manere*, *mansī*, *mansurus*, 2, *intr.*

*cēdō*, *cēdere*, *cessi*, *cessurus*, 3, *intr.*

*absum*, *abesse*, *afui*, *afuturus*, *intr.*

*sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futurus*, *intr.*

*valeō*, *valeŕe*, *valui*, *valiturus*, 2, *intr.*

Ostende nōbis, Domine,  
Misericordiam<sup>1</sup> tuam!

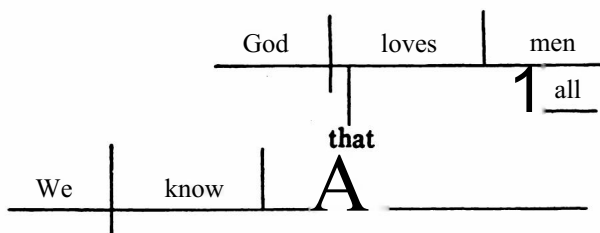
## 2. ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE AFTER VERBS OF SAYING, THINKING, SEEING, AND THE LIKE

We know that God loves all men.

We know that Caesar conquered the Gauls.

We know that God will give rewards to good men.

These are complex sentences. The MAIN clause is: **WE KNOW**. The **THAT** clauses are SUBORDINATE NOUN CLAUSES because they are used as the object of **WE KNOW**. *What* do we know? **THAT GOD LOVES ALL MEN, etc.**



Noun clauses after verbs of **SAYING, THINKING, SEEING, KNOWING, AND THE LIKE** are, in Latin, put in the **ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE**.

In this construction:

1. The VERB is always an INFINITIVE.
2. The SUBJECT is always in the ACCUSATIVE CASE.
3. The TENSE of the INFINITIVE is determined by the RULE: TENSE BY RELATION.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 897-898.

---

<sup>1</sup> misericordia, ae: *mercy*.

Scimus Deum diligere omnes homines.

Literally, *We know God to love all men.*

Scimus Caesarem vlcisse Gallos.

Literally, *We know Caesar to have conquered the Gauls.*

Scimus Deum hominibus bonis praemia daturum esse.

Literally, *We know God to be about to give rewards to good men.*

#### NOTE

1. The *that* is NOT translated in Latin.
2. Since the future participle active is used like an adjective in a compound tense, it will agree with the accusative subject.

Died hanc civitatē semper futuram esse liberam.

*I say that this state will always be free.*

Died sanctos Deum visuros esse.

*I say that the saints will see God.*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review the rules for the indirect reflexive, GRAMMAR, NO. 804.

#### VOCABULARY

(Verbs which may take the accusative with the infinitive; tense by relation)

died, dicere, dixi, dictus, 3, tr.

*‘  
I say  
(tell)*

responded, responderē, respond!, responsus, 2, tr. answer

putō, 1, tr.

*think*

sciō, 4, tr.

*know*

audiō, 4, tr.

*hear*

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

His *diction* is excellent. The *response* was prompt.

**Jesu, Deus noster,  
Miserere nobis!**

## EXERCISE 412

[Essential]

1. *Point out the main clause;*
2. *Point out the accusative with the infinitive;*
3. *Explain the tense of the infinitive;*
4. *Translate:*

## A. The Present Infinitive

1. Puto omnes sanctos Deum diligere. 2. Scio Americanos fortiter pugnare. 3. Puto omnes homines amicitiam quaerere.
4. Legatus dixit Caesarem Gallos vincere. 5. Centurio dixit milites acriter pugnare. 6. Nuntius dixit Gallos oppugnare urbem.

## B. The Perfect Infinitive

1. Scimus Caesarem vicisse Gallos. 2. Scimus Columbum ad American! pervenisse. 3. Scimus Romanos occidisse Christum.
4. Caesar audivit Gallos occidisse legatum. 5. Caesar putavit equites ad castra pervenisse. 6. Legatus putavit Caesarem hostes vicisse.

## C. The Future Infinitive

**Warning.** Remember that the future participle is declined like magnus, a, um and must agree with the SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

1. Puto Americanos fortiter pugnaturos esse. 2. Scio homines bonos Deum visuros esse. 3. Puto Americanos semper hostes victuros esse. 4. Scio Mariam semper Deum visuram esse.
5. Puto Deum omnibus hominibus gratiam daturum esse.
6. Caesar putavit Gallos cessuros esse.

## D. Reflexives after Infinitives

*Explain the italicized words:*

1. Died *me* esse Christianum, fuisse Christianum, semper futurum Christianum. 2. Putasne *te* esse sanctum? 3. Caesar dixit *se* victurum esse Gallos. 4. Dicimus *nos* esse liberos.
5. Dicitisne *vos* obsides duros nobis esse? 6. Romani dixerunt

*se* imperium tōtius Galliae obtinēre. 7. Died *me* agrōs *meds* dēfēnsūrū esse. 8. Hie Americānus ostendit nullum rēgem in civitatē *sud* rēgnū tenēre. 9. Christus dixit *nōs* esse frātēs *suds*. 10. Caesar putāvit *suds* fortiter esse pugnāfurōs. 11. Maria scivit *se* Filium suum adorāre posse.

### E. Agreement after Infinitives

**Warning.** Remember that ACCORDING TO THE GENERAL RULE a linking verb takes the same case after it as before it. Therefore a predicate adjective or noun in the accusative with the infinitive will agree with the subject accusative.

#### *Explain the agreement of the italicized words:*

1. Dicit Christum esse *Filium* Dei. 2. Died omnes ferē hominēs glōriae *cupidōs* esse. 3. Sciō nostram civitatē *liber am* esse. 4. Vir sāctus Rōmānis respondit Christum esse Filium Dei. 5. Rōmānī sciverunt Caesarem esse summum *imperatorem*. 6. Rōmānī sciverunt Rōmā esse *magnam*.

### EXERCISE 413

#### *Translate:*

#### A.

1. The American says that Americans fight bravely. 2. The American says that Washington was a very great general. 3. The American says that his soldiers will fight bravely.

#### B.

1. The lieutenant said that Caesar was conquering the Gauls. 2. The lieutenant said that Caesar had conquered the Gauls. 3. The lieutenant said that his men would conquer the enemy.

#### C.

1. We shall know that God loves us. 2. We shall know that God took away our sins. 3. We shall know that our men will conquer.

**D.**

1. I was saying that our state was free. 2. I was saying that the Roman state had been free. 3. I was saying that our state would always be free.

**E.**

1. He said that he would see God. 2. I said that I would see Rome. 3. She said that she would see Gaul. 4. They said that they would fight bravely. 5. You said that you would send hostages to us. 6. He said that Caesar would give him a reward.

**F.**

1. He had heard that they were in arms. 2. He had heard that the Gauls had fled. 3. They had heard that the Gauls would send hostages.

**EXERCISE 414**

[Essential]

*Translate:*

**A. Present Infinitive**

1. I say that Americans fight bravely. 2. He says that God defends good men. 3. They say that our soldiers are conquering the enemy. 4. He said that Caesar was conquering the Gauls. 5. They said that the Senate was praising Caesar. 6. They said that the Gauls were sending hostages.

**B. Perfect Infinitive**

1. I say that the Romans fought bravely. 2. He says that the Americans were conquering the enemy. 3. We say that Caesar had conquered Gaul. 4. They said that the Gauls had attacked the winter quarters. 5. They said that Caesar had hastened into Gaul. 6. He said that the Senate had given thanks to Caesar.

**G. Future Infinitive**

1. I say that the Americans will fight bravely. 2. He says that we shall conquer the enemy. 3. They will know that we will send help. 4. He said that he would conquer the barbarians.





PYRRHUS ET CINEAS

## READING NO. 35

## DE PYRRHŌ, ĒPĪRI REGĒ

Pyrrhus erat rex Ēpiri. Potesne hoc rēgnum in tabulā<sup>1</sup> vidēre? Pyrrhus nōn erat Rōmānus. Neque in Italia<sup>2</sup> neque in Galliā incolēbat. Erat Graecus. Erat autem rex fortis et glōriae cupidus. Multas aliās gentēs vincere cōstituit. Erat cum exercitū ejus amicus, nōmine Cineas. Hie vērō vir bonus fuit neque ednsilia Pyrrhi probāvit. Quod Pyrrhi amicus fuit, eum fortiter monēre

<sup>1</sup> tabula, ae: *map*. (See the map on page 30.)

nōn timebat. Olim<sup>1</sup> Pyrrhus, glōriā sublātus, ei dixit sē exercitum in Italiam ductūrum esse et Rōmānōs victūrum esse. Putāvit enim se eoſ facile superare posse.

Cineas autem, "Post illam victōriam, Rēx magne," inquit, "quid cōstituisti facere?"

Pyrrhus, "Insula<sup>2</sup> Sicilia, bona et magna," inquit, "Italiae finitima est. In illam trādūcam militeſ medſ ut earn vincam atque obtineam. Facile erit earn insulam<sup>2</sup> armis et virtute occūpare."

Turn Cineas, "Post illam victōriam," inquit, "quid dicis te factūrum esse?"

Ei Pyrrhus respondit se militeſ suds trāns mare in Africam ductūrum esse atque eas etiam regiones victurum esse.

Cineas, "Post haec proelia atque hās victōriās, quid cōstituisti facere?"

Respondit Pyrrhus, "Post has victōrias pācem cōfirmābo."

Statim autem Cineas, "Cū, Ō Rēx bone," inquit, "nōn nunc pācem cōfirmās? Quid te impedit?"

### 3. ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE AFTER VERBS OF SAYING, THINKING, SEEING, AND THE LIKE (CONTINUED)

We have seen that when a verb is used impersonally in Latin:

1. It has no definite subject (English *it*, as in "It rains").
2. It is in the third person singular.
3. In a compound tense the participle is always neuter singular.

An impersonal verb is used in the accusative with the infinitive construction:

1. In the infinitive;
2. Without a subject expressed (English, *it*).
3. In a compound infinitive the participle is always NEUTER.

<sup>1</sup> *olim*, adv.: *once*.

<sup>2</sup> *insula*, ae: *island*.

It behooves us to love God.

Oportet nos Deum diligere.

*I say that it behooves us to love God.*

Died oportefe nos Deum diligere.

It was bitterly fought (i. e., there was bitter fighting).

Acriter pugnafum est.

*I say that it was bitterly fought (i. e., that there was bitter fighting).*

Dico acriter pugnatum esse.

We have seen that verbs like *jubeo* and *oportet* take the accusative with the infinitive. Note this difference: IN THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE AFTER VERBS OF **SAYING**, ETC., THE TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE IS DETERMINED BY RELATION. When the accusative with the infinitive is used AFTER OTHER VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS the tense is generally PRESENT.

### VOCABULARY

(More verbs that may take the accusative  
with the infinitive; tense by relation)

scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptus, 3, tr.	write
reperi, reperire, repperi, repertus, 4, tr.	find (out)
negō, 1, tr.	1 deny I jay . . . not
nuntiō, 1, tr.	announce report
demonstro, 1, tr.	show point out

### NOTE

Verbs which may take an accusative with the infinitive do not always do so. When the sense requires, they also govern indirect questions, accusative objects, *etc.*

**Haec nuntiavit.** *He reported these things.*

**Nuntiavit quot essent hostes.** *He reported how many the enemy were.*

## RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Some people's *script* is illegible. He *described* the *inscriptions* found on ancient monuments. They gave a *negative* answer. He was *demonstrating* the use of a tank.

## RELATED LATIN WORD

Caesar nuntium a lēgātō sūo aċcepit.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY

cemo, cernere, 3, tr.	f distinguish {see
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognovī, cognitus, 3, tr.	f learn [find out
cōfirmō, 1, tr.	affirm
cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexi, cōspectus, 3, tr.   $\begin{smallmatrix} i \\ ca \\ c \end{smallmatrix} \wedge$	f Set! gbl j
ostendō, ostendere, ostendl, ostentus, 3, tr.	show
probō, 1, tr.	[approve [prove
moned, 2, tr.	[warn [advise
videō, vidēre, vidi, visus, 2, tr.	see

## EXERCISE 415

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Probat se Chris tianum esse. 2. Dicimus virōs bonds vērītātem virtutemque semper quaerere. 3. Voſ moned vltam esse brevem. 4. Puer respondit se rēs ā Washingtoniō gestās memoriā tenēre. 5. Te moned Deum hominibus malls praemia nōn esse datūrum. 6. Scio Americanōs sē posse defendere. 7. Cōfirmāmus milites nostrōs fortiter pugnāre. 8. Nōs Christiān! cōfirmāmus Deum, Patrem nostrum, omnēs gentēs diligere. 9. Nautae dicunt ventōs magnōs nāvibus nocēre. 10. Scimus omnēs hominēs, periculō mortis perturbatos, orārē atque gratiam a Deo petere.

11. Scimus memoriam esse custodem rerum cognitarum. 12. Vos, pueri, moned bonam memoriam ad vitam esse utilem. 13. Columbus repperit barbards incolere Americam. 14. Cicero, vir bonus atque nobilis, scripsit se semper virtutem laudaturum esse. 15. Sanctus Paulus scripsit Christum se de rebus quae ad fidem pertinent docuisse. 16. Scriptum est Sanctum Paulum Christum in via subito vidisse. 17. Washingtonius, cum audivisset Benedictum Arnold ad hostes fugisse, repperit ea omnia esse vera. 18. Christus dixit omnes sanctos secum in Caelo Deum visuros esse. 19. Nonne, amice mi, audivisti omnes nos esse fratres? 20. Christus jussit nos omnes homines diligere. 21. Christus, cum a Pilato rogatus esset, respondit se esse regem. 22. Christus negavit se armis et legionibus regnum tenere. 23. Thomas More, cum ad mortem duceretur, negavit se a fide Christiana discessurum esse. 24. Apostoli omnibus hominibus nuntiaverunt Christum esse Filium Dei atque pro nobis interfectum esse. 25. Pilatus putavit Christum esse virum bonum at timuit eum dimittere. Iudaei enim dixerunt Christum se regem vocare. Itaque dixerunt, "Qui se regem facit, contradicit<sup>1</sup> Caesari." 26. Columbus putavit se non ad novas terras sed ad Indiam pervenisse. 27. Imperatores Romani reppererunt Christianos in Italia et in omnibus provinciis esse. Itaque multos ex eis ad mortem duci jusserunt. Tamen non potuerunt fidem Christi vincere.

## EXERCISE 416

[Imitation]

*Imitate the construction of the model  
in translating these sentences:*

**MODEL:** *Negavit se venturum esse.*

*He said that he would not come.*

1. They said that they would not give hostages to him.
2. He said that he would not surrender the arms.
3. They said that they would not flee.

<sup>1</sup> *contradico, contradicere, contradixi, contradictum, 3, intr.; w. dat.: speak against.*

## EXERCISE 417

*Translate:*

**Warning.** In some of these sentences the main verb of SAYING, *etc.*, governs the accusative with the infinitive, in some it governs an indirect question or an accusative object.

1. I found that those things were true. 2. We found out where the enemy had stationed guards. 3. We saw that the enemy had prepared fortifications. 4. We saw where the enemy had pitched camp. 5. They said that the greatness of the winds had injured the ship. 6. I said that Caesar was in charge of the legion. 7. He said that he would not hand over the slaves. 8. He showed that he was a brave man. 9. They reported the slaughter of the hostages. 10. They knew how large the Roman camp was. 11. They were saying that the Gauls were afraid to fight. 12. He saw that the barbarians had come out of the forest. 13. He had seen that the barbarians had prepared fortifications. 14. He knew the names of the centurions. 15. He said that the plans were not useful.

## EXERCISE 418

[Essential]

*Translate:*

**Warning.** Remember that after verbs of SAYING, *etc.*, the tense of the infinitive is TENSE BY RELATION; after jubeo and other expressions it is generally PRESENT.

1. I am able to fight. 2. I said that I was able to fight. 3. I say that I was able to fight. 4. I shall prove that I was able to fight. 5. He said he would fight. 6. He was ordered to fight. 7. They ordered him to fight. 8. It is good to fight bravely. 9. They determined to fight at once. 10. It behooved us to fight bravely. 11. We are prepared to sail. 12. They said they were prepared to sail. 13. They said that they had been prepared to sail for five days. 14. He said he would be prepared to sail within two days. 15. On the third day he was able to sail. 16. It be-

hooves us to sail at once. 17. They are accustomed to sail from this harbor. 18. They said they were accustomed to sail from that harbor. 19. They said there was not sufficient water. 20. It is not difficult to pray. 21. He said that the enemy had fled five miles. 22. On account of the greatness of the winds he said he would not sail. 23. He ordered them to defend the hill until night. 24. They said that they would defend the hill for three days. 25. He did not know whether they had attacked the column. 26. Christ said that He would help and defend all men.

## READING NO. 36

## DE RĒGE FORTI

Leōnidās qui Lacedaemonioŕum<sup>1</sup> reŕ erat, et cui Xerxēs, Per\* sārūm<sup>2</sup> \* rex, scripserat, "Mitte arma," ei respondit, "Veni et ea cape."

Christum Rēgem adōrēmus.

## READING NO. 37

## PILATE'S REPLY

Posuerunt in cruce<sup>8</sup> Jēsu signum in quō scriptum erat: "*Hie est Jēsūs Rēx Jūdaedrum.*"<sup>4</sup> Itaque princeps Jūdaedrum<sup>4</sup> cum hoc signum vidissent, vehementer mōti, ad Pilatū venērunt. "Noli<sup>6</sup> scribere: *Rēx Jūdaedrum*"\*; inquit,<sup>®</sup> "sed: 'ZTfc dixit se esse rēgem Jūdaedrum!'"\*

<sup>1</sup> Lacedaemonii, oŕum: *the Spartans*, who were famous for their courage and their brevity of speech.

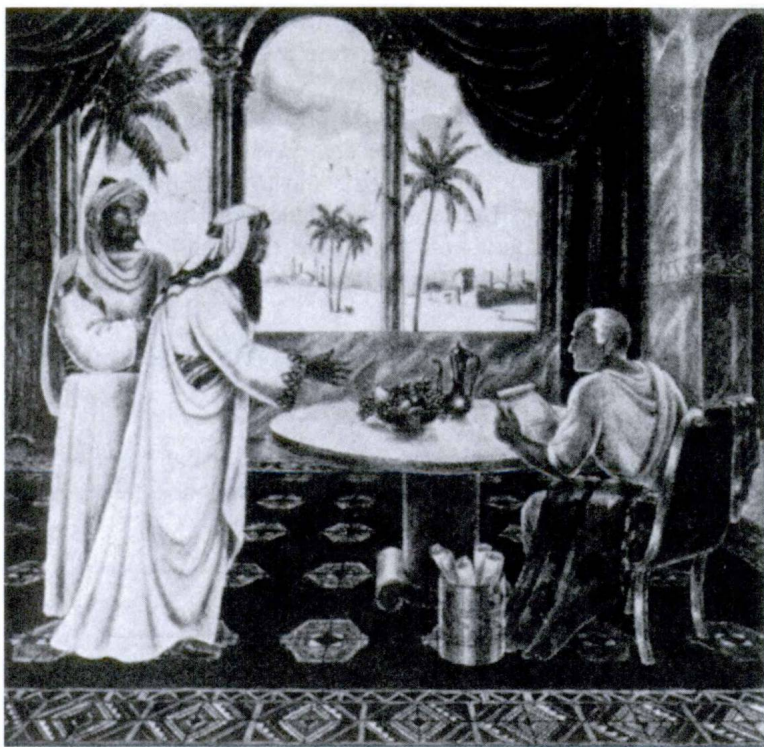
<sup>2</sup> Persae, aŕum: *the Persians*.

<sup>8</sup> crux, crucis: *cross*.

<sup>4</sup> Jūdaei, Jūdaedrum: *the Jews*.

<sup>8</sup> noli scribere: *do not write* (literally, *be unwilling to write*).

<sup>6</sup> inquit: *they said*.



“QUOD’ SCRIPSI, SCRIPSI .”

Respondit Pilatūs: “Quod scripsi, scripsi!” (*Adapted from the account of St, John.*)

#### A LATIN RIDDLE

*Can you solve it?*

Quis est qui non eſt et tamen nomen habet et quaerenti<sup>1</sup> respondet ?

---

<sup>1</sup>quaerenti: *to one asking.*



**O bone Jēsū, miserere nobis!**

READING NO. 38

**DE BELLO CUM PYRRHO GESTO**

Jam dēmōnstrāvimus Rōmānōs multās Italiae gentēs vicisse atque imperium magnae partis Italiae obtinere. Cum gentēs sibi proximās vicissent, bellum cum aliis gentibus gerēbant. Itaque Tarentini, qui Rōmānōs t'mebant, contra<sup>1</sup> eōs pugnābant ne<sup>2</sup> ab eis vincerentur. Tarentini, quod Rōmānōs pellere solī nōn potuerunt, lēgātōs ad Pyrrhum, rēgem Ēpiri, miserunt qui auxilium ab eō peterent. Pyrrhus, glōriae cupidus, dixit se exercitum in Italiam auxilii causa ducturū esse.

Interim Rōmāni omnia quae ad bellum pertinēbant parābant. Itaque Pyrrhus, cum exercitum in Italiam trādūxisset, repperit Rōmānōs ad bellum parātōs esse. Itaque cum omnibus cōpiis contra<sup>3</sup> eōs contendit. Rōmāni aciem instrūxerunt et impetum Pyrrhi exspectabant. Pyrrhus autem secum multōs elephantōs habebat. Hōs primum in equitēs Rōmānōs misit; turn, cum equitēs in fugam dati essent, in aciem militum misit. Rōmāni autem numquam ante id elephantōs in proeliis viderant. Itaque, ordinēs eōrum ab elephantis perturbāti sunt atque multi milites occisi sunt. Tamen Rōmāni fortiter pugnābant. Sed magnitudīne corporis elephantdrum territi hostēs vincere nōn potuerunt. Post magnam caedem Rōmāni in castra se recēperunt ne<sup>4</sup> omnes omnind occiderentur.

Septem milia militum Rōmānōrum in hōc proeliō ceciderunt. Agri corporum plēni erant, sed Pyrrhus, cum corpora Rōmānōrum interfectōrum vulnera in fronte<sup>1</sup> habere vidisset, dixit se cum his militibus Rōmānis omnes omnind terrās vincere posse. Ex militibus Pyrrhi quattuor milia occisa sunt. Rōmāni facile aliōs milites cōgere potuerunt sed difficile fuit novās cōpiās ex Ēpiro comparare. Itaque Pyrrhus propter magnum occisōrum

<sup>1</sup> in fronte: m\*front.

numerus vidit hanc victoriam non satis utilem esse. "If I conquer again in this same manner," inquit, "I shall have no soldiers left."

Ever since then a victory won at the cost of disastrous losses has been called a "Pyrrhic victory."

#### 4. PASSIVE INFINITIVES

**ASSIGNMENT:** Review the present infinitive passive, GRAMMAR, Nos. 284, 292-294.

The perfect infinitive passive is a COMPOUND tense formed by using the perfect participle passive with *esse*.

Since the participle in a compound tense is declined like an adjective, the participle will agree with the SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

*I say that the Gauls were conquered.*

*Died Gallōs victos esse.*

The future infinitive passive is very rare; hence you **need not** learn it now.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 285, 295-297.

#### VOCABULARY

(Words that may take the accusative with the infinitive; tense by relation.)

*existimō, I, tr.*

*think*

*sentiō, sentire, señs?, señsus, 4, tr.*

*feel*  
*perceive*  
*think*

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

We cannot perceive God with our *senses*. He *sensed* that something was wrong. The *sensation* caused by extreme heat.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Write out the present and perfect infinitives passive of the verbs in Exercise 410.

## EXERCISE 419

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Died om̄nēs hominēs a Dēo diligi.
2. Dicō Gallōs a Caesare victōs esse.
3. Dixit Caesarem a senātū laudāri.
4. Dixit Gallōs a Caesare pulsōs esse.
5. Caesar dixit sē a Gallis nōn laudāri.
6. Died mē a Dēo defendi.
7. Dixisti tē a senātū laudāri.
8. Dicit sē a barbaris adjuvari.
9. Dicimus nos ab hostibus videri.
10. Dicitis vōs a Dēo adjuvari.
11. Dicunt sē a duce appellāri.
12. Dixi mē a barbaris captum esse.
13. Negāvit tē a barbaris captum esse.
14. Dixit sē a Caesare laudatū esse.
15. Dicimus nōs, a viris fortibus liberatōs esse.
16. Dixērunt sē in castra a Caesare vocatōs esse.
17. Lēgātus negāverat Caesarem a Gallis victum esse.
18. Lēgātus negāverat Caesarem a Gallis vinci.
19. Negō mē ibi collocatū esse.

**Dominus nōs benedicat<sup>1</sup> et ab omni malo dēfendat et in vitam perducāt<sup>2</sup> aeternam.**

## EXERCISE 420

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. I think that Lincoln was killed by a bad man.
2. I perceive that the hill has been seized.
3. He thought that Rome was being attacked.
4. He denied that Rome had been seized.
5. I think that Lincoln is praised by all good men.
6. We said that we had been freed by a brave man.
7. You know that our slaves were freed by Lincoln.
8. You heard that America was found by Columbus.
9. We know that grace is being given to all men.
10. We knew that fortifications were being prepared by the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> benedicō, benedicere, benedixi, benedictus, 3, tr.; bless,

<sup>2</sup> perducō, perducere, perduxī, perductus, 3, tr.; lead to.

11. We knew that the enemy were being aroused to war by their leaders. 12. We knew that arms were not being prepared by our own leaders. 13. You know that all men are loved by God. 14. Do you think that God has always been adored? 15. We think that God is being adored and praised by good Christians.

## EXERCISE 421

1. Translate;
2. Parse the italicized words:

1. Scimus Washingtonium *virum* fortem ab omnibus vocatum esse. 2. Diximus obsides a Caesare propter injurias Galldrum saepe *occisos* esse. 3. Jam demonstravimus Christum a Romanis interfectum esse. 4. Dicimus in bello matres saepe *interfici*. 5. American!, cum audivissent *suds* in Bataan captos esse, vehementer perturbati sunt. 6. Galli audiverunt obsides *suds* a Caesare *occisos* esse. Praeterea sciverunt omnia frumenta ab *ed* incensa esse; urbes et oppida aut expugnata esse aut expugnari; arma et servos captos esse; exercitus victos esse; totam Galliam vastatam esse neque *se* ab *ed* defendi posse. Itaque miser! ad eum legatos mittere coacti sunt qui pacem ab *ed* peterent. 7. German!, cum *nuntiatum* esset magnas copias ab Americanis eorumque sociis in Galliam *esse traductas*, vehementer *moti* atque perturbati sunt.

## READING NO. 39

## DE PYRRHŌ ET FABRICIO

Post illud proelium de quo jam demonstravimus Romani de pace non egerunt. Copias novas coegerunt; arma ac tela comparabant. Pyrrhum enim atque ejus elephantos vincere et ex Italia pellere jam constituerant.

Fabricius imperator factus est et contra Pyrrhum missus est. Cum ad castra Pyrrhi appropinquavisset atque castra posuisset, medicus<sup>1</sup> ex castris Pyrrhi ad Fabricium venit. Hic dixit se

<sup>1</sup> medicus, i: doctor (ci. medical).

Pyrrhum regem occisurum esse, et ita Rōmānōs ab eo liberatūrum esse. Praemia autem rogāvit. Fabricius vēto eum cēpit et iussit eum ligatūm<sup>1</sup> ad Pyrrhum dūel. Praeterea ad Pyrrhum scripsit Rōmānōs gladiis nōn perfidiā<sup>2</sup> pugnāre. Pyrrhus, ita ab hoste dē periculō sud monitus, vehementer mōtus est. "It is easier," inquit, "to move the sun from its course, than Fabricius from the path of honesty."

Rōmāni autem Fabricium, virum fortem, ad Pyrrhum misērunt qui dē captivis commūtandis<sup>3</sup> ageret. Pyrrhus, cum dē hāc rē cum Fabriciō ēgisset, vidit eum esse virum fortem atque nōbilem. Itaque ei praemia dabat ut sēcum pugnāret. Fabricius autem haec praemia nōn accēpit. Ita ostendit se esse vērum Rōmānum. Turn Pyrrhus, "Cūr nōn mēcum in Ēpirum veniēs?" inquit; "tibi magnam rēgni mei partem dābd." Rūrsus Fabricius negāvit se rēgnū acceptūrum esse dixitque se semper in rē publicā libera mānsurūm.

Post hoc Pyrrhus lēgātōs ad senātum Rōmānum misit qui dē pāce agerent. Itaque in senātum ducti sunt atque dēmōstrāvērunt quae essent pācis condiōnēs.<sup>4</sup> In senātū alii pācem cōnfirmāre cupivērunt, alii vēto negāvērunt se condiōnēs<sup>4</sup> acceptūrōs. Praeterea hi ostendērunt exercitum Rōmānum victum esse; agrōs sociōrum vastātōs esse; glōriam nōminis Rōmāni nōn cōservātā esse. Diū dē hāc rē agēbant. At ūnus ex eis, vir summus, nōmine Appius Claudius, vehementer commōtus, "The Roman people," inquit, "will not discuss terms of peace while an armed and victorious foe yet stands on the soil of Italy." Itaque senātus condiōnēs<sup>4</sup> nōn probāvit et bellum rūrsus gerere cōstituit.

**Vir fortis neque armis neque praemiis vinci potest.**

<sup>1</sup> ligō, Z., /r.r bind.

<sup>2</sup> perfidia, ae: treachery.

<sup>3</sup> dē captivis commutandis: concerning an exchange of prisoners.

<sup>4</sup> condiō, condiōnis: condition, term(s).



## READING NO. 40

## THE POLITE FLY

In dorsō<sup>1</sup> tauri<sup>2</sup> musca<sup>3</sup> parva erat. Musca,<sup>3</sup> "Si<sup>4</sup> tē premō," inquit, "statim discēdam." Taurus<sup>2</sup> autem ei respondit, "Ubi es? Nihil enim sentio."

## EXERCISE 422

[Formal Review of Unit Twelve]

1. Explain the formation of: (a) the present infinitive active; (b) the perfect infinitive active; (c) the future participle active; (d) the future infinitive active; (e) the present infinitive passive; (f) the perfect infinitive passive.
2. Give the rules for the accusative with the infinitive after verbs of *saying, etc.*
3. Explain the rule, "Tense by Relation?"
4. With what does a predicate noun or adjective in the accusative with the infinitive agree?
5. How is a verb used IMPERSONALLY in the accusative with the infinitive?

---

<sup>1</sup> dorsum, i: *back*.

<sup>2</sup> taurus, i: *bull*.

<sup>3</sup> musca, ae: *fly*.

<sup>4</sup> si, conj.: *if*.

6. Is there any important difference between the use of the accusative with the infinitive after verbs of *saying, etc.*, and after other verbs?

7. Must verbs of *saying, etc.*, ALWAYS take an accusative with the infinitive? Name some other constructions they MAY take and give examples.

#### EXERCISE 423

[Functional Review of Unit Twelve]

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the italicized constructions:*

1. *Dico Deum esse bonum.* 2. *Respondit se fidem Christianam non negaturum esse.* 3. *Caesar putavit omnem Galliam esse pacatam.* 4. *Sancti scripserunt Deum omnes homines diligere.* 5. *Columbus repperit multas gentes Americam incolere.* 6. *Negavit se venturum esse.* 7. *Nuntiatum est acriter pugnatum esse.* 8. *Demonstravit oportere eos se dedere.* 9. *Existimo nos Americanos liberos semper futuros esse.* 10. *Sensit se in magno periculo esse.* 11. *Dixit se eo anno in Gallia fuisse.*

## UNIT THIRTEEN

### LESSON 40: THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

#### 1. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**POSITIVE DEGREE.** An adjective may simply describe a noun, as:

*The Gaul is brave. Gallus est fortis.*

This is called the POSITIVE DEGREE of the adjective.

**COMPARATIVE DEGREE.** An adjective may COMPARE a noun with some other noun either expressed or understood. In this case the COMPARATIVE DEGREE of the adjective is used. In English the comparative degree is formed either by adding -er to the positive or by using the adverb *more* with the positive.

The Roman is braver than the Gaul.

*Braver* is the COMPARATIVE DEGREE of *brave*. The “other noun” (*Gaul*) is EXPRESSED.

This thing is more useful.

*More useful* is the COMPARATIVE DEGREE of *useful*. Another noun is here UNDERSTOOD. “This thing is more useful than *some other thing*!”

**SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.** An adjective may show that a noun has a quality in the HIGHEST DEGREE. In this case the SUPERLATIVE DEGREE of the adjective is used. In English the superlative degree is formed either by adding -est to the positive or by using the adverb *most* with the positive.

The Belgians are the bravest of all the Gauls.

*Bravest* is the SUPERLATIVE DEGREE of *brave*.



This thing is most useful.

*Most useful* is the SUPERLATIVE DEGREE of *useful*.

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 91-98. Memorize the rules for comparison. To COMPARE an adjective means to give the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees, *e. g.*:

#### COMPARISON OF FORTIS AND UTILIS

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
fortis, e	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, a, um
brave	braver	bravest
ūtilis, e	ūtilior, ūtilius	ūtilissimus, a, um
useful	more useful	most useful

#### EXERCISE 424

*Compare these adjectives:*

- |             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. aliēnus  | 6. communis | 11. sanctus |
| 2. altus    | 7. longus   | 12. verus   |
| 3. angustus | 8. gravis   | 13. tutus   |
| 4. brevis   | 9. plenus   | 14. latus   |
| 5. cupidus  | 10. nobilis | 15. certus  |

#### EXERCISE 425

*Compare these adjectives:*

- |               |            |            |
|---------------|------------|------------|
| 1. facilis    | 3. liber   | 5. miser   |
| 2. difficilis | 4. integer | 6. similis |

## 2. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

#### VOCABULARY

aestimā, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin.	think
iudicō, /, tr.; acc. w. infin.	judge
quam, adv.	than
certiōrem (-eſ) facere; acc. w. infin.; de w. abl., or an indirect question	to inform

## NOTE

1. Quam, *than*, takes the same case after as before it.

*They are braver than the Gauls.*

*Et fortiores sunt quam Galli (nominative).*

*He said that they were braver than the Gauls.*

*Dixit eos fortiores esse quam Gallos.*

2. Certiorem (-ēs) is the comparative of certus. Literally the phrase certiorem facere means *to make (someone) more certain*. Certiorem (-es) will therefore always agree with the DIRECT OBJECT of facid.

*They informed Caesar.*

*Gaesarem certiorem fecerunt.*

*(Literally: They made Caesar more certain.)*

*He informed the Gauls.*

*Gallōs certiores fecit.*

Certiorem (-es) facere may take either: (1) *de* with the ablative, (2) the accusative with the infinitive (tense by relation), or (3) an indirect question, since the phrase is like a verb of saying.

1. *He informed Caesar about this matter.*

*Gaesarem de hac re certiorem fecit.*

2. *He informed Caesar that Gaul had been pacified.*

*Caesarem certiorem fecit Galliam pacatam esse.*

3. *He informed Caesar how large the fortifications were.*

*Gaesarem certiorem fecit quantae multitudines essent.*

ASSIGNMENT: Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 101-102,

## EXERCISE 426

*Decline:*

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. servus miserior | 4. mōns altissimus   |
| 2. via difficilior | 5. clvitas Uberrima  |
| 3. flūmen lātius   | 6. agmen longissimum |

## EXERCISE 427

*Translate:*

1. On account of a more wretched life. 2. On a higher wall.
3. On account of a truer friendship. 4. Across a wider ditch.
5. With braver military tribunes. 6. With a most holy man.
7. Without a most difficult plan. 8. With a braver lieutenant.
9. On account of most serious effort. 10. In a longer rank.
11. On behalf of the most wretched hostages. 12. Into a safer place.
13. On the higher mountains. 14. On a longer journey.
15. Through most difficult places. 16. Across the widest river.
17. With the truest friends. 18. On account of most serious affairs.
19. For a nobler leader. 20. In a freer state.

## EXERCISE 428

## [Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Mens est pars hominis nobilissima. 2. Maria est omnium sanctorum sanctissima. 3. Haec via brevior est quam illa.
4. Quid verius esse potest quam fides nostra? 5. Caesar gloriae cupidissimus erat. 6. Iudicae Lincoln fortidrem et nobilidrem fuisse quam Washingtonium? 7. Aestimasse Americanos liberiores esse quam alios? 8. Nonne arma et tela ad bellum utilissima sunt? 9. Is qui nos in rebus adversis sine mora adjuvat est amicus certissimus et verissimus. 10. Nonne iudicas sanctos similiores Christo esse quam alios Christianos? 11. Maria est gratia plenissima. 12. Tutius est in castris manere quam in acie pugnare. Tamen oportet omnes milites fortissimos, a duce iussos, in acie pugnare. 13. Difficillimum est per montes iter facere.

## EXERCISE 429

*Answer in English:*

1. Fuitne Lincoln fortior quam Washingtonius?
2. Estne flumen Mississippi omnium fluminum longissimum?
3. Estne flumen Mississippi longius quam flumen Missouri?

4. Quod flūmen longissimum omnium flumīnus est ?
5. Qui montēs in nostris finibus altissimi sunt ?
6. Estne mōns Pike's Peak altior quam mons Wilson ?

## EXERCISE 430

*Translate:*

1. Quae sunt ūtilissima ad bellum? Nōne arma et tēla sunt ūtilissima ad bellum ? Nōne cōpia frūmenti et exercitus magnus ūtilissima etiam sunt? Sumusne nōs ad bellum parāti? Sumusne paratiōrēs ad bellum quam alii populi et gentēs ? Jūdicāsne oportēre nōs omnium populōrum paratissimos ad bellum semper esse ? Num times hostes? Num putas bellum rursus futurum eesse?

2. Qui vir amicus vērissimus et certissimus esse potest ? Vērissimus amicus summam in nōs fidem atque summam in nōs voluntatem habet. Vir fortis et sāctus vērissimus amicus esse potest, nam etiam Cicerō, qui Christiānus nōn fuit, dicit nūllam posse esse amicitiam sine virtūte et fidē. Nōne jūdicāmus oportēre vērissimum et certissimum amicum nōs semper adjuvāre atque diligere? Nōne in rēbus adversis ab eō auxilium petimus atque exspectāmus ? Vērus amicus etiam post longissimum tempus in fidē amicitiaque manet. Itaque quis amicus vērior esse potest quam Christus? Nam pro nobis dolōrēs gravēs sustinuit atque ad mortem ductus est. Quis certior amicus esse potest quam Christus? Nam semper nōs diligit et adjuvat. Nēmō nobis amicior<sup>1</sup> est quam Christus. Nōne eum diligemus ? In fidē et amicitia cum eō semper maneamus.

3. In nostris finibus sunt multi montēs et alti et magni. Scisne qui mōns altissimus sit omnium montium qui in nostris finibus sunt ? Estne mōns Pike's Peak altior quam mōns Wilson ? Estne altissimus omnium nostrorum montium ?

4. In nostris finibus etiam sunt multa flūmina longa et lāta. Cognōvistine quae sint flūmina longissima? Estne flūmen Mississippi longius quam flūmen Missouri? Estne flūmen Mississippi longissimum omnium flumīnum quae in nostris finibus sunt?

---

<sup>1</sup> amicus, a, urn: *friendly*.

Quod flūmen lātissimum est? Estne flūmen Missouri aut flūmen Ohio lātius quam flūmen Mississippi? Estne flūmen Mississippi lātissimum omnium nostrdrum flumīnum?

**Veni, Sāncte Splritus!**

**EXERCISE 431**

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Was Caesar the bravest of all the Romans? 2. Do you think that Caesar was braver than all other generals? 3. This way is easier than that. 4. Do you judge that this way is easier than that? 5. Who informed you that this way is safest? 6. This mountain is higher. 7. It is safer to withdraw from the first battle line, but it is braver to withstand the attack of the enemy. 8. Hope is the most common of all things. 9. Generals often lead their troops across the widest rivers and through the highest mountains. 10. The Roman slaves were often most wretched. 11. Which state is freest of all? 12. The chiefs informed Caesar that this tribe was the bravest of all the Gauls. 13. Was Caesar more eager for victory than Napoleon ? 14. Don't you think that Christ is the truest of all friends?

**3. THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON**

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 777-780.

**EXERCISE 432**

*Translate:*

1. Nihil fide nostrā verius est. 2. Caesar aliis ducibus fortior erat. 3. Quid est in homine mente nobilior? 4. Quis Caesare fortior erat? 5. Quern iudicās nostrō Washingtoniō nobilidrem fuisse? 6. Nemo Christo sanctior -esse potest. 7. Num ille mons est hoc monte altior ? 8. Saepe tutius est pugnare quam fugere.

## EXERCISE 433

*Translate :*

(Use the ablative of comparison whenever possible.)

1. What river is longer than this river? 2. What is more common than hope? 3. What mountain is higher than that mountain? 4. One way is more narrow; the other, however, is safer.
5. This ditch is wider than that. 6. No one is more holy than Christ. 7. The way through the mountains is shorter than the other way. 8. What is more certain than the friendship of Christ? 9. Who was braver than Caesar? 10. Who was more wretched than a Roman slave?

## 4. IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the irregular comparatives and superlatives in GRAMMAR, NOS. 99, 1-6, 11; 100, 2 and 7-8. Study GRAMMAR, page 22, footnote 2.

SENTENTIA CICERONIS

**Nihil est vērītātis lūce dulcius.<sup>1</sup>**

## NOTE ON IDIOM

The Latin superlative may often be translated by *very* with the English positive (GRAMMAR, NO. 93).

**Haec via optima est. This way is very good.**

## EXERCISE 434

*Translate:*

1. With greater forces. 2. Towards the greatest city. 3. With the best men. 4. In a smaller camp. 5. In the greatest danger.
6. On account of more rewards. 7. For the sake of greater glory.
8. With the worst men. 9. After the greatest slaughter. 10. After

---

<sup>1</sup>dulcis, e: *sweet, delightful*.

the smallest things. 11. On account of very great danger. 12. For the sake of very great rewards.

## EXERCISE 435

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Quid virtute melius est? 2. Iudicāsne amicitiam melidrem esse quam virtutem? 3. Aestimā nihil virtute melius esse. 4. Nōne plurimi hominēs aestimant glōriam aut imperium melius esse quam virtutem? 5. Ei tamen pessimi sunt hominēs qui, glōriae causā, omnia loca maximā caede et summō dolore complent. 6. Itaque dicimus virtutem esse rem optimam et summam. 7. Quid peccātō pējus est? 8. Iudicātisne mortem pējorem esse quam peccātum? 9. Nōne peccātum pessimum est Christum relinquere et fidem negare? 10. Itaque aestimāmus nihil peccātō pējus esse, nam Deus nōs docet peccātum esse rem omnium rerum pessimam. 11. Sed difficile est ad summam virtutem pervenire, nam per maximōs laborēs et summum dolorem ad summam virtutem pervenimus. 12. Deō Optimō Maximō grātiās agāmus. 13. Salūs populi sit suprēma lēx. 14. Cicerō, "Summus dolor," inquit, "plūres diēs manēre nōn potest." 15. Nihil pējus est quam ex acie fugere. 16. Peccāta et maxima et minima relinquāmus. 17. Melius est ā rēgibus et dominis liberum esse. 18. Sunt plurimae et maximae urbēs in nostris finibus. 19. Melior et faciliior est via brevissima quam via longissima. 20. Legātus pessimus plūs frūmenti petivit, sed Galli plūs frūmenti dare nōn potuerunt. 21. Scimus Rōmam minorem esse quam multās aliās civitatēs. 22. Sunt plūres hominēs in nostris finibus quam in Galliā. 23. Quern iudicās esse omnium hominum pessimum? 24. Rōmāni castra locis superioribus semper pōnēbant. 25. Rōma propior est Galliae quam nostrae urbēs. 26. Is qui majōribus copiis impetum in hostes facit, saepe vincit. 27. In Bataan nostrae copiae minores erant quam Japonum. 28. Caesar legiōnēs ex aliis hibernis ad sē vocāvit quō majōres cōpiās sēcum haberet.

## SENTENTIAE SELECTAE

1. Iracundiam<sup>1</sup> qui vincit, hostem superat maximum. (*Publius Syrus.*)
2. Virtus praemium est optimum. (*Plautus.*)
3. Nihil est virtute melius. (*Adapted from Cicero.*)
4. Ad maiorem Dei gloriam. (*Motto of the Jesuits.*)

**Ē plūribus ūnum**

(Inscription on coins of the United States)

## EXERCISE 436

[Essential]

*Translate :*

1. Caesar took up a stand on a higher place and waited for larger forces. 2. Very many men praise virtue, but of these many are very bad men. 3. It behooves the best men to be in charge of the state. 4. Was not Judas<sup>2</sup> worse than Benedict<sup>3</sup> Arnold? The latter helped the enemies of his own state, but the former gave Jesus Christ into the hands of the worst men. 5. Do you judge that Lincoln was a better man than Washington? 6. Brave men with a smaller supply of arms often conquer a larger band of the enemy. 7. Don't you think that sailors and soldiers are often in the greatest danger? Let us pray for them. 8. MacArthur with a very small band of men long withstood the strongest attacks of the enemy. 9. We were not able to send MacArthur more arms and provisions<sup>4</sup> because he was many miles away and the ships of the enemy were on all sides. 10. More men have been killed in this war than in any other war. 11. The highest law is the law of Christ.

---

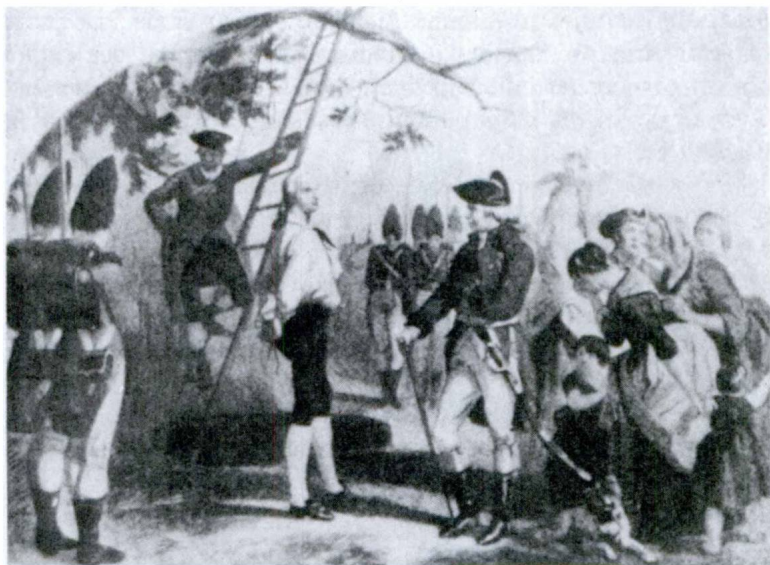
<sup>1</sup> *iracundia*, ae: *anger*.

<sup>2</sup> *Judas*: *Judas*, ae.

<sup>3</sup> *Benedict*: *Benedictus*, i.

\* *provisions*: *irumentum*, i.\*





NATHAN HALE

## READING NO. 41

NATHAN HALE

Rōmāni virtutem virdrum optimdrum memoriā semper tenuerunt. Nōs Americān! etiam multos optimos virs qui pro hāc nostrā rē publicā maximās rēs gesserunt laudāmus atque mefnoriā tenēmus.

Ōlim<sup>1</sup> nostri cum Britannis maximum bellum gerēbant ut rem publicam nostram ab edrum imperiō liberarent. Imperātor Americānus fuit Washingtonius, vir optimus et fortissimus, qui diū pro civitate sua et res magnas gessit et gravissimos sustinuit dolores.

Cum dux Britannōrum cōpiās suās in Manhattan trādūxisset, Washingtonius cum omnibus suis cōpiis adversus ei cōstitit. Cōsiliū autem capere nōn potuit, nam nōn cognōverat ubi imperātor hostium milites sūds collocavissēt. Erat autem in exercitu

<sup>1</sup> Ōlim, *adv.*: once.

Americāno<sup>1</sup> centurio<sup>2</sup> fortissimus, nōmine Nathan Hale. Hie parātus erat in castra hostium contendere atque omnia loca explorāre ut cognōsceret quibus in locis hostēs custōdēs collocāvissent quantaque essent edrum mūnitiōnēs. Hunc Washingtonius in hostium castra misit.

Sine morā Hale in hostium castra contendit. Clam pervēnit. Omnia loca explorāvit. Custōdēs, armdrum cōpiam, mūnitiōnēs vidit—at hostēs tandem<sup>1</sup> intellēxerunt<sup>2</sup> quid ageret. Itaque eum captum ad ducem dūxerunt. Dux, de<sup>3</sup> rē certior factus, eum ad mortem dūel jussit. Cum autem fortissimus ille Nathan Hale ad mortem dūceretur, “I regret,” inquit, “that I have but one life to give for my country.”

Nōne virtūte maximā hūjus viri incitāti cōfirmātiq̄ue rem pūblicam nostram diligere atque defendere paratiores sūmus?

#### READING NO. 42

#### THE ANSWER OF THE SPARTAN KING

Lacedaemonii<sup>3</sup> magnam glōriam belli et virtūtis habēbant. Ōlim<sup>4</sup> bellum gerēbant. Vēnit nuntius ad rēgem Lacedaemoniorū.<sup>5</sup> “Magnus,” inquit, “est numerus hostium.” Rēx, vir fortissimus, ei respondit, “Tanto<sup>5</sup> majōr erit gloria nostra.”

<sup>1</sup> tandem, *adv.*: at last.

<sup>2</sup> intellego, intellegere, intel lexī, intellectus, 3, *tr.*: understand.

<sup>3</sup> Lacedaemonii, Lacedaemoniorū: the Lacedaemonians, the Spartans.

<sup>4</sup> Ōlim, *adv.*: once.

<sup>5</sup> tantō: *lit.*, by so much; translate so much the . . .

## LESSON 41: DEPONENT VERBS

### 1. INDICATIVE OF DEPONENT VERBS

In Latin some verbs have PASSIVE FORMS but ACTIVE MEANINGS. Such verbs are called DEPONENTS. They are conjugated like the passive of the regular conjugations but each PASSIVE FORM has the corresponding ACTIVE MEANING.

**Cōnor.** *I try.*

**Ducem sequētur.** *He will follow the leader.*

**Hannibal Rōmānos vincere conatus est.**

*Hannibal tried to conquer the Romans.*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, Nos. 334-335.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, 1, tr.; w. infin.</b>	<i>[try I attempt</i>
<b>vereor, verēri, veritus sum, 2, tr.; w. infin.</b>	<i>fear</i>
<b>sequor, sequi, secutus sum, 3, tr.</b>	<i>follow</i>
<b>patior, pati, passus sum, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.</b>	<i>I suffer</i>
	<i>[rise</i>
<b>orior, oriri, ortus sum, 4, intr.</b>	<i>I arise</i>

#### RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *Orient*. We have learned the rules for the *sequence* of tenses. We have been saved by the *Passion* and death of Christ. The Saints were very *patient*.

#### EXERCISE 437

Write out the third person, singular and plural, of the present, imperfect, future, perfect, and pluperfect indicative of the words in the vocabulary and give the English meanings.

## EXERCISE 438

*Translate:*

- |               |                  |                  |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. cōnābātur  | 10. oriētur      | 18. sequuntur    |
| 2. verēbantur | 11. cōnāta est   | 19. patior       |
| 3. sequebar   | 12. ortum est    | 20. oriuntur     |
| 4. patiebāmur | 13. passus est   | 21. ortum erat   |
| 5. oriēbātur  | 14. veriti sumus | 22. passi erant  |
| 6. cōnābuntur | 15. secūti estis | 23. secūta erat  |
| 7. verēbitur  | 16. cōnāris      | 24. veriti estis |
| 8. sequar     | 17. verētur      | 25. cōnāta es    |
| 9. patiemur   |                  |                  |

## EXERCISE 439

*Translate:*

1. We were trying. 2. They were following the centurion.  
 3. He fears the military tribune. 4. They were following the ships.  
 5. He is trying to flee. 6. He had feared the allies. 7. They fear severe wounds.  
 8. He will follow no leader. 9. They will not allow it. 10. A shout arose. 11. They fear God alone.  
 12. He had tried to capture the king. 13. A band of men followed them.  
 14. Will he allow us to lead our troops across the river? 15. They will try to capture the fortifications and to bum the town.

## EXERCISE 440

*Translate:*

1. Hostēs nōn vereor. 2. Christīan! Christum sequuntur.  
 3. Christus multa passus est. 4. Bellum novum ortum est. 5. Eds interficere nōn veritus est.  
 6. Christīan! p̄furima patiebantur. 7. Ōrāre nōn cōnātus es.  
 8. Qui sequitur Christum, ducem optimum sequitur. 9. Rōmāni Deum vērūm nōn verēbantur.  
 10. Eōs per p̄vinciam contendere nōn passus est. 11. Tē, Christe, sequar.  
 12. Fugere cōnābantur. 13. Cū eum sequebantur? 14. Maria doldreſ gravissimoſ passa est.  
 15. Equitēs hostēs secuti sunt. 16. Maximus clamor undīque ortus est.

17. Timor inter milites subito ortus est. 18/Jūdæi Deum vehementer verēbantur. 19. Illam urbem capere cōnabātur. 20. Eds "nterficere cōnāti sumus.

## EXERCISE 441

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Non patiar maximās cōpiās per provinciam dūel. 2. Cum Caesar tōtam Galliam pācātā esse putāvisset, subito novum et difficillimum bellum ortum est. 3. Pilātus Christum verēbātur et adjuvāre cōnātus est. Veritus est tamen etiam Jūdæos et Rōmānos. Itaque eos pāssus est Christum ad mortem ducere. 4. Plurimae gentes Rōmānos vincere cōnatae sunt, at nūlla gēns eos vicit. 5. Omnēs sancti, grātiā Dei incitati, Christum secūti sunt. 6. Christus pro salute nostra gravissimos dolōrēs passus est. 7. Plūrimi milites Napoleon, propter ejus magnitudinem animi, secūti sunt. 8. Plūrimae gentes deos nōn verōs verēbantur, 9. Tē, dux, nōn sequar, nam glōriae cupidus, omnia loca caede atque dolōre complēbis. 10. Cum legiones ad oppidi mūrōs appropinquāvissent, maximus clamor ortus est, nam Galli mōre suō clamāverunt<sup>1</sup> se omnia Rōmānis dedituros esse.

## SENTENTIA OVIDII

**M . . . Video meliora proboque;  
Deteriora<sup>2</sup> sequor."**

## EXERCISE 442

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. I am following Caesar. 2. You fear God. 3. He is suffering pain. 4. We do not allow him to come. 5. You (pl.) are trying

<sup>1</sup> clā mō, l, intr.: shout.

<sup>2</sup> dēterior, ius: worse.

to fight. 6. Wars arise on account of injustices done. 7. They were trying to flee. 8. You (pl.) were fearing Caesar. 9. We were allowing them to flee. 10. A war was arising. 11. You were following the commander in chief. 12. I was fearing death. 13. Wars will always arise. 14. He will not allow us to fight. 15. He tried to capture Rome. 16. The Romans swiftly followed the enemy. 17. They had allowed the hostages to depart. 18. A new war had arisen. 19. You have followed Christ for a long time. 20. We have not feared to fight.

## 2. SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENT VERBS

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 334-335. Review GRAMMAR, NOS. 267-282, 518, 561, 660-662, and FIRST YEAR LATIN, page 300.

### EXERCISE 443

[Subjunctive in Wishes]

*Translate:*

1. Nē patiātur eds fugere. 2. Nē oriātur novum bellum.  
3. Sequātur ducem. 4. Vereantur Deum. 5. Patiantur nōs in castra venire.

**Regem qui fēcit nōs,  
Venite adōrēmus!**

### EXERCISE 444

[Hortatory Subjunctive]

*Translate:*

1. Sequāmur Christum etiam ad mortem. 2. Prō Christō patiāmur. 3. Sāncti esse cōnēmur. 4. Patiāmur omnes in pāce esse. 5. Nē vereāmur mortem. 6. Deum vereāmur. 7. Cōnēmur pācem servāre. 8. Ne sēquāmūr duces mālōs.

## EXERCISE 445

[Indirect Questions]

*Translate:*

1. Rogāvit num novum bellum ortum esset. 2. Militēs rogāvit num mortem vehementer verērentur. 3. Quaesivit num sancti Christum secūti essent. 4. Eds certiores fecit quis se secutus esset. 5. Rogo quae gentes Romanos vincere conatae sint. 6. Senatus Caesarem rogavit num Gallōs maximas copias per provinciam ducere passus esset. 7. Dux tribūnum militum rogavit quanta copiae se secutae essent. 8. Rogo cur omnes homines Deum verum et unum non vereantur.

## EXERCISE 446

[Gum-Clauses]

*Translate:*

1. Hostes, cum maximas copias trans flumen latissimum ducere conarentur, a Caesare in fugam coniecti sunt. 2. Caesar, cum hostes difficillimam viam secutus esset, eos in fugam dedit. 3. Christus, cum gravissimos dolores pateretur, nobis matrem suam dedit. 4. Lincoln, cum bellum in nostra civitate ortum esset, omnes servos a dominis liberavit. 5. Caesar, cum Gallōs per provinciam iter facere omnino non passus esset, fines provinciae armis defendit.

## EXERCISE 447

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Jesus Christ, the Son of God, allowed Himself to be led to death for our salvation. Let us therefore also follow Him without delay and without fear. Let us not fear the greatest danger. Let us not fear the worst death. Let us place our hope in God that He may not allow us to be overcome in adversity by the enemy.

2. Our soldiers, when they were following the bravest leaders

and the best generals, did not fear the attacks of the enemies or the dangers of sea and forest. When the enemy tried to drive them out of their fortifications, when the enemy tried to withstand their attacks, they did not leave the battle line nor did they flee. Our leader, Christians, is the bravest and best of all. Let us try always to do the things He orders that we may follow Him to certain victory and to the greatest glory.

3. You ask how great things Christ suffered. He suffered the greatest and worst. You ask why He suffered the greatest pains. He suffered the greatest pains that we, moved by His sorrow, might follow Him, that we might try always to remain in His friendship.

4. They always asked why wars arose. Now in these times they are again asking why wars arise. Wars arise because kings and those who are in charge of nations do not follow Christ.

### 3. PERFECT PARTICIPLE OF DEPONENT VERBS

The perfect participle of deponent verbs has an ACTIVE meaning:

*secutus*, *having followed* (NOT: *having been followed*)

*passus*, *having allowed*

*conatus*, *having tried*

*veritus*, *having feared*

*ortus*, *having arisen*

### VOCABULARY

*polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum, 2, tr.;*      *Promise*  
*acc. w. future infinitive*

*loquor, loqui, locutus sum, 3, tr.*

*{ speak*  
*talk*

*proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, 3, intr.;*      *set out*  
*ad w. acc.*

*nactus, a, um*

*{ having obtained*  
*having found*



## NOTE

Nactus, a, um is the perfect participle of a deponent verb. The other forms of this verb are not common.

## EXERCISE 448

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Caesar, ad Galliam profectus, tribus diēbus ad castra Rōmāna pervēnit. 2. Christus, multa cum amicis suis locūtus, in Caelum sublātus est. 3. Rōmāni, locum ad castra idōneum<sup>1</sup> nacti, cōstitērunt. 4. Equites, hostes celeriter sectiti, plurimōs ex eis occiderunt. 5. Christus, gravissimo dolōre et mortem pessimam pro nobis passus, ad glōriam suam pervēnit. 6. Barbari, Caesarem veriti, fugā montēs petiverunt. 7. Caesar Gallōs castra expugnāre cōnātus in silvās pepulit. 8. Caesar, ad urbem profectus, tertiā diē pervēnit. 9. Barbari, hominēs fortissimī, in Rōmānōs ē castris profectos impetum fecerunt. 10. Propter novum bellum ortum, Caesar in Galliam profectus erat.

## DE CHRISTO

**Numquam locūtus est homō sicut hic homo.**

## EXERCISE 449

[Essential]

*Translate:*

1. Christ, having spoken with His friends for many days and having promised to send them the Holy Spirit, was raised up into heaven.

2. Saint Polycarp,<sup>2</sup> having been asked whether he was a Christian, answered that, having followed Christ very many years and having always feared God, he would not deny Him.

<sup>1</sup> idōneus, a, um: suitable.

<sup>2</sup> Polycarp: Polycarpus,?.

3. Columbus, having promised to give his sailors the greatest and best rewards, collected a small band of brave men and prepared three ships. Having obtained a good wind, he set out.

4. The leaders of the Jews,<sup>1</sup> having often tried to injure Christ, at last<sup>2</sup> \* captured and killed Him. Then His friends, having followed Him for two or three years, fled and, having feared the Jews,<sup>1</sup> withdrew into a safe place. When, however, the Holy Spirit had been sent to them, they set out from the city and announced to all men that Christ was the Son of God.

#### READING NO. 43

### DE PRAEMIŌ TARPEIÆ

Sabini,<sup>8</sup> qui Rōmānis proximi erant, bellum cum eis gerēbant. Ex suis finibus cum maximis cōpiis profecti, in agrōs Rōmāndrum vēnerunt. Rōmāni, cōpiās edrum veriti, se in urbem Rōmam recēperunt. Itaque Sabini, celeriter secuti, omnes agrōs vastāverunt atque occupāverunt. Etiam in urbem Rōmam brevi tempore cōpiās dūxerunt, nam Rōmāni impetūs eōrum sustinere nōn potuerunt. Capitōlium<sup>4</sup> autem, mūnitionibus et loci naturā mūni turn, Sabini capere non potuerunt.

Sabini, cum nōn longe a Capitōlio\* abessent, Tarpeiam,<sup>5 6</sup> filiam® ducis Rōmāni, quae aquam in Capitōlium<sup>4</sup> portabat, viderunt. Itaque eam captam ad ducem dūxerunt. Dux vēō putāvit eam exercitum suum in Capitōlium<sup>4</sup> dūcere posse. Itaque pollicitus est se ei maxima praemia datūrum esse. Tarpeiam<sup>5</sup> autem rogāvit quod praemium cuperet. Ea dixit se cupere eas res quās Sabini in sinistris<sup>7</sup> manibus gererent. Itaque dux pollicitus est se eas res

<sup>1</sup> Jews: Judaei, Judaeorum.

<sup>2</sup> at last: tandem, adv.

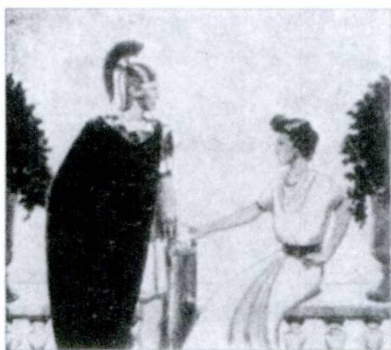
<sup>8</sup> Sabini, drum: the Sabines (an ancient Italian tribe).

<sup>4</sup> Capitōlium, i: the Capitoline (one of the seven hills of Rome).

<sup>8</sup> Tarpeia, ae: Tarpeia (a feminine proper name).

<sup>6</sup> filia, ae: daughter.

<sup>1</sup> sinister, sinistra, sinistrum: left. (The Sabines wore gold rings and brace\* lets on their left hands.)



TARPEIA ET SABINUS

Tarpeiae<sup>1</sup> traditūrum esse.

Sabini, eam secūti, brevi tempore Capitoliū occupāverunt.

Tarpeia,<sup>1</sup> neque Deum neque patrem suum verita, populum suum et urbem suam in manūs hostium praemii causā tradiderat. Ecce<sup>2</sup> praemium ejus. Sabini, cum in Capitolio cōstitissent, subito scūta<sup>3</sup> in Tarpeiam omnes conjecerunt. Fidem tamen ita

cōservāverunt et quae polliciti sunt dederunt, nam Sabini etiam scūta<sup>3</sup> in sinistris<sup>4</sup> manibus gerēbant. Ita illa miserrima interfecta est.

Auxilium Christianōrum,  
Ōrā prō nobis!

#### 4. INFINITIVES OF DEPONENT VERBS

The present and perfect infinitives of deponent verbs are formed just like the regular passive infinitives of the four conjugations.

BUT THE FUTURE INFINITIVE is ACTIVE both in form and meaning.

**Dixit sē profectūrum esse.** *He said that he would set out.*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 336-338. Review all infinitive constructions, pages 352, 363, 414, 420.

<sup>1</sup> Tarpēia, ae: *Tarpeia*.

<sup>2</sup> ecce: *behold*.

<sup>3</sup> scūtum, i: *shield*.

<sup>4</sup> sinister, sinistra, sinistrum: *left*.

## VOCABULARY

<b>ēgredior, ēgredi, dgressus sum, 3, intr.</b>	<i>go out</i>
<b>prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, 3, intr.</b>	<i>advance</i>
<b>arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātes sum, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin.</b>	<i>{ think</i>
	<i>{ consider</i>
<b>hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, 1, tr.</b>	<i>{ urge</i>
	<i>{ encourage</i>

## NOTE

Arbitror takes the accusative with the infinitive (tense by relation) because it is a verb of *thinking*.

## EXERCISE 450

Form the three infinitives of all the words in the vocabulary.

**Divinum<sup>1</sup> auxilium maneat  
semper nōbiscum. Āmēn.**

## EXERCISE 451

[Present Infinitive of Deponents]

*Translate:*

1. Post difficillimum proelium Caesar suds progredi jussit.
2. Ex difficillimis locis ēgredi nōn potuerunt.
3. Caesar saepe tribūds militum suds hortāri atque cōfirmāre jussit.
4. Nōne oportet nōs primā luce proficisci?
5. Oportet hominēs pessimōs Deum vehementer verēri.
6. Oportet Christianōs sāctoos esse semper cōnāri.
7. Caesar jussit lēgātum cum ducibus hostium loqui.
8. Optimum est Christum sequi sed difficillimum etiam est.
9. Oportet nōs multa et gravissima pati.
10. ēgredi nōn possumus; tamen, ā tē jussi, cōnābimur.
11. Oportet nōs omnēs Christum sequi, plūrimōs dolōrēs pati et ita ad glōriam nostram pervenire.

<sup>1</sup> divinus, a, urn: *divine*.

## EXERCISE 452

[Present and Perfect Infinitives of Deponents]

*Translate:*

1. Nuntius dixit hostēs primā lūce ēgressōs esse. 2. Dixērunt sē ex difficillimā locō ēgressōs nōn esse. 3. Arbitrātus est tribūnōs militum suds hortatōs esse. 4. Dixit oportere nōs primā lūce proficisci. 5. Nōs certiōrēs fecit hostēs profectōs esse. 6. Cōfirmāvit legiōnem esse ēgressam. 7. Audivimus Gallōs cōpiās maximās trāns flūmen dūcere cōnatōs esse. 8. Christiān! putant optimum esse Christum sequi.

## EXERCISE 453

[Future Infinitive of Deponents]

*Translate:*

1. Caesar dixit sē tribus diēbus profectūrum esse. 2. Pollicitus est sē haec omnia duōbus diēbus facturum esse. 3. Lēgātus Rōmānus dixit sē numquam cum hoste locūfurum esse. 4. Putāvimus eōs quinque diēbus ēgressūrs esse. 5. Dixit sē nōn passūrum eōs hāc viā maximās cōpiās dūcere. 6. Scimus ducem, virum fortissimum et optimum, suds hortatūrum esse. 7. Apostoli polliciti sunt sē Christum semper secūtūros esse. 8. Rēx dixit sē in locum tūtissimum progressūrum esse.

SENTENTIA **Liv****Et facere et pati fortiter Rōmānū est.**

## EXERCISE 454

*Translate:*

1. I think that the enemy has advanced two miles. 2. He announced that the cavalry had suddenly gone out of the camp. 3. We saw that the military tribunes and centurions were encouraging the soldiers. 4. The hostages promised that they would not go out of the camp. 5. They thought that they would not set

out at dawn. 6. They feared to speak the truth. 7. Having set out, they followed the enemy three miles. 8. He said that, having set out, they had followed the enemy four miles. 9. He said that, having obtained a good wind, the ships had set out on the third day. 10. He said he would set out within three days. 11. The soldiers said they would not follow that leader. 12. He said he would not allow them to march through the province. 13. They affirmed that they would suffer the worst pains. 14. He tried to set out but was captured by the cavalry. 15. The horseman announced that the enemy, having advanced three miles into the province, was trying to come across the river. 16. They informed Caesar that the enemy were trying to seize the hill.

# UNIT FOURTEEN

## LESSON 42: THE IRREGULAR VERB *EO*

### 1. INDICATIVE OF *EO*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Learn the present, imperfect, and future of *eō*, GRAMMAR, NOS. 363-365. The perfect tenses are formed regularly on the stem *iv-* or *i-*.

Review GRAMMAR, NOS. 761, 915-924, and the lesson on *dē*, *ex*, and *ab*, FIRST YEAR LATIN, page 336.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>eō</i> , ire, ivi (ii), itum, <i>irreg.</i> , <i>intr.</i>	<i>go</i>
<i>exed</i> , <i>exire</i> , <i>exit</i> , <i>exitum</i> , <i>irreg.</i> , <i>intr.</i>	<i>go out</i>
<i>ineō</i> , <i>inire</i> , <i>inii</i> , <i>initus</i> , <i>irreg.</i> , <i>tr.</i>	<i>{ go into</i> <i>{ enter upon</i>

#### NOTE

Compounds of *eō* like *exed* and *ineō* are conjugated like *eō*, but note that the *v* is regularly dropped in the perfect stem of compounds.

#### EXERCISE 455

Give the third person, singular and plural, of the present, imperfect, future, perfect, and pluperfect indicative of the words in the vocabulary.

#### EXERCISE 456

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized words:*

1. *Totam noctem iiverunt.* 2. *Secundā vigiliā exiit.* 3. *Duo milia passuum iit.* 4. *Tribus diēbus exhibit.* 5. *Centum pedēs ierat.* 6. *Quā hōrd, amice mi,<sup>1</sup> exhibis?* 7. *Novum cōnsilium iniērunt.* 8. *Quot diēs iērunt ?* 9. *Altera legiō ē castris exiit; altera*

<sup>1</sup> See GRAMMAR, NO. 28.

in castris mānsit. 10. *Salūtis* causa in *oppida* inierunt. 11. Omnes fece exeunt. 12. De *jinibus suis* exhibant. 13. Ad *flūmen* it. 14. Tertia die exhibat. 15. Centurio cum centum *hominibus* exhibit. 16. Legid sine ulla morā exiit. 17. *Quam diū* ierat ? 18. *Quo*, fili mi, ibis ? 19. Per *loca* impedita et difficillima ierat. 20. Christus, "Ad Patrem," inquit, "ibo."

## EXERCISE 457

*Translate:*

1. They went five miles. 2. He went out to the camp on the second day. 3. Others were going out of the camp. 4. Within three days he will enter the city. 5. Will we all go to heaven? 6. He is going through a very large forest. 7. Where did you go? 8. Caesar went into the province. 9. They came into the winter quarters. 10. They entered upon a new method of war. 11. They will go within five days. 12. They went out of the camp. 13. They entered the province on the third day. 14. Having set out on that day, they went four miles. 15. They entered a very deep river. 16. Having obtained a good wind, they went out of the harbor. 17. They went into Gaul by the shortest way. 18. For two days they went through the highest mountains. 19. In the first watch he went secretly out of the town. 20. When they had set out, they went three miles and pitched camp.

## EXERCISE 458

1. *Translate;*

2. *Answer the questions in complete Latin sentences:*

A. *Militēs Americān!* ex nostris finibus trans mare latissimum in Galliam ierunt ut contra hōstes pugnarent.

QUESTION. *Quo* ierunt?

ANSWER. *E* nostris finibus trans mare latissimum in Galliam ierunt.

1. Ex quo loco ierunt?

2. Ieruntne trans mare latissimum?

3. Cūr in Galliam ierunt ?



B. Christus, multōs diēs cum amicis suis locūtus, in Caelum ad Patrem suum ivit.

1. Cum quibus locūtus est Christus?
2. Quam diū cum eis locūtus est ?
3. Quō ivit?
4. Ad quern ivit?

C. Omnēs sancti, Christum fortiter secuti, in Caelum ibunt.

1. Qui Christum sunt secuti?
2. Quō ibunt?

D. Marquette, vir optimus et fortissimus, multōs diēs per silvās periculōrum plēnās et per loca impedita et difficillima ierat. Turn audivit nōn longē abesse flūmen latissimum et longissimum. Hoc flūmen ab eis qui eas regiones incolēbant Pater Aquarū vocabātur. Itaque navē parvā rursus profectus, plurimōs diēs iit et tandem\* flūmen quod nunc a nobis Mississippi vocātur primus iniit.

1. Quot diēs ierat Marquette?
2. Per quae loca ierat?
3. Num per silvas ierat?
4. Quid turn audivit?
5. Quid illud flūmen vocabātur?
6. Qui id Patrem Aquarū vocabant?
7. Estne Marquette rursus profectus?
8. Ad quod flūmen pervenit ?
9. Cognōvistine quo loco Marquette hoc flūmen primum conspexerit?
10. Scisne quis socius Patris Marquette fuerit?
11. Fuitne Marquette Jesuita?

E. Jam demonstrāvimus milites nostros nōn potuisse diūtius in Bataan impetum hostium sustinere. Nam, sicut cognōvistis, Japnēs majōribus cōpiis et pluribus armis in nostros impetūs faciēbant. MacArthur, qui praesidio nostro praecerat, jussus est

---

<sup>1</sup> tandem, *adv.*: at last.

milites relinquere et ex eo loco qui Corregidor vocatur exire. Itaque sine mora nave parva cum paucis sociis exiit. Plurimas noctes per maria periculorum plena ierunt. Saepe portus naturam loci munitos iniierunt atque ibi per diem manserunt ne ab hostibus conspicerentur. Nocte rursus profecti celeriter ierunt. Ita e manibus hostium se eripuerunt et tandem<sup>1</sup> portum a nostris occupatum iniierunt.

1. Cur nostri impetus Japonum sustinere non potuerunt?
2. Cui praesidio praeerat MacArthur?
3. Quid facere iussus est?
4. Exiitne statim?
5. Quibuscum exiit?
6. Ubi saepe manserunt?
7. Cur ibi manserunt?
8. Conspeceruntne eos hostes?
9. Quod tandem<sup>1</sup> pervenerunt?

**A mala morte,  
Libera eum, Domine!**

—From the Prayers for the Dying

## 2. SUBJUNCTIVE OF *EO*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NOS. 375-376. Review GRAMMAR, NOS. 518, 546-549, 561, 660-662.

### VOCABULARY

**transeo, transire, transii, transitus, irreg., tr.**

**{ go across  
cross**

**reded, redire, redii, reditum, irreg., intr.**

**return**

**adeo, adire, adii, aditus, irreg., tr.**

**{ go to  
approach  
visit**

<sup>1</sup> tandem, adv.: at last.

## EXERCISE 459

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the mood and tense of the italicized verbs:*

1. Columbus, cum mare latissimum *trānsiret*, in periculd maximō saepe erat. 2. Columbus, cum ex portū *ēgressus* mare *trānsiit* set, ad Americam pervēnit. 3. Caesar, cum omnēs Galliae gentēs *adiisset*, in Italiam rediit. 4. Legiōnēs, cum tōtam noctem *iissent*, cōstitērunt et castra posuērunt. 5. Dux, cum optimam belli ratiōnem *inīisse*, hostēs facilius vicit. 6. Equitēs, cum a duce jussi ex castris *exiissent*, hostes celeriter secuti sunt.

## EXERCISE 460

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized constructions:*

1. *Eāmus*. 2. *Nē* ex primā aciē *exēāmus*. 3. In hiberna *redeāmus*. 4. Omnes Italiae civitates *ad eāmus*. 5. *Nē* eat. 6. Celeriter *redeant*.

## EXERCISE 461

2. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized constructions:*

1. Rogat *quantae* cōpiae flumen *trāseant*. 2. Dux rogāvit *quā* hōra hostēs ex castris *extissēt*. 3. Rogo *num* in castra *ieris*. 4. Caesarem certidrem fecit *quot* hostes flumen *trānsiissent*. 5. Rogo *quā* via per montes *ierint*.

## EXERCISE 462

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized constructions:*

1. Caesar pontem in flumine latissimō fecit *quō* facilius equitēs *redirent*. 2. Custodēs undique collocat *ne* barbari e silvis *exeanf*. 3. Milites American! multos portus occupaverunt *nē* naves hostium in eos *redirent*. 4. Equites celeriter misit *qui* flumen *trānsirent*. 5. Imperator centuriones ad se *vocavit ut* novum

cōsiliū *iniret*. 6. Munitionēs in portu fecerunt ne nāvēs eum *intent*.

Ā cūnctis<sup>1</sup> nōs, quaesumus,<sup>2</sup> Domine,  
mentis et corporis defēde periculis.

#### EXERCISE 463

*Translate:*

Cum novum bellum in Eurōpā ortum esset et omnēs illius regiōnis gentēs terrā marique inter sē armis contenderent, nōs primum Gallos et Britannds cōpiā armdrum et frūmenti adjuvābāmus, turn bellum cum eis contrā hostēs gerēbāmus. Itaque plurimās nāvēs parāvimus ut nostri milites mare transierunt; maximam telōrum et armdrum cōpiam parāvimus ut, cum nostri in Eurōpam trānsiissent, fortiter contra hostēs et diū pugnāre possent. In hōc bellō milites Americān! multa loca adierunt. Nam alii in Africam trānsierunt; alii primum in Britanniam, turn in Galliam trānsierunt; alii etiam in aliās regiōnes trānsierunt. Scimus nostros in omnibus his locis fortiter pugnāre et fortiter pugnāturos esse. Multos dolōres et plūrima vulnera pass! post victōriam ad nōs redibunt. Eds eōrumque rēs gestās semper memoriā teneamus.

*Answer in complete Latin sentences:*

1. Ubi erat novum bellum ortum?
2. Quae gentēs inter se ārmis contendebant?
3. Quibus rebus socios nostros primum adjuvāvimus?
4. Bellumne cum eis gessimus?
5. Quō ierunt milites nostri?
6. Nonne alii in Britanniam, alii autem in Africam trānsierunt?
7. Arbitrārisne nostros milites fortiter pugnare?
8. Quō tempore ad nos redibunt?

<sup>1</sup> cūnctus, a, um: *all*.

<sup>2</sup> quaesumus: *we beseech*.

## EXERCISE 464

*Translate:*

1. The Japanese, when they had gone out of the fortifications, sought the forest in flight. 2. They returned from this river that they might be safe from attack. 3. The ships of the Japanese crossed the sea secretly that they might make an attack on our harbors. 4. These soldiers are returning from the camp, but those are going to the camp. 5. The enemy went secretly out of the forest and were suddenly seen in the rear. 6. When he had returned to the ship, he was killed by a dart and fell into the water. 7. These brave soldiers went to France to free the French from a foreign power. 8. The cavalry drove back the enemy that the encumbered soldiers might go across the river. 9. The soldiers, hindered by the nature of the place, returned to the camp. 10. The camp was empty, for, when the soldiers had gone into the province, none returned. 11. We shall ward off the enemy from these fields and these cities, that those who dwelt in them may return. 12. The leaders of the enemy entered upon a new manner of war. Their cavalry went out of the towns to hinder our columns. 13. We warded off the attack of the cavalry in order that the legion might return into the winter quarters.

14. The lieutenant said, "I ask where your allies have gone."

15. The leader asked the envoys what races of men they had visited. 16. The Romans constructed roads that they might more easily visit the provinces. 17. The cavalry made an attack from the rear lest the enemy return to their camp. 18. He went to the chiefs to ask who was most influential among them.

19. When the leaders of the Jews had gone to Pilate, they said that Christ had called Himself by the name of king. 20. Christ asked the Apostles by what name He was called. 21. The chief men assembled to enter on new plans. 22. There was bitter fighting there and very many did not return. 23. He sent envoys to visit the leading men of those tribes. 24. The leader asked with how great forces the enemy had gone into the province. 25. When they had gone down from the hill, they there took up

a position. 26. When Caesar had gone out of the camp, the enemy approached the rampart. 27. When the Romans had gone into the territory of the enemy, they pitched camp and fortified it with a ditch and a rampart. 28. He asked whether the hostages had gone secretly out of the camp. 29. When Caesar returned from Italy, he asked whether everything useful for war had been prepared. 30. They asked where he had returned from. 31. Terrified by the arrival of Caesar, the barbarians went into their own territory. 32. When Caesar returned to the winter quarters, he found that a new war had arisen in Gaul.

### 3. INFINITIVES OF *ĒO*

**ASSIGNMENT:** Study GRAMMAR, NO. 378. Form the perfect and future infinitive active of *ed* according to the general rules. Review all infinitive constructions, pages 352, 363, 414, 420.

#### EXERCISE 465

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized constructions:*

1. Christus dixit *se paucis diebus in Caelum iturum esse.*
2. Oportet *nōs redire.* 3. Pessimum est ad sociōs *maids jam relictos reclire.* 4. Respondit *equites nōn jam rediisse.* 5. Christus pollicitus est *sē reditūrum esse.* 6. Equites *reppererunt barbaros jam flūmen trānsiisse.* 7. Caesar *obsides ē castris ad suds exire nōn passus est.* 8. Dux scripsit *sē duobus diebus reditūrum esse.* 9. Nuntius ostendit quot hominēs castra iniissent. 10. Pilātus dixit *Jūdaios nōn probāvisse Christum esse hominem pessimum.* 11. Puto *plūrimos homines in Caelum itūrōs esse.* 12. Dux arbitrātus est *optimum esse flūmen statim trānsire.* 13. Caesarem certiorē *fēcit barbaros tria milia passuum iisse.* 14. Equitēs sine morā *flūmen trānsire jussit.* 15. Lēgātus constituit *oportere sē statim cum omnibus cōpiis ad Caesarem ire ut eum contra barbaros adjuvaret.* 16. Equites *reppererunt hostes jam in castra rediisse.* 17. Tribunus *militum scripsit se in agros hostium*

*transitūrum esse.* 18. Jūdāei cōstituērunt Pilātum *adire* ut Christus occiderētur. 19. Christus, dolidribus atque vulneribus *cōjectus*, per viās ductus est. 20. Christus se ā manibus edrum *ēripere* potuit, nam Deus erat. 21. Jūdāei, cum Pilātum Christum *adjuvare cōndri* sensissent, ei dixerunt Christum se regē *fecisse*.

## EXERCISE 466

*Translate:*

1. They were unable to go. 2. Caesar will not allow the Helvetians to go. 3. He said he would go within three days. 4. The centurion announced that the enemy had returned. 5. It behooved Caesar to visit Gaul. 6. They were ordered to go out of the camp. 7. They said they would return with greater forces. 8. He did not allow them to cross the river. 9. It is good to enter upon this plan. 10. They informed Caesar that the Gauls had gone three miles. 11. On account of the Roman soldiers they were unable to cross the river. 12. He determined to return on the third day.

## EXERCISE 467

*Translate:*

Caesar, cum in Galliam pervenisset, audivit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam ire cōstituisse ut in novōs agrōs pervenirent. Helvētīi erant gēns Galldrum quae prōvinciae proxima erat. Hi omnia quae ad iter pertinēbant parāverant quō facilius ex suis finibus exirent. Caesar vērō arbitrātus est oportere se eōs prohibēre. Itaque negāvit se passūrum eōs per prōvinciam ire. Custōdēs collocāvit nē flūmen quod inter prōvinciam et agrōs eōrum erat trānsirent. Ei autem cum omnibus suis cōpiis trānsire multōs diēs cōnābantur. Caesar armis eōs prohibēbat. Itaque, cum flūmen trānsire et prōvinciam inire nōn potuissent, altera viā, difficiliōre et angustiōre, ire cōstituērunt. Caesar, cum nuntiātum est eōs dē finibus suis exiisse ut hāc viā in novōs agrōs irent, statim cum omnibus suis cōpiis ē castris exiit et eōs secūtus est. Multōs diēs eōs secūtus est; tandem proeliis eōs vicit. Galli, ā Caesare

omnino superati, se suaque omnia ei dederunt. Eds in sudis fines redire iussit. Itaque redierunt. Numquam enim Caesar passus est gentes Galliae ex suis finibus in alios transire.

*Answer in English:*

1. Quid audivit Caesar post adventum suum?
2. Ubi incolebant Helvetii?
3. Cum per provinciam ire constituerunt?
4. Nonne omnia quae ad iter utilia sunt comparaverunt?
5. Estne Caesar passus eos e finibus suis exire?
6. Quod flumen transire conati sunt?
7. Potueruntne id flumen transire?
8. Cum non potuerunt flumen transire?
9. Quid turn fecerunt?
10. Audivitne Caesar eos e finibus suis exiisse?
11. Estne Caesar eos secutus?
12. Putasne Caesarem flumen de quo jam demonstravimus transiisse?
13. Quibuscum profectus est Caesar?
14. Quot dies eos secutus est?
15. Vicitne eos Caesar?
16. Redieruntne Helvetii in sudis agros, cum redire a Caesare jussi essent?
17. Num Caesar passus est alias gentes ex suis finibus exire?

#### READING NO. 44

### THE CONDEMNATION OF CHRIST

Duds aut tres annos Christus Iudaeos<sup>1</sup> viam salutis docuerat. De regno caelorum et de voluntate Patris sui eis locutus erat. Se esse Filium Dei atque omnium hominum regem ostenderat. Bonam in omnes homines voluntatem semper ostenderat. Omnes ad se vocaverat nam "Venite," inquit, "ad me." Omnes receperat; omnes adjuverat. Tamen pluriimi principes Iudaeorum,<sup>1</sup> homines

<sup>1</sup> Iudaei, Grum: the Jews.



pessimi, eum timebant. Arbitrati enim sunt eum regnum Iudaeorum<sup>1</sup> occupaturum esse atque suum imperium sublatum esse. Itaque hi consilia capiebant ut Christum caperent et occiderent. Ad eds, cum consilium caperent, venit unus de discipulis\* Christi, nomine Iudas.<sup>8</sup> <sup>9</sup> Hic pollicitus est se Christum in manus edrum traditurum esse. "Quid," inquit, "dabitis mihi et ego vobis eum tradam?" At illi constituerunt ei triginta\* argenteos.<sup>10</sup> Ex hoc tempore Iudas<sup>11</sup> paratus erat Christum tradere.

Christus vero post illam coenam<sup>12</sup> in qua sacramentum<sup>13</sup> sanctissimum nobis reliquit, ex urbe exivit. Egressus, trans flumen quod Cedron vocabatur transiit et in locum quod Gethsemani vocabatur ivit. Consueverat enim in hunc locum cum amicis suis se redpere ut oraret. Itaque hac nocte, paucos<sup>14</sup> pedes ab amicis progressus, in terram cecidit et vehementer oravit. Scivit enim se maximos dolores pro nobis passurum esse. Deum oravit. "Non mea voluntas," inquit, "sed tua fiat."<sup>15</sup> Post haec ad discipulos<sup>16</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>\*</sup> venit et illis, "Ecce,"<sup>10</sup> <sup>11</sup> <sup>\*</sup> inquit, "appropinquavit hora et Filius hominis tradetur in manus peccatorum.<sup>11</sup> Eamus; ecce appropinquavit qui me tradet." Cum jam loqueretur, Iudas,<sup>12</sup> unus de duodecim,<sup>13</sup> venit. Cum eo autem erat manus militum a principibus Iudaeorum missa. Iudas ad Christum venit et eum osculatus<sup>14</sup> est. Hoc autem signum eis dederat ut scirent quis Christus esset. Illi autem Iesus, "Amice," inquit, "ad quid venisti? Iuda, osculo<sup>15</sup> Filium hominis tradis?" Turn Iesus progressus ad eds qui missi sunt.

<sup>1</sup> Iudaei, drum: the Jews,

<sup>2</sup> discipulus, i: disciple,

<sup>8</sup> Iudas, ae: Judas, (Judā is the vocative.)

<sup>4</sup> triginta: thirty,

\*argenteus, i: piece of silver,

<sup>6</sup>coena, ae: supper.

<sup>7</sup> sacramentum, i: sacrament,

<sup>8</sup>pauci, ae, a: few.

<sup>9</sup> fiat: be done.

<sup>10</sup>ecce: behold.

<sup>11</sup> peccator, peccatoris: sinner.

<sup>12</sup>duodecim: "the Twelve" (i.e., the twelve Apostles).

<sup>13</sup> osculor, I, tr.: hiss.

<sup>14</sup>osculum, i: a kiss.

“Quem,” inquit, “quaeritis?” Responderunt ei, “Jēsū Nazarenum.”<sup>1</sup> Els Jēsūs, “Ego,” inquit, “sum.” Cum dixisset eis, “Ego sum,” illi in terram ceciderunt. Rūrsus eds rogāvit, “Quem quaeritis?” Illi autem responderunt, “Jēsū Nazarenum.”<sup>1</sup> Respondit Jēsūs, “Dixi vobis quia<sup>2</sup> ego sum. Si<sup>3</sup> ergo<sup>4</sup> mē quaeritis, sinite<sup>5</sup> hōs abire.”<sup>6</sup>

Illi Christum cēperunt et ad concilium dūxerunt. Pontifex<sup>7</sup> eum interrogāvit<sup>8</sup> de<sup>9</sup> discipulis<sup>9</sup> ejus et de doctrinā<sup>10</sup> ejus. Respondit ei Jēsūs: “Ego palam<sup>11</sup> locūtus sum mundd. Ego semper docui in synagoga<sup>12</sup> et in templō,<sup>13</sup> quō omnēs Jūdai conveniunt; et in occultō<sup>14</sup> locūtus sum nihil. Cūr mē interrogās?<sup>8</sup> Interroga<sup>8</sup> eds qui audiverunt quid locūtus sim. Ecce<sup>15</sup> hi sciunt quae dixerim ego.”

Pontifex<sup>7</sup> interrogabat<sup>8</sup> eum: “Tu<sup>16</sup> es Christus Filius Dei benedict! ?”<sup>16</sup> Jēsus autem illi, “Ego,” inquit, “sum.” Et omnēs clāmāverunt<sup>17</sup> eum esse reum<sup>18</sup> mortis.

Itaque mane<sup>19</sup> Christum ad Pilātum duxerunt. Exiit Pilātus ad eds et rogāvit cūr Christum ad se duxissent. Responderunt Christum pessimum hominem esse. Pilātus autem eis, “Accipite,” inquit, “vōs, et secundum<sup>20</sup> legem vestram judicāte eum.” Dixerunt

<sup>1</sup> Nazareñus, a, um: *of Nazareth.*

<sup>2</sup> quia: *that* (introducing a noun clause as in English).

<sup>3</sup> si, conj.: *if.*

<sup>4</sup> ergo, adv.: *therefore.*

<sup>5</sup> sinō, sinere, sivi, situs, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.: *allow, permit.*

<sup>6</sup> abed, abire, abii, abitum, irreg., intr.: *go away.*

<sup>7</sup> pontifex, pontificis: *priest, high priest.*

<sup>8</sup> interrogd, I, tr.: *question.*

<sup>9</sup> discipulus, i: *disciple.*

<sup>10</sup> doctrina, ae: *teaching.*

<sup>11</sup> palam, adv.: *openly.*

<sup>12</sup> synagoga, ae: *synagogue.*

<sup>13</sup> templum, i: *temple.*

<sup>14</sup> in occulto: *in secret.*

<sup>15</sup> ecce: *behold.*

<sup>16</sup> benedictus, a, um: *blessed.*

<sup>17</sup> clāmō, I, intr.: *shout.*

<sup>18</sup> reus, a, um: *guilty of.*

<sup>19</sup> mane, adv.: *in the morning.*

<sup>20</sup> secundum, prep. w. acc.: *according to.*

autem Iūdāci se nōn posse eum ad mortem dūcere. Itaque iniit Pilātus et vocāvit Jēsum et dixit ei, "Tū es Rex Iudaeōrum?" Respondit Jēsūs, "A tēmetipso<sup>1</sup> hoc dicis an<sup>2</sup> alii dixerunt tibi dē mē?" Respondit Pilātus: "Numquid<sup>3</sup> ego Iudaeus sum? Gēns tua et pontificēs<sup>4</sup> tradiderunt tē mihi. Quid fecisti?" Respondit Jēsūs: "Regnum meum nōn est dē hōc mundō; si<sup>5</sup> ex hōc mundō esset regnum meum, ministri<sup>6</sup> mei utique<sup>7</sup> decertarent<sup>8</sup> ut nōn traderer Iudaeis: nunc autem regnum meum nōn est hinc."<sup>9</sup> Itaque ei Pilātus, "Ergo,"<sup>10</sup> inquit, "rēx es tū?" Respondit Jēsūs: "Tū dicis quia<sup>11</sup> rēx sum ego. Ego in hoc nātus<sup>12</sup> sum et ad hoc vēni in mundum, ut testimoniū<sup>13</sup> perhibeam<sup>14</sup> veritati; omnis qui est ex veritate audit vocem meam." Ei Pilātus, "Quid," inquit, "est veritas?" Et cum hoc dixisset, rursus exiit ad Iudaeos et dixit eis se nūllam causam in eō reperire. Erat autem mōs dimittere ūnum vinctum<sup>15</sup> tempore Paschae.<sup>16</sup> Itaque Pilātus Iudaeis, "Dimittamne vōbis regem Iudaeōrum?" Clāmāverunt<sup>17</sup> omnes: "Nōn hunc, sed Barabbam.<sup>18</sup> Tolle hunc! Et dimitte nōbis Barabbam."<sup>18</sup> Erat autem Barabbas<sup>18</sup> latro.<sup>19</sup>

Illis Pilātus, "Quid," inquit, "faciam de Jesu quī vocātur

<sup>1</sup> tēmetipso: *yourself* (an emphatic form).

<sup>2</sup> an: *or*.

<sup>3</sup> numquid: an emphatic form of num.

<sup>4</sup> pontifex, pontificis: *priest, high priest*.

<sup>5</sup> si, conj.: *if*.

<sup>6</sup> minister, ministry: *servant*.

<sup>7</sup> utique, adv.: *certainly*.

<sup>8</sup> decerto, I, tr.: *strive*.

<sup>9</sup> hinc, adv.: *hence, from here*.

<sup>10</sup> ergo, adv.: *therefore*.

<sup>11</sup> quia, conj.: *that* (introducing a noun clause as in English).

<sup>12</sup> nātus sum: (I) *was born*.

<sup>13</sup> testimoniū, i: *testimony*.

<sup>14</sup> perhibeo, 2, tr.: *give*.

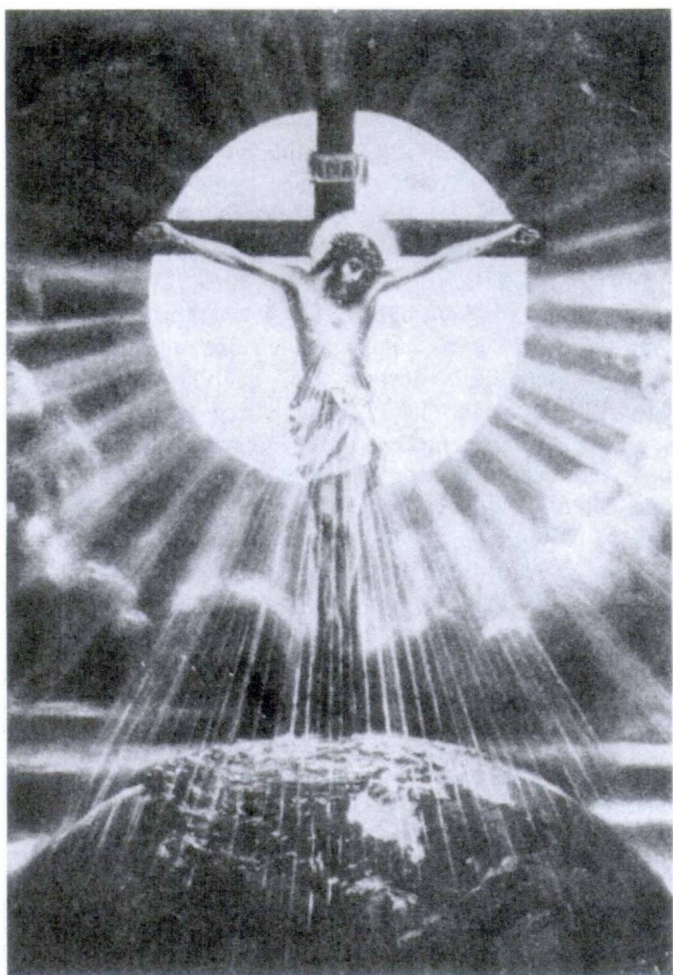
<sup>15</sup> vinctus, a, um: *bound* (i. e., a prisoner).

<sup>16</sup> Pascha, ae: *the festival of the Pasch*.

<sup>17</sup> clāmō, I, intr.: *shout*.

<sup>18</sup> Barabbas, ae: *Barabbas*.

<sup>19</sup> latrō, latrōnis: *a robber*.



CHRISTUS REX

Christus?" Clamabant<sup>1</sup> omnes, "Crucifigatur."<sup>1 2 \* \*</sup> Uli Pilatus, "Quid enim mall," inquit, "fecit?" At illi! rursus clamabant,<sup>1</sup> "Crucifigatur."<sup>2</sup>

Turn Pilatus Christum flagellat<sup>18</sup> iussit. Milites verb, plectentes\* coronam<sup>5</sup> spineam,® imposuerunt<sup>7</sup> capiti ejus et veste<sup>8</sup> purpurea\* circumdederunt<sup>10 11</sup> eum. Et veniebant ad eum et dicebant, "Ave, Rex Iudaeorum." Et dabant ei alapas.<sup>11</sup>

Rursus exiit Pilatus et dixit Iudaeis: "Ecce adduco vobis eum ut cognoscatis me nullam causam in eo reperire." Exiit Iesus. Portabat autem coronam<sup>5</sup> spineam® et purpuream<sup>9</sup> vestem.<sup>8</sup> Pilatus autem eis, "Ecce,"<sup>12</sup> inquit, "homo!"

Principes Iudaeorum autem, cum eum vidissent, clamabant,<sup>1</sup> "Crucifige,<sup>2</sup> crucifige eum." Eis Pilatus: "Accipite," inquit, "vos et crucifigite.<sup>2</sup> Ego enim non reperiō in eo causam." Responderunt ei Iudaei: "Nos legem habemus, et secundum<sup>13</sup> legem oportet eum interfici, quod Filium Dei se fecit." Haec Pilatus cum audivisset, vehementer timuit. Rursus iniit et Iesu, "Unde es," inquit, "tu?" Iesus autem nihil respondit. Dicit ei Pilatus: "Mihi non loqueris? Nescis<sup>14</sup> quia<sup>15</sup> \* potestatem<sup>1®</sup> habeo crucifigere<sup>2</sup> te et potestatem<sup>1®</sup> habeo dimittere te?" Respondit Iesus: "Non haberes<sup>17</sup> potestatem<sup>1®</sup>

<sup>1</sup> clamō, I, intr.; shout.

<sup>2</sup> crucifigō, crucifigere, crucifix!, crucifixus, 3, tr.: crucify.

<sup>8</sup> flagellō, I, tr.; scourge.

\* plectentes: plating.

<sup>8</sup> coronā, ae: crown.

<sup>8</sup> spineus, a, um: of thorns.

<sup>r</sup> impōnō, impōnere, imposui, impositus, 3, tr.; w. dot.: put upon.

® vestis, vestis: garment.

° purpureus, a, um: purple.

<sup>10</sup> circumdō, circumdare, circumdedi, circumdatus, I, tr.; clothe.

<sup>11</sup> alapa, ae: blow, slap.

<sup>12</sup> ecce: behold.

<sup>18</sup> secundum, prep, w. ace.; according to.

<sup>14</sup> nescid, nesciri, nescivi, 4, tr.; not know.

<sup>18</sup> quia: that (introducing a noun clause as in English).

<sup>18</sup> potestas, potestatis: power,

<sup>17</sup> non haberes: you would not have.

adversum<sup>1</sup> me<sup>2</sup> ullam, nisi tibi datum esset desuper.<sup>1 2 \*</sup> Propterea<sup>8</sup> qui me<sup>2</sup> tradidit tibi, maior peccatum habet.”

Ex hoc tempore conabatur Pilatus eum dimittere. Iudaei autem clamabant:<sup>4</sup> “Si<sup>5 6</sup> hunc dimittis, non es amicus Caesaris; omnis enim qui se regem facit, contradicit<sup>9</sup> Caesari.” Pilatus autem cum haec audivisset, dixit Iudaeis, “Ecce rex vester.” Illi autem clamabant,<sup>4</sup> “Tolle! Tolle! Crucifige<sup>7</sup> eum!” Pilatus eis, “Regem,” inquit, “vestrum crucifigam?”<sup>7</sup> Responderunt principes Iudaedrum, “Non habemus regem, nisi Caesarem.” Itaque Pilatus, Caesarem atque Iudaeos veritus, Iesum eis tradidit. Eum autem in locum qui Golgotha vocabatur duxerunt atque ibi Iesum Christum, Filium Dei, crucifixerunt.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> adversum, prep. w. acc.: against.

<sup>2</sup> desuper, adv.: from above.

<sup>8</sup> propterea: therefore.

<sup>4</sup> clamor, 1, intr.: shout.

<sup>8</sup> si, conj.: if.

<sup>6</sup> contradicor, contradicere, contradixi, contradictum, 3, intr.; w. dat.: speak against.

<sup>7</sup> crucifigo, crucifigere, crucifigi, crucifixus, 3, tr.: crucify.

## MASTERY REVIEW VOCABULARY NO. 3

[Units Six-Fourteen]

### VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

addrō, 1, <i>tr.</i>	<i>adore</i>
aestimō, 1, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i>	<i>think</i>
appello, 1, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>two accs.</i>	{ <i>call</i> <i>call upon</i> <i>address</i>
appropinquō, 1, <i>intr.</i> ; <i>w. ad or dat.</i>	{ <i>draw near to</i> <i>approach</i>
cōfirmō, 1, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i>	{ <i>encourage</i> <i>strengthen</i> <i>affirm</i>
dēmōstro, 1, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i>	{ <i>show</i> <i>Point out</i>
existimō, 1, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. in fin.</i>	<i>think</i>
expugnō, 1, <i>tr.</i>	{ <i>storm</i> <i>take by storm</i>
exspectō, 1, <i>tr.</i>	{ <i>wait for</i> <i>wait</i>
jūdicō, 1, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i>	<i>judge</i>
liberō, /, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>abl. of separation</i>	<i>free (from)</i>
nāvigō, 1, <i>intr.</i>	<i>sail</i>
negō, 1, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i>	{ <i>deny</i> <i>say . . . not</i>
nuntid, 1, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. in fin.</i>	{ <i>announce</i> <i>report</i>
pācō, 1, <i>tr.</i>	<i>pacify</i>
probō, 1, <i>tr.</i>	{ <i>approve</i> <i>prove</i>
putō, 1, /, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i>	<i>think</i>
rogō, 1, <i>tr.</i>	<i>ask</i>

vaatō, 1, tr.

{ lay waste  
 { ravage  
 call

vocō, 1, tr.; two accs.

## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

commoveō, commoverē, commovi, commotus, 2, tr.

{ alarm  
 { arouse

doceō, doceŕe, docui, doctus, 2, tr.<sup>1</sup>

{ teach  
 { inform

jubeō, jubere, jussī, jussus, 2, tr.; acc. w. in fin.

{ order  
 { command

mōveo, moveŕe, movī, motus, 2, tr.

move

noceō, noceŕe, nocui, nociturus, 2, intr.; w. dat.

{ do harm to  
 { injure

pertineō, pertineŕe, pertinui, 2, intr.; ad w. acc.

{ Pertain to  
 { stretch to

prohibeō, 2, tr.; abl. of separation

{ ward off (from)  
 { prevent

responded, respondeŕe, respondī, responsus, 2, tr.; acc. w. infin.

answer

valeō, valeŕe, valui, valiturus, 2, intr.

{ am strong  
 { am well  
 { am influential

## VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

addūco, adducere, adduxī, adductus, 3, tr.

{ lead to  
 { lead on

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, 3, intr.

fall

cernō, cernaere, 3, tr.

{ distinguish  
 { see

<sup>1</sup> Doceo takes two accusatives when it means "teach someone something!"



cognoscere, cognoscere, cognoscere, cognitus, 3, tr.	{ learn find out
cogere, cogere, coegere, coactus, 3, tr.	{ collect force
consistere, consistere, consisti, 3, intr.	{ halt take a position
constituere, constituere, constitui, constitutus, 3, tr.; w. infin.	{ place set up decide determine
consuevi, consuevit, 3, tr. and intr.; w. infin. <sup>1</sup>	{ have accustomed have become accustomed am accustomed
contendere, contendere, contend!, 3, intr.; w. infin.	{ strive contend hasten
dedere, dedere, dedidi, deditus, 3, tr?	{ give up surrender
deducere, deducere, deduxi, deductus, 3, tr.	{ lead lead away
defendere, defendere, defend!, defensus, 3> tr.; abl. of separation	{ defend
dicere, dicere, dixi, dictus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ say tell
diligere, diligere, dilexi, dilectus, 3, tr.	{ love
discedere, discedere, discessi, discessurus, 3, intr.	{ depart withdraw
incolere, incolere, incolui, 3, tr.	{ inhabit dwell in
ostendere, ostendere, ostendi, ostentus, 3, tr.	{ show

<sup>1</sup>The present tenses of *consuevi* are not common. Hence only the perfect indicative active and the perfect participle passive are given. BUT note that the perfect can have a PRESENT meaning and the pluperfect can have a PERFECT meaning.

<sup>1</sup> *Dedō* always takes an object in Latin.

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitus, 3, tr.	{ seek ask
regō, regere, rexi, reclus, 3, tr.	{ direct rule
relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relictus, 3, tr.	{ leave leave behind
scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptus, 3, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	write
tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublatu, 3, tr.	(raise (up) take away
traduco, traducere, traduxi, traductus, 3, tr.; two accs. or acc. and trans w. acc. <sup>1</sup>	lead across

### VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

audiō, 4, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	hear
impedio, 4, tr.	{ hinder impede
pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventum, 4, <i>intr.</i> ; in or ad w. acc.	arrive
reperio, reperire, repperi, repertus, 4, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	find (out)
scio, 4, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	know
sentio, sentire, sensi, sensus, 4, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	{ feel perceive think

### -IO VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

accipio, accipere, accepi, acceptus, 3, tr.	{ receive accept
capiō, capere, cepi, captus, 3, tr.	{ take capture

<sup>1</sup>With *traduco* the thing OVER WHICH the direct object is led, is put either (1) in the accusative, or (2) with *trans* in the accusative.

cōnficiō, cōnficere, confēcī, confectus, 3, tr.	<i>finish</i> <i>[wear out]</i>
conjiciō, con j ice re, con j ēci, con j ectus, 3, tr.	<i>[throw]</i> <i>[hurl]</i>
cōnspicid, cōnspicere, cōnspexi, conspēctus, 3, tr. j	<i>see</i> <i>[catch sight of]</i>
cupiō, cupere, cupivi, cupitus, J, tr.; w. <i>infin.</i>	<i>desire</i>
ēripiō, ēripere, erīpui, erēptus, 3, tr.; ex (e) w. <i>abl.</i>	<i>[take away]</i> <i>[save (from)]</i>
faciō, facere, fecī, factus, 3, tr.	<i>[do]</i> <i>[make]</i>
fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugiturūs, 3, tr.	<i>flee</i>
interficiō, interficere, interfeci, interfectus, 3, tr. <sup>1</sup> kill	
recipiō, recipere, recepi, receptus, 3, tr.	<i>[receive]</i> <i>[accept]</i> <i>[recover]</i>
(with a reflexive pronoun me, te, se, etc.)	<i>withdraw</i>

### DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

arbitror, arbitrarī, arbitratēs sum, 1, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>[think]</i> <i>[consider]</i>
cōnor, cōnari, cōnatūs sum, 1, tr.; w. <i>infin.</i>	<i>[try]</i> <i>[attempt]</i>
hortor, hortari, hortatūs sum, 1, tr.	<i>[urge]</i> <i>[encourage]</i>

### DEPONENT VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum, 2, tr.; acc. w. <i>future infinitive</i>	<i>promise</i>
vereor, vereri, veritus sum, 2, tr.; w. <i>infin.</i>	<i>fear</i>

<sup>1</sup> The present system passive of *facio* is irregular but almost all the compounds of *facio*, such as *interficio*, are regular.

<sup>2</sup> *Arbitror* takes the accusative with the infinitive (tense by relation) because it is a verb of *thinking*.

## DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

loquor, loqui, <sup>1</sup> locutus sum, 3, <i>tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{talk} \\ \text{speak} \end{array} \right.$
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i> ; ad <i>w. acc.</i>	set out
sequor, sequi, secutus sum, 3, <i>tr.</i>	follow

## DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

orior, oriri, ortus sum, 4, <i>intr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rise} \\ \text{arise} \end{array} \right.$
--	--

## DEPONENT -IO VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

ēgredior, ēgredi, <sup>1</sup> ēgressus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i>	go out
patior, pati, passus sum, 3, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{suffer} \\ \text{allow} \end{array} \right.$
prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i>	advance

## VERBS LIKE E6

adeō, adire, adii, aditus, <i>irreg., tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{go to} \\ \text{approach} \\ \text{visit} \end{array} \right.$
eō, ire, ivi (il), itum, <i>irreg., intr.</i> <sup>1</sup>	go
exeō, exire, exii, exitum, <i>irreg., intr.</i>	go out
ineō, inire, inni, initus, <i>irreg., tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{go into} \\ \text{enter upon} \end{array} \right.$
redeō, redire, redii, reditum, <i>irreg., intr.</i>	return
trānseō, trānsire, tranīi, transitus, <i>irreg., tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{go across} \\ \text{cross} \end{array} \right.$

<sup>1</sup> Compounds of eo like exeo and ineo are conjugated like eo, but note that the v is regularly dropped in the perfect stem of compounds.

## IRREGULAR VERBS AND IDIOMS

absum, abesse, afui, affuturus, *intr.*; ab (a) w.  
abl.

certiorem (-es) facere; *acc. w. in fin.*; de w.  
abl., or an indirect question<sup>1</sup>

inquit\*

memoria teneo, tenerē, tenui, tēntus, 2, *tr.*

miserere nobis

nactus, a, um\*

oportet, oportere, oportuit, 2, *intr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

possum, posse, potui, *irreg.*; *w. infin.*

praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefuturus, *intr.*;  
*w. dat.*

am distant  
am away  
to inform

he says  
[As said  
(keep in memory  
remember

have mercy on us  
(having obtained  
having found  
it behooves<sup>4</sup>

am able  
can

am in command of  
am in charge of

<sup>1</sup> Certiorem (-es) is the comparative of certus. Literally the phrase certiorem facere means *to make (someone) more certain*. Certiorem (-es) will therefore always agree with the direct object of facio.

<sup>1</sup> Inquit is always used with DIRECT quotations; that is, with quotations enclosed in QUOTATION MARKS.

<sup>8</sup> Nactus, a, um is the perfect participle of a deponent verb. Since, however, the other forms of this verb are not common, it is sufficient to learn only the participle, which is frequently used.

\* In translating use *it is proper*; *should*; *it is necessary*, etc.

## NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

amicitia, ae	<i>friendship</i>
aqua, ae	<i>water</i>
causa, ae	<i>cause</i>
fossa, ae	<i>ditch</i>
fuga, ae	<i>flight</i>
hōra, ae	<i>hour</i>
injūria, ae	<i>[ injustice</i> <i>[ wrong</i>
memoria, ae	<i>memory</i>
mora, ae	<i>delay</i>
nātūra, ae	<i>nature</i>
sententia, ae -j	<i>[ opinion</i> <i>[ vote</i>
vigilia, ae	<i>watch</i>
vīta, ae	<i>life</i>

## MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

animus, i	<i>{ mind</i> <i>{ sold</i>
annus, I	<i>year</i>
lēgātus, i	<i>{ envoy</i> <i>{ lieutenant</i>
nuntius, T	<i>{ messenger</i> <i>{ message</i>
socius, I <sup>m</sup>	<i>ally</i>
tribūnus, i	<i>tribune</i>
ventus, I <sup>m</sup>	<i>wind</i>

## NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

auxilia, auxiliidrum	<i>reinforcements</i>
auxilium, I	<i>{ help</i> <i>{ aid</i>
concilium, i	<i>council</i>
cōnsilium, I	<i>{ plan</i> <i>{ counsel</i>
peccātum, i	<i>{ mistake</i> <i>{ sin (in Christian Latin)</i>
praesidium, I	<i>{ garrison</i> <i>{ protection</i>
vallum, i	<i>{ wall</i> <i>{ rampart</i>

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE  
THIRD DECLENSION LIKE *LEX*

auctōritās, auctōritatīs	<i>J authority</i> <i>{ influence</i>
custōs, custodīs	<i>guard</i>
dolor, doloris	<i>f pain</i> <i>1 sorrow</i>
labor, laboris	<i>f effort</i> <i>1 toil</i>
magnitūdō, magnitudinis	<i>(size</i> <i>1 greatness</i>
mōs, moris, <i>m.</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>f custom</i> <i>[ habit</i>
mūnitio, munitidnis	<i>fortification</i>
nēmō, nēminis, <i>m.</i>	<i>no one</i>
obses, obsidis, <i>c.</i> <sup>1 2</sup>	<i>hostage</i>

<sup>1</sup> The ablative of *mos, morē*, may be translated *according to custom*.

<sup>2</sup> *Obses* is marked *c* = common gender; that is, it may be either masculine or feminine, as hostages were men and women. However, use it as masculine unless it clearly refers to women.

<i>ōrdō, ōrdinis, m.</i>	<i>rank (of soldiers)</i>
<i>pēs, pedis, m.</i>	<i>foot (part of body or measure of distance)</i>
<i>ratio, rationis<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>{reason }manner</i>
<i>regid, regiōnis</i>	<i>region</i>
<i>timor, timoris</i>	<i>fear</i>
<i>voluntas, voluntatis</i>	<i>{good will }will</i>

### NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION LIKE *PARS*

<i>mēns, mentis</i>	<i>mind</i>
<i>nāvis, navis<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>ship</i>
<i>nox, noctis</i>	<i>night</i>

### NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

<i>caput, capitis</i>	<i>head</i>
<i>genus, generis, n.</i>	<i>{kind }race</i>
<i>tempus, temporis, n.</i>	<i>time</i>

### OTHER NOUNS

<i>diēs, diei, m. (f.)</i>	<i>day</i>
<i>manus, us, f.</i>	<i>{a band of men }hand</i>
<i>mare, maris<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>sea</i>
<i>milia, milium, neuter noun</i>	<i>thousands</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Ratio* is used in a great number of meanings; the vocabulary gives only the most general idea of them. Be sure to translate *ratio* into good English as the sense and context demand.

<sup>2</sup> The ablative may be either *navi* or *nave*.

• *Mare* is declined like the neuter of *gravis*, *grave*, and NOT like *flumen*.



mīlia passuum	miles (literally, thousands of paces)
mille passus	a mile (literally, a thousand paces)
nihil, indecl. noun	nothing
passus, us	pace (a measure of distance)
rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae	{ state republic
satis, indecl. noun w. gen.	enough

## PRONOUNS

hie, haec, hoc	this (pl., these)
ille, ilia, illud	{ that (as a demonstrative) he, she, it (as a personal pronoun)
is, ea, id	{ that (as a demonstrative) he, she, it (as a personal pronoun)
qui, quae, quod	{ who (whose, whom) which that
quī, quae, quod	{ which? what?
quis, quid	{ who? what?
suus, a, um	{ his (own) her (own) its (own) their (own)

# ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

adversus, a, um; <i>w. dat.</i>	{ facing (towards) unfavorable
aeternus, a, um	{ eternal everlasting
barbarus, a, um <sup>1</sup>	barbarian
certus, a, um	{ certain sure
lātus, a, um	wide
liber, libera, liberum; <i>abl. of separation</i>	free (from)
novus, a, um	new
parātus, a, um; <i>w. ad or infin.</i>	{ prepared (for) ready
parvus, a, um	{ small little
primus, a, um	first
proximus, a, um; <i>w. dat.</i>	{ nearest next
quantus, a, um, <i>interrogative adj.</i>	{ how large? how great?
summus, a, um	{ highest greatest very great
tertius, a, um	third
tītus, a, um; <i>abl. of separation</i>	safe (from)
vacuus, a, um; <i>abl. of separation</i>	empty (of)
vērus, a, um	true

---

<sup>1</sup> Barbarus can, of course, be used as a noun to mean *barbarian*.

## OTHER ADJECTIVES

alius, alia, aliud	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{other} \\ \textit{another (of more than two)} \end{array} \right.$
alter, altera, alterum	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{the one} \\ \textit{the other (of two)} \end{array} \right.$
alter, altera, alterum 1	$\textit{second}$
secundus, a, um J	
mille, <i>indecl. adj.</i>	$\textit{thousand}$
neuter, neutra, neutrum	$\textit{neither (of two)}$
nūllus, a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{no} \\ \textit{none} \end{array} \right.$
quot, <i>indecl. adj.</i> <sup>1</sup>	$\textit{how many?}$
sōlus, a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{alone} \\ \textit{only (as adjective)} \end{array} \right.$
tōtus, a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{whole} \\ \textit{all of} \\ \textit{the whole of} \end{array} \right.$
ūllus, a, um	$\textit{any}$
uter, utra, utrum	$\textit{which? (of two)}$
ūtilis, e; w. ad	$\textit{useful (for)}$

## ADVERBS

ācritēr, <i>adv.</i>	$\left  \begin{array}{l} \textit{bitterly} \\ \textit{eagerly} \end{array} \right.$
celeriter, <i>adv.</i>	$\textit{swiftly}$
clam, <i>adv.</i>	$\textit{secretly}$
cūr, <i>interrogative adv.</i>	$\textit{why?}$
diū, <i>adv.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{a long time} \\ \textit{long} \end{array} \right.$
diūtius, <i>comparative adv. longer</i>	
facile, <i>adv.</i>	$\textit{easily}$

---

<sup>1</sup> *Indecl.* means that the adjective quot never changes its form, no matter what form the noun may be with which it agrees.

<i>facilius, comparative adv,</i>	<i>more easily</i>
<i>jam, adv.</i>	<i>[ already</i>
<i>numquam, adv.</i>	<i>[now (at that time)</i>
<i>omnino, adv.</i>	<i>never</i>
	<i>{ at all (with negatives like nōn)</i>
	<i>{ altogether</i>
	<i>{ in all (with numerals)</i>
<i>plūrimum, adv.</i>	<i>[ very much</i>
	<i>[very</i>
<i>praeterea, adv.</i>	<i>f besides</i>
	<i>[furthermore</i>
<i>primum, adv.</i>	<i>first</i>
<i>quam, adv.<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>than</i>
<i>quam, interrogative adv. of degree</i>	<i>how?</i>
<i>quō, interrogative adv.<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>{ whither?</i>
	<i>{ where . . . (to)?</i>
	<i>{ to what place?</i>
<i>rūrsus, adv.</i>	<i>again</i>
<i>satis, adv.</i>	<i>{ enough</i>
	<i>{ sufficiently</i>
<i>statim, adv.</i>	<i>{ at once</i>
	<i>{ immediately</i>
<i>subito, adv.</i>	<i>suddenly</i>
<i>ubi, interrogative adv.<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>where?</i>
<i>unde, interrogative adv.<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>{ whence?</i>
	<i>{ from what place?</i>
	<i>{ where . . . from?</i>
<i>usque, adv.</i>	<i>all the way</i>
<i>verō, postpositive<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>{ in truth</i>
	<i>{ but</i>

<sup>1</sup> Quam, *than*, takes the same case after as before it.

<sup>2</sup> Ubi, quō, and unde can all translate the English *where*. Ubi can be used only when the *where* refers to place IN WHICH and implies REST; quō can be used only when the *where* refers to place TO WHICH and implies MOTION or direction; unde can be used only when the *where* refers to place FROM WHICH and implies MOTION or direction.

<sup>8</sup> Vērō is postpositive, *i. e.*, it never stands first in a clause.

## PREPOSITIONS

ab (a), <i>prep. w. abl.</i> <sup>1</sup> *	{ from away from by (agency)
ad, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	{ to until at for (with adjectives)
ante, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	before
apud, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	{ among in the presence of
contra, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	{ against opposite
causa, <i>preceded by gen.</i> <sup>2</sup>	for the sake of
dē, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	{ concerning about down from from
ex (e), <i>prep. w. abl.</i> <sup>3</sup>	{ out of from
in, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	{ in in
in, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	{ into in against upon onto on
inter, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	{ between among
sine, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	without

<sup>1</sup> The form *a* is never used before words beginning with a vowel or *h*.

\*The ablative of *causa* is used as a preposition. It governs the GENITIVE and always stands AFTER the word it governs.

<sup>3</sup> The form *e* is never used before words beginning with a vowel or *h*.

## CONJUNCTIONS

at, <i>conj.</i>	<i>but</i>
cum, <i>conj.</i>	<i>when</i>
-que, <i>conj.</i>	<i>and</i>

## OTHER WORDS AND IDIOMS

ā fronte	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{in the front} \\ \textit{from the front} \end{array} \right.$
ā tergo	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{in the rear} \\ \textit{from the rear} \end{array} \right.$
ave! <i>interjection</i>	<i>hail!</i>

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

**ā.** See **ab**.

**ā fronte**, in the front, from the front,

**ā tergo**, in the rear, from the rear,

**ab (a)**, *prep. w. abl.*, by, from, away from.

**absum**, **abesse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, *infr.*;

**ab (a)** *w. abl.*, am away, am distant.

**ac.** See **atque**.

**accipiō**, **accipere**, **accepī**, **āceptus**, 3, *tr.*, receive, accept.

**aciēs**, **aciē**, battle line,

**ācriter**, *adv.*, bitterly, eagerly.

**ad**, *prep. w. acc.*, to, until, at, for.

**adducō**, **adducere**, **adduxī**, **adductus**, 3, *tr.*, lead to, lead on.

**adeō**, **adire**, **adii**, **aditus**, *irreg.*, *tr.*, go to, approach, visit.

**adjuvō**, **adjuvāre**, **adjuvī**, **adjuvī**, 1, *tr.*, help, aid.

**administrō**, 1, *tr.*, manage, attend to.

**adorō**, 1, *tr.*, adore.

**adventus**, **u**, arrival, coming,

**adversus**, a, um; *w. dat.*, facing (towards), unfavorable; **res ādversae**, **rērū ādversarū**, adversity,

**aestimō**, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. in fin.*, think,

**aeternus**, a, um, eternal, everlasting.

**Africa**, ae, Africa.

**ager**, **agrī**, field.

**agmen**, **agminis**, column (of soldiers), army (on the march).

**Agne**, **Agnetis**, Agnes.

**agō**, **agere**, **egī**, **actūs**, 3, *tr.*, drive, do, act, treat; **grātiās agere**, to give thanks, to thank.

**aliēnus**, a, um, unfavorable, another's, foreign.

**alius**, **alia**, **aliud**, other, another (of more than two).

**Alpēs**, **Alpium**, *m.*, the Alps,

**alter**, **altera**, **alterum**, the one, the other (of two), second.

**altus**, a, um, high, deep.

**Ambiorix**, **Ambiorigis**, **Ambiorix**.

**America**, ae, America.

**Americānus**, a, um, American.

**Americānus**, i, an American,

**amicitia**, ae, friendship,

**amicus**, i, friend.

**angustus**, a, um, narrow,

**animus**, i, mind, soul,

**annus**, i, year.

**ante**, *prep. w. acc.*, before.

**appellō**, 1, *tr.*; *two accs.*, call (upon), address.

**Appius (1) Claudius (i)**, **Appius Claudius** (a Roman senator).

**appropinquō**, 1, *intr.*; *w. ad or dat.*, draw near to, approach.

**apud**, *prep. w. acc.*, among, in the presence of.

**aqua**, ae, water.

**arbitror**, **arbitrāry** **arbitratēs sum**, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. in fin.*, think, consider.

**arma**, **armōrum**, arms.

**at**, *conj.*, but.

**atque (ac)**, *conj.*, and.

**auctōritās**, **auctoritātis**, authority, influence.

**audiō**, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. in fin.*, hear.

**Augustus**, i, Augustus.

**aut**, *conj.*, or.

**aut . . . aut**, *conjs.*, either . . . or.

**autem**, *conj.*, *postp.*, however,

**auxilia**, **auxiliorū**, reinforcements,

**auxilium**, i, help, aid.

**avē!** *interjection*, hail!

**barbarus**, a, um, barbarian,

**barbarus**, i, a barbarian,

**bellum**, i, war.

**Benedictus**, i, Benedict.

**Bethlehēm**, *indecl. n.*, Bethlehem,

**bonus**, a, um, good.

**brevis**, e, short.

Britannia, ae, Great Britain.

Britannus, I, a Briton.

cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrus, 3, *intr.*,  
faU.

caedēs, caedis, slaughter,

caelum, i, sky, heaven.

Caesar, Caesaris, Caesar.

capīS, capere, cēpl, captus, 3, *tr.*, take,  
capture; cōnsilium capere, to make  
a plan.

caput, capitis, head.

Carthaginiēses, Carthaginiēsiūm,

the Carthaginians,

castra, castrūm, camp.

causa, ae, cause; causā, w. *gen.*, for  
the sake of.

cēdS, cēdere, cessi, cessūrus, 3, *intr.*,  
give way, yield.

Cedron, *indecl. n.*, Cedron.

celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly,

centum, one hundred.

centuriS, centariSnis, a centurion,

cernō, cernere, 3, *tr.*, distinguish, see.

certiSrem (-5s) facere; *acc. w. infin.*;

*dē w. abl.*, to inform.

certus, a, um, certain, sure; certiōrem  
(-6s) facere; *acc. w. infin.*; *dē w.*  
*abl.*, to inform.

Christiānus, a, um, Christian.

Christiānus, i, a Christian.

Christas, i, Christ.

Cicerō, CicerSnis, Cicero.

Cineas, Cineae, *m.*, Cineas.

civitas, civitatīs, state.

clam, *adv.*, secretly,

clāmor, clāmorīs, shouting, shout,

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognovī, cogni-  
tas, 3, *tr.*, learn, find out.

cōgō, cōgere, cōēgi, cōactas, 3, *tr.*,  
collect, force.

collis, collis, *m.*, hill,

col locō, I, *tr.*, place, station.

Columbus, i, Columbus.

com moved, commovere, commovi, "

commōtas, 2, *tr.*, alarm, arouse,

commūnis, e, common.

comparō, I, *tr.*, get, prepare.

compleS, complerē, complevi, com-  
plētus, 2, *tr.*; *w. abl.*, fill (with),

concilium, i, council.

cSnficiS, cSnficere, cSnffeci, cSnfectas,  
3, *tr.*, finish, wear out.

cōnfirmō, I, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, affirm,  
encourage, strengthen.

conjiciS, conjicere, conjeēci, con j ectas,  
3, *tr.*, throw, hurl; in fugam con-  
jicere, to throw into flight.

cōnor, cSnāri, cSnātus sum, I, *tr.*; *w.*  
*infin.*, try, attempt.

cSnservS, I, *tr.*, preserve, spare,

cōnsilium, i, plan, counsel; consiliūm  
capere, to make a plan.

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cSnstiti, 3, *intr.*,  
halt, take a position.

cōnspiciS, cSnspicere, cōnspexi, con-  
spectus, 3, *tr.*, see, catch sight of.

cSnstituS, cSnstituere, cSnstitai, cSn-  
stitutus, 3, *tr.*; *w. in fin.*, place, set  
up, decide, determine.

cSnsuevi, cōnsuevus, 3, *tr. and intr.*;  
*w. infin.*, have accustomed, have be-  
come accustomed, am accustomed.

(The present tenses of cōnsuevi are  
not common. Hence only the perfect  
indicative active and the perfect  
participle passive are given. BUT  
note that the perfect CAN have a  
PRESENT meaning and the plu-  
perfect can have a PERFECT  
meaning.)

contends, contendere, contend?, 3,  
*intr.*; *w. infin.*, strive, contend,  
hasten.

contineō, continēre, continui, conten-  
tas, 2, *tr.*, restrain, hold in.

contra, *prep. w. acc.*, against, opposite.

conveniS, convenire, convent, conven-  
tam, 4, *intr.*, come together, assem-  
ble.

cōpia, ae, supply, abundance,

cōpiae, cōpiaum, troops, forces,

corpus, corporis, «, body.

Corregidor, *indecl. n.*, Corregidor.



cum, *conj.*, when.

cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with,

cupidus, a, um; *w. gen.*, eager, desirous.

cupiō, cupere, cupivi, cupitus, 3, *tr.*; *w. infin.*, desire.

cūr, *adv.*, why?

custōs, custodis, guard.

dē, *prep. w. abl.*, concerning, about, down from, from.

decern, ten.

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditus, 3, *tr.*, give up, surrender.

dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxi, dēductus, 3, *tr.*, lead, lead away.

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfend!, dēfēn\* sus, 3, *tr.*, defend.

dēmōstrō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, show, point out.

Deus, Dei, God.

died, dicere, dixi, dictus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, say, tell.

diēs, diē, *m. (f.)*, day.

difficilis, e, difficult.

diligō, diligere, dilēxi, dilēctus, 3, *tr.*, love.

dimittō, dimittere, dimisi, dimissus, 3, *tr.*, send away, dismiss.

Diocletianus, i, Diocletian,

discēdō, discēdere, discessi, discessurus, 3, *intr.*, depart, withdraw,

diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long,

diūtius, *comparative adv.*, longer.

dō, dare, dedi, datus, 1, *tr.*, give; in fugam dare, to put to flight; inter sē dare, to exchange.

doceō, docēre, docui, doctus, 2, *tr.*; *two accs.*; *acc. w. infin.*, teach, inform.

dolor, doloris, pain, sorrow.

dominus, i, master, Lord (in Christian Latin used of God or Christ),

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus, 3, *tr.*, lead, guide.

duo, ae, o, two.

dux, ducis, leader.

ē. See ex.

ego, mei, I.

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgrēssus sum, 3, *intr.*, go out.

elephantus, i, elephant.

enim, *conj.*, *postp.*, for.

eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum, *irreg.*, *intr.*, go.

Ēpirus, i, Epirus.

eques, equitis, horseman (*pl.*, cavalry).

equitatus, u, cavalry.

ēripīō, ēripere, erīpui, erēptus, 3, *tr.*;

*ex w. abl.*, take away, save (from), et, *conj.*, and.

et . . . et, both . . . and.

etiam, *adv.*, also.

Eurōpa, ae, Europe.

ex (ē), *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from.

exeō, exire, exii, exitum, *irreg.*, *intr.*, go out.

exercitus, u, army.

existimō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, think,

explōrō, 1, *tr.*, reconnoiter, find out.

expugnō, 1, *tr.*, storm, take by storm,

expectō, 1, *tr.*, wait for, wait,

exterior, ius, outer,

extrēmus, a, um, outermost.

Fabricius, i, Fabricius.

facile, *adv.*, easily,

facilis, e, easy.

facilior, *comparative adv.*, more easily,

faciō, facere, feci, factus, 3, *tr.*, do, make; iter facere, to march; certi-

ōrem (\*es) facere; *acc. w. infin.*;

*dē w. abl.*, to inform.

ferē, *adv.*, almost.

fidēs, fidei, faith, reliability, faithfulness.

filius, i, son.

finēs, finium, *m.*, territory.

finitimus, a, um; *w. dat.*, neighboring, next.

flūmen, flūminis, river,

fortis, e, brave, strong,

fortiter, *adv.*, bravely, strongly,

fortūne, ae, fortune.

fossa, ae, ditch.

frāter, frātris (fratrum), brother,

frumentum, 7, grain {*pl.*, crops).

fuga, ae, flight; in fugam conjicere, to throw into flight; in fugam dare, to put to flight.

fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitūrus, 3, *tr.*, flee.

Gabriēl, Gabriēlis, Gabriel.

Galilaea, ae, Galilee.

Gallia, ae, Gaul.

Gallus, 7, a Gaul.

gēns, gentis, tribe.

genus, generis, *n.*, kind, race.

Germania, ae, Germany.

Germanus, 7, a German.

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, 3, *tr.*, carry, carry on, wage (*w. bellum*).

Gethsemani, *indecl. n.*, Gethsemani.

gladius, 7, sword.

glōria, ae, fame, glory.

Graecus, 7, a Greek.

grātia, ae, favor, influence, grace,

grātia, gratiarum, thanks; gratias

agere, to give thanks, to thank,

gravis, e, heavy, severe, serious.

habeo, 2, *tr.*, have.

Hannibal, Hannibalis, *m.*, Hannibal (a great Carthaginian general who fought against the Romans).

Helvētii, Helvētiorum, the Helvetians.

hTerna, hibernōrum, winter quarters,

hie, haec, hoc, this.

Hispania, ae, Spain.

Hispanicus, a, um, Spanish.

homō, hominis, man.

hōra, ae, hour.

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, 1, *tr.*, urge, encourage.

hostis, hostis, enemy (in war).

ibi, *adv.*, there.

ille, ilia, illud, that, he, she, it.

impedimenta, impedimentdrum, baggage, baggage train.

impediō, 4, *tr.*, hinder, impede,

impeditus, a, um, encumbered, difficult.

imperātor, imperātoris, commander in chief, general, emperor.

imperium, 7, command, power, empire, impetus, uſ, attack.

in, *prep. w. abl.*, in, on; *prep. w. acc.*, in, into, against, upon, onto, on, towards.

in fugam conjicere, to throw into flight.

in fugam dare, to put to flight,

in principio, in the beginning,

in saecula saeculorum, world without end, forever.

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus, 3, *tr.*, set fire to, burn.

incitō, 1, *tr.*, incite, arouse.

incolō, incolere, incolui, 3, *tr.*, inhabit, dwell in.

India, ae, India.

ineō, inire, inī, initus, *irreg.*, *tr.*, go into, enter upon.

injūria, ae, injustice, wrong,

inopia, ae, scarcity, want,

inquit, he says, he said.

instruō, instruere, 7nstrūx7, instrūctus, 3, *tr.*, draw up, equip.

integer, integra, integrum, fresh, uninjured, whole.

inter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among,

inter se dare, to exchange.

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, 3, *tr.*, kill.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

is, ea, id, that, he, she, it.

Isabella, ae, Isabella.

Israēl, Israēlis, Israel.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus.

Italia, ae, Italy.

itaque, *conj.*, therefore, and so.

iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, march, route; iter facere, to march.

jam, *adv.*, already, now (at that time).

Japō, Japoñis, a Japanese.



*nē*, conj. (in negative purpose clauses),

lest, in order that not, that not.

-ne, particle used in questions.

*uegō*, 1, tr.; acc. w. in fin., deny, say . . . not.

*nēmō*, *nēminis*, m., no one.

*neque*, conj., nor, and . . . not.

*neque* . . . *neque*, conj., neither . . . nor.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two).

*nihil*, indecl. noun, nothing,

*nōbilis*, e, noble, renowned,

*uocēō*, *nocerē*, *nocui*, *nociturus*, 2, intr.; w. dat., do harm to, injure,

*nōmen*, *nomīnis*, name; *nomine*, named (by name).

*nōn*, adv., not.

*nōn* possum, posse, potui, irreg., intr.; w. infin., am unable.

*nōnne*, particle used in questions expecting an affirmative answer.

*nōs*, nostri, we.

*noster*, nostra, nostrum, our, ours, novem, nine.

*novus*, a, um, new.

*nox*, noctis, night,

*nūllus*, a, um, no, none.

*num*, particle used in questions expecting a negative answer.

*numerus*, T, number,

*numquam*, adv., never.

*nunc*, adv., now.

*nuntiō*, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin., announce, report.

*nuntius*, i, messenger, message.

*obses*, *obsidis*, c., hostage.

*obtineō*, *obtinēre*, *obtinuei*, *obtentus*, 2, tr., hold, occupy.

*occidō*, *occidere*, *occidi*, *occisus*, 3, tr., kill.

*occupō*, 1, tr., seize.

*octō*, eight.

*umminō*, adv., at all (w. negatives *Hic nōn*); altogether, in all (w. numerals).

*omnis*, e, all, every.

*oportet*, *oportēre*, *oportuit*, 2, intr.; acc. w. in fin., it behooves fin translating use: it is proper, should, it is necessary, etc.).

*oppidum*, i, town.

*oppugnō*, 1, tr., attack, assault, storm,

*optimus*, a, um, best,

*drātiō*, *oratiohis*, speech, prayer,

*ōrdō*, *ordinis*, m., rank (of soldiers),

*orior*, *oriri*, *ortus sum*, 4, intr., arise, rise.

*ōrō*, 1, tr., beg, pray.

*ostendō*, *ostendere*, *ostendi*, *ostentus*, 3, tr., show.

*pācō*, 1, tr., pacify.

*parātus*, a, um; w. ad or infin., prepared (for), ready.

*parō*, 1, tr.; w. infin., prepare, get ready.

*pars*, partis, part,

*parvus*, a, um, small, little.

*passus*, uſ, pace (a measure of distance); *mille passus*, a mile (literally, a thousand paces); *milia passuum*, miles (thousand of paces),

*pater*, patris (patrum), father.

*patior*, *pati*, *passus sum*, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin., suffer, allow.

*Paulus*, T, Paul.

*pāx*, *pācis*, peace.

*peccātum*, T, mistake, sin (in Christian Latin).

*pējor*, *pėjus*, worse.

*pel* 1o, *pellere*, *pepuli*, *pulsus*, 3, tr., drive, repulse, rout.

*per*, prep. w. acc., through,

*periculum*, i, danger.

*pertineō*, *pertinēre*, *pertinuei*, 2, intr.;

ad w. acc., pertain to, stretch to.

*perturbō*, 1, tr., confuse, disturb,

*pervenio*, *pervenire*, *pervenī*, *perventum*, 4, intr.; in or ad w. acc., arrive.

*pis*, *pedis*, m., foot (part of body or measure of distance).

pessimus, a, um, worst.

petō, petere, petivi, petitus, 3, *tr.*,  
seek, beg, request.

Petrus, i, Peter.

Philippinus, a, um, Philippine.

Pilatus, i, Pilate.

Pisō (Pisōnis) Aquitanus (i), Piso  
Aquitanus.

plēnus, a, um; *w. gen. or abl.*, full,

plūrēs, a, more.

plūrimi, ae, a, very many,

plūrimum, *adv.*, very much, very,

plūrimus, a, um, most.

plūs, plufis, *n.*; *w. gen.*, more,

polliceor, pollicerī, pollicitus sum, 2,  
*tr.*; *acc. w. future infinitive*, promise,

pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus, 3, *tr.*,

put, place, set, pitch (*w. castra*).

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge,

populus, i, people, nation,

porta, ae, gate.

pottō, 1, *tr.*, carry,

portus, ūs, harbor,

possum, posse, potui, *irreg., intr.*; *w. infin.*, am able, can.

post, *prep. w. acc.*, after, behind,

postea, *adv.*, afterwards,

praemium, i, reward,

praesidium, i, garrison, protection,

praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefu-  
tūrus, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, am in com-  
mand of, am in charge of.

praeterea, *adv.*, besides, furthermore,

premō, premere, press!, pressus, 3,  
*tr.*, press, press hard.

primā luce, at dawn,

primum, *adv.*, first,

primus, a, um, first.

princeps, principis, chief, leading man.

prō, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of (before),  
on behalf of (for),

probd, 1, *tr.*, approve, prove,

proelium, i, battle.

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum,  
3, *intr.*; *ad w. acc.*, set out.

prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum,  
3, *intr.*, advance.

prohibeo, 2, *tr.*; *abl. of separ.*, ward  
off (from), prevent.

propinquus, a, um, near,

propior, ius, nearer.

propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.

prōvincia, ae, province.

proximus, a, um; *w. dat.*, nearest, next,

puer, pueri, boy.

pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight.

putō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, think.

Pyrrhus, i, Pyrrhus.

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitus,  
3, *tr.*, seek, ask.

quam, *adv.*, than (same case after as  
before); *interrogative adv. of de-  
gree*, how?

quantus, a, um, *interrogative adj.*,  
how large? how great?

quattuor, four,

-que, *conj.*, and.

qui, quae, quod, *relative pronoun*,  
who (whose, whom), which, that;  
*interrogative adj.*, which? what?

quinque, five.

quis, quid, *interrogative pronoun*,  
who? what?

quō, *interrogative adv.*, whither? to  
what place? where ... (to)?; *conj.*,  
in order that, that (before compara-  
tives in purpose clauses).

quod, *conj.*, because.

quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many?

ratio, ratiōis, reason, manner. Be  
sure to translate ratio into good  
English as the sense and context  
demand. The vocabulary gives only  
the most general idea of the great  
number of meanings.

Ratislāus, Ratislāi, Ratislaus.

recipio, recipere, recepi, receptus, 3,  
*tr.*, receive, accept, recover; *w. a  
reflexive pronoun* (mi, ti, si, etc.),  
withdraw.

redeo, redire, redii, reditus, *irreg.*,  
*intr.*, return.

rēgina, ae, queen,  
 regiō, regidnis, region,  
 rēgnum, i, kingdom, royal power.  
 regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus, 3, *tr.*, di-  
 rect, rule.  
 relinquo, relinquere, reliqui, relictus,  
 3, *tr.*, leave, leave behind.  
 reliquus, a, um, remaining, the rest of.  
 reperio, reperire, repperi, repertus,  
 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, find (out).  
 res, rei, thing, affair.  
 res adversae, rerum adversarum, ad-  
 versity.  
 res publica, rei publicae, state, re-  
 public.  
 responded, respondere, respond?, re-  
 sponsus, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, an-  
 swer.  
 retined, retinere, retinui, retentus, 2,  
*tr.*, hold back, keep.  
 rex, regis, king.  
 Rhēnus, i, the Rhine (a river).  
 rogo, 1, *tr.*, ask.  
 Rōma, ae, Rome.  
 Rōmānus, a, um, Roman.  
 Rōmānus, i, a Roman,  
 rursus, *adv.*, again.  
 saepe, *adv.*, often.  
 salus, salutis, safety, welfare, salva-  
 tion.  
 sanctus, a, um, holy,  
 sanctus, i; sancta, ae, a saint,  
 satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently; *in-*  
*decl. noun w. gen.*, enough.  
 scio, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, know.  
 Scipio, Scipionis, Scipio (the name of  
 several great Roman generals).  
 scribo, scribere, scrips?, scriptus, 3,  
*tr.*; *acc. w. in fin.*, write.  
 secundus, a, um, second.  
 sed, *conj.*, but.  
 semper, *adv.*, always,  
 senatus, us, senate,  
 sententia, ae, opinion, vote,  
 sentid, sentire, sens?, sensus, 4, *tr.*;  
*acc. w. infin.*, feel, perceive, think.

septem, seven.  
 sequor, sequi, secutus sum, 3, *tr.*,  
 follow.  
 servo, 1, *tr.*, guard, keep,  
 servus, i, slave, servant.  
 sex, six.  
 Sicilia, ae, Sicily,  
 sicut, *conj.*, as.  
 signum, i, standard, signal, sign,  
 silva, ae, forest.  
 similis, e; *w. gen. or dat.*, like, similar,  
 sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without,  
 socius, i, ally,  
 solus, a, um, alone, only (as *adj.*),  
 spes, spei, hope.  
 spiritus, us, breath, spirit,  
 statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately,  
 subito, *adv.*, suddenly.  
 sui {third personal reflexive pronoun,  
 GR., NO. 127}, himself, herself, itself,  
 themselves.  
 sum, esse, fui, futurus, *intr.*, am.  
 summus, a, um, highest, greatest, very  
 great.  
 superior, ius, higher.  
 supero, 1, *tr.*, overcome, conquer, sur-  
 pass.  
 supremus, a, um, highest,  
 sustined, sustinere, sustinui, susten-  
 tus, 2, *tr.*, sustain, withstand.  
 suus, a, um, his (own), her (own),  
 its (own), their (own),  
 tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless.  
 Tarentinus, i, an inhabitant of Ta-  
 rentum, a Tarentine.  
 tello, i, dart,  
 tempus, temporis, *n.*, time,  
 teneo, tenere, tenui, tentus, 2, *tr.*,  
 hold; memoria tenere, to keep in  
 memory, to remember.  
 terra, ae, earth, land,  
 terreo, 2, *tr.*, terrify,  
 tertius, a, um, third.  
 Thebais, a, um, Theban.  
 Thomas, Thomae, *m.*, Thomas.  
 Tiberis, is, *m.*, the Tiber (a river).

timeō, timeē, timui, 2, *tr.*; *w. infin.*,  
fear, am afraid.

timor, timorīs, fear.

Titus, i, Titus (a Roman name),

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublatuſ, 3, *tr.*,  
raise (up), take away.

tōtus, a, um, whole, all of, the whole  
of.

trādō, tradere, tradi, tradituſ, 3,  
*tr.*, hand over.

trādūcō, tradūcere, traduxi, traduc-  
tus, 3, *tr.*; two accs. or acc. and  
*trans w. acc.*, lead across,

trans, *prep. w. acc.*, across.

trāseō, tranſire, tranſi, trānitūſ,  
*irreg.*, *tr.*, go across, cross.

trēs, tria, three.

tribūnus, i, tribune; tribunus (-1)  
militum, military tribune.

tū, tui, you (*sing.*).

turn, *adv.*, then, at that time,

tūtus, a, um, safe (from).

tuus, a, um, your, yours (when re-  
ferring to one person).

ubi, *adv.*, where ?

ūllus, a, um, any.

ulterior, ius, farther,

ultimus, a, um, farthest.

undē, *adv.*, whence? from what place?  
where . . . from?

undique, *adv.*, from all sides, on all  
sides.

ūnus, a, um, one.

urbs, urbis, city.

usque, *adv.*, all the way.

ut, *conj.*, in order that, that (in in-  
purpose clauses).

uter, utra, utrum, which? (of two),

ūtilis, e; *w. ad.* useful (for).

utinam, may, would that (*used with  
the subjunctive in wishes*).

vacuus, a, um; *abl. oj separ.*, empty  
(of).

valed, valeē, valui, valiturūſ, 2, *intr.*,  
am strong, am well, am influential,

vallum, i, wall, rampart,

vastd, i, *tr.*, lay waste, ravage,

vehementer, *adv.*, greatly, violently,

veniō, venire, veni, ventum, 4, *intr.*,  
come.

ventus, i, wind.

vereor, vereē, veritus sum, 2, *tr.*; *w.  
in fin.*, fear.

vērītās, vēritatīs, truth.

vērō, *adv.*, *postp.*, in truth, but.

vērus, a, um, true.

vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours  
(when referring to more than one),

via, ae, road, way.

victōria, ae, victory,

videō, videē, vidi, visus, 2, *tr.*, see.

vigilia, ae, watch.

vincō, vincere, vici, victus, 3, *tr.*, con-  
quer.

vir, viri, man.

virtūſ, virtutīs, courage, virtue,

vita, ae, life.

vocō, i, *tr.*; two accs., call,

voluntās, voluntatīs, good will, will,

vōs, vestri, you (*pl.*).

vōx, vōcīs, voice, cry.

vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.

Washington, Washington (the city).

Washingtonius, i, Washington  
(George).

Xerxeſ, Xerxis, Xerxes.





## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

- able, am, possum, posse, potui, *irreg.*,  
*intr.*; *w. infin.*
- about, *dē*, *prep. w. abl.*
- abundance, *cōpia*, *ae.*
- accept, accipid, accipere, accēpi, ac-  
ceptus, 3, *tr.*; recipiō, recipere, re-  
cēpi, receptus, 3, *tr.*
- according to custom, *morē*,
- account of, on, propter, *prep. w. acc.*
- accustomed, am, or have accustomed,  
*cōnsuevi*, *cōnsuevus*, 3, *tr. and intr.*;  
*w. infin.*
- across, *trāns*, *prep. w. acc.*
- across, go, *trānseō*, *trānsire*, *trānsi*,  
*trānsitus*, *irreg.*, *tr.*
- across, lead, *trādūcō*, *trādūcere*, *trā-*  
*dūxi*, *trādūctus*, 3, *tr.*; *two accs. or*  
*acc. and trāns w. acc.*
- act, agō, agere, *egl.*, *actus*, 3, *tr.*
- address, *appellō*, 1, *tr.*; *two accs.*
- adore, *adorō*, 1, *tr.*
- advance, *prōgredior*, *prōgredi*, *prō-*  
*gressus sum*, 3, *intr.*
- adversity, *rēs adversae*, *rērum adver-*  
*sārum*.
- advise, *moneō*, 2, *tr.*
- affair, *rēs*, *rel.*
- affirm, *cōfirmd*, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- afraid, am, timed, *timefē*, *timui*, 2, *tr.*;  
*w. infin.*
- after, post, *prep. w. acc.*
- afterwards, *postea*, *adv.*
- again, *rūrsus*, *adv.*
- against, *contrā*, *prep. w. acc.*; in, *prep.*,  
*w. acc.*
- aid, *auxilium*, 1.
- aid, *adjuvō*, *adjuvāre*, *adjūvi*, *adjūtus*,  
1, *tr.*
- alarm, *commoveō*, *commovēre*, *com-*  
*mōvi*, *commotus*, 2, *tr.*
- all, *omnis*, *e.*
- all of, *tōtus*, *a*, *um* (GR., NO. 84).
- all the way, *usque*, *adv.*
- allow, *patior*, *pati*, *passus sum*, 3, *tr.*;  
*acc. w. infin.*
- ally, *socius*, 1.
- almost, *ferē*, *adv.*
- alone, *sōlus*, *a*, *um* (GR., NO. 84).
- Alps, *Alpeš*, *Alpium*, *m.*
- already, *jam*, *adv.*
- also, *etiam*, *adv.*
- altogether, *omnino*, *adv.*
- always, *semper*, *adv.*
- am, *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futurūs*, *intr.*
- am able, possum, posse, potui, *irreg.*,  
*intr.*; *w. in fin.*
- am accustomed, *cōnsuevi*, *consuetus*,  
3, *intr.*; *w. in fin.*
- am afraid, timed, *timefē*, *timui*, 2, *tr.*;  
*w. infin.*
- am away, absum, abesse, *afui*, *afutu-*  
*rus*, *intr.*; *ab (a) w. abl.*
- am distant, absum, abesse, *afui*, *afu-*  
*tūrus*, *intr.*; *ab (a) w. abl.*
- am in charge of, *praesum*, *praeesse*,  
*praeul*, *praeufurus*, *intr.*; *w. dat.*
- am in command of, *praesum*, *praeesse*,  
*praeul*, *praeufurus*, *intr.*; *w. dat.*
- am influential, *valeo*, *vālere*, *vālui*,  
*valitūrus*, 2, *intr.*
- am strong, *valeo*, *vālere*, *vālui*, *vali-*  
*tūrus*, 2, *intr.*
- am well, *valeo*, *vālere*, *vālui*, *valiturūs*,  
2, *intr.*
- America, *America*, *ae.*
- American, *Americānus*, *a*, *um*.
- Americans, *Americāni*!, *Americānoŕum*.
- among, *apud*, *prep. w. acc.*; inter,  
*prep. w. acc.*
- and, *atque (ac)*; et; -que, *conjs.*
- and . . . not, *neque*, *conj.*
- and so, *itaque*, *conj.*
- announce, *nuntiō*, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- another (of more than two), *alius*,  
*alia*, *aliud* (GR., NOS. 85-86).
- another's, *aliēnus*, *a*, *um*.

- answer, responded, respondēre, respondē  
dŕs responsus, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. in fin.*  
any, ullus, a, um (GR., NO. 84).  
apostle, apostolus, I.  
approach, aded, adire, adii, aditus,  
*irreg., tr.*; appropinquō, I, *intr.*; *w. ad or dat.*  
approve, probō, I, *tr.*  
arise, orior, oriri, ortus sum, 4, *intr.*  
arms, arma, armdrum.  
army, exercitus, ūs; (on the march),  
agmen, agminis.  
arouse, commoveo, commoverē, com-  
mōvi, commotus, 2, *tr.*; incito, I, *tr.*  
arrival, adventus, uŕs.  
arrive, perveniō, pervenire, pervēni,  
perventum, 4, *intr.*; *in or ad w. acc.*  
as, sicut, *conj.*  
ask, quaerō, quaerere, quaesivi, quae-  
situs, 3, *tr.*; rogo, I, *tr.*  
assault, oppugnō, /, *tr.*  
assemble, convenio, convenire, con-  
vēm, conventum, 4, *intr.*  
at, ad, *prep. w. acc.*  
at all (*w. negatives*), omninō, *adv.*  
at dawn, primā luĉe.  
at once, statim, *adv.*  
at that time, turn, *adv.*  
attack, impetus, uŕs.  
attack, oppugnō, I, *tr.*  
attempt, Cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum,  
I, *tr.*; *w. in fin.*  
attend to, administro, I, *tr.*  
Augustine, Augustinus, i.  
Australia, Austrālia, ae.  
authority, auctoritās, auctoritatis.  
away, am, absum, abesse, āful, āfu-  
tūrus, *intr.*; ab (a) *w. abl.*  
away, lead, dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxi,  
dēductus, 3, *tr.*  
away, send, dimittō, dimittere, dimisi,  
dimissus, 3, *tr.*  
away, take, ēripīō, ēripere, ēripui,  
ēreptus, 3, *tr.*; tollō, tollere, sustuli,  
sublātus, 3, *tr.*  
away from, ab (a), *prep. w. abl.*  
back, hold, retineo, řetinere, řetui,  
retentus, 2, *tr.*  
bad, malus, a, um.  
baggage, impedimenta, impedimentd-  
rum.  
baggage train, impedimenta, impediment-  
drum.  
band of men, manus, uŕs /.  
barbarian (*adj.*), barbarus, a, um;  
(*noun*), barbarus, i.  
Bataan. Use the English form un-  
changed in Latin.  
battle, proelium, i.  
battle line, acies, acief.  
be. See am.  
because, quod, *conj.*  
become accustomed, have, ednsuevi,  
cōsuētus, 3, *tr. and intr.*; *w. in fin.*  
before (time), ante, *prep. w. acc.*;  
(place), pro, *prep. w. abl.*  
beg, ořo, I, *tr.*; peto, pefere, petivi,  
petitus, 3, *tr.*  
beginning, in the, in principio.  
behalf of, on, pro, *prep. w. abl.*  
behind, post, *prep. w. acc.*; leave be-  
hind, relinquo, řelinquere, reliqui,  
relictus, 3, *tr.*  
behooves, it, oportet, oportere, opor-  
tuit, 2, *intr.*; *acc. w. in fin.*  
besides, praeterea, *adv.*  
best, optimus, a, um.  
better, melior, ius.  
between, inter, *prep. w. acc.*  
bitterly, ācritur, *adv.*  
body, corpus, corporis, n.  
both . . . and, et . . . et.  
boy, puer, pueri.  
brave, fortis, e.  
bravely, fortiter, *adv.*  
breath, spiritus, uŕs.  
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.  
British, Britanni, Britannorūm.  
brother, frāter, frātris (frafrum).  
burn, incendio, řincendere, incendi, in-  
cēnsus, 3, *tr.*  
but, at, *conj.*; sed, *conj.*; vero, ādv.,  
*postp.*

by, ab (ā), *prep. w. abl.*

by far, longē, *adv.*

by name, nōmine.

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris.

call, voco, 1, *tr.; two accs.*

call (upon), appello, 1, *tr.; two accs.*

camp, castra, castrorūm; to pitch  
camp, castra pōnere.

can, possum, posse, potui, *irreg., intr.;*  
*w. in fin.*

capture, capid, capere, cepi, captus, 3,  
*tr.*

carry, gero, gerere, gessi, gestus, 3,  
*tr.; porto, 1, tr.*

carry on, gero, gerere, gessi, gestus, 3,  
*tr.*

Carthaginians, Carthagīniēses, Car\*\*  
thāginiēnsium.

catch sight of, conspicio, cōspicere,  
cōspexi, cōspectus, 3, *tr.*

cause, causa, ae.

cavalry, equitatus, us, equites, equi-  
tum.

centurion, centurib, centurionis.

certain, certus, a, um.

charge of, am in, praesum, praeesse,  
praeui, praeuturus, *intr.; w. dat.*

chief, princeps, principis.

Christ, Christus, I.

Christian (*adj.*), Christianus, a, um;  
(*noun*), Christianus, I.

Cicero, Cicerō, Ciceronis.

city, urbs, urbis.

collect, cogb, cogere, coegi, coactus, 3,  
*tr.*

Columbus, Columbus, I.

column (of soldiers), agmen, agminis.

come, venio, venire, veni, ventum, 4,  
*intr.*

come together, convenio, cōvenire,  
convēni, conventum, 4, *intr.*

coming, adventus, us.

command, imperium, i.

command, jubeo, jubere, jussi, jussus,  
2, *tr.; acc. w. infin.*

command of, am in, praesum, prae-

esse, praeui, praeuturus, *intr.; w. dat.*

commander in chief, imperator, im-  
peratōris.

common, communis, e.

concerning, de, *prep. w. abl.*

confuse, perturbo, 1, *tr.*

conquer, superbo, 1, *tr.; vinco, vincere,*  
vici, victus, 3, *tr.*

consider, arbitror, arbitraři, arbitrafus  
sum, 1, *tr.; acc. w. infin.*

construct, muño, 4, *tr. (w. viam or*  
*vids).*

contend, contendo, contendere, con-  
tend!, 3, *intr.; w. in fin.*

council, concilium, i.

counsel, consilium, I.

courage, virtus, virtutis.

crops, frumenta, frumentbrum,

cross, transeo, transire, transii, tran-  
situs, *irreg., tr.*

cry, vox, vocis.

custom, mos, moris, *m.; according to*  
custom, more.

danger, periculum, I.

dart, telum, i.

dawn, at, prima luce.

day, dies, diei, *m. (j.).*

death, mors, mortis.

decide, constitub, constituere, consti-  
tui, constitutus, 3, *tr.; w. in fin.*

deep, altus, a, um.

defend, defendo, defendere, defend!,  
defensus, 3, *tr.; abl. of separ.*

delay, mora, ae.

deny, negb, 1, *tr.; acc. w. infin.*

depart, discedo, discedere, discessi,  
discessurus, 3, *intr.*

desire, cupio, cupere, cupivi, cupitus,  
3, *tr.; w. infin.*

desirous, cupidus, a, um; *w. gen.*

determine, constitub, constituere, con-  
stitui, constitutus, 3, *tr.; w. infin.*

difficult, difficilis, e; impeditus, a,  
um.

direct, rego, regere, rexi, reclus, 3, *tr.*

- dismiss, *dlmittt*, *dlmittere*, *dlmlsl*, *dimissus*, 3, *tr.*  
 dispatch, *litterae*, *litterarum*.  
 distant, *am*, *absum*, *abesse*, *ftful*. *ifu-tūrus*, *intr.*; *ab (a) w. abl.*  
 distinguish, *cemd*, *cernere*, 3, *tr.*  
 disturb, *perturbd*, 1, *tr.*  
 ditch, *fossa*, *ae.*  
 do, *agd*, *agere*, *dgl*, *actus*, 3, *tr.*; *fadd*, *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*, 3, *tr.*  
 do harm to, *noced*, *nocere*, *nocul*, *no-dtūrus*, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat.*  
 down from, *de*, *prep.* *w. abl.*  
 draw near to, *appropinquo*, *ī*, *intr.*; *w. ad or dat.*  
 draw up, *Instruō*, *Instruere*, *instrūxi*, *instrūctus*, 3, *tr.*  
 drive, *ago*, *agere*, *dgl*, *actus*, 3, *tr.*; *pelld*, *pellere*, *pepuli*, *pulsus*, 3, *tr.*  
 dwell in, *incol*, *incolere*, *incolul*, 3, *tr.*
- eager, *cupidus*, *a*, *um*; *w. gen.*  
 eagerly, *acriter*, *adv.*  
 earth, *terra*, *ae.*  
 easily, *facile*, *adv.*; more easily, *facilius*, *comparative adv.*  
 easy, *fadlis*, *e.*  
 effort, *labor*, *labdris*.  
 eight, *octd.*  
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*, *conjs.*  
 elephant, *elephantus*, 1.  
 emperor, *imperātor*, *imperatōris*.  
 empire, *imperium*, 1.  
 empty (of), *vacuus*, *a*, *um*; *abl. of separ.*  
 encourage, *cdnfirm*, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; *hortor*, *hortāri*, *hortātus sum*, 1, *tr.*  
 encumbered, *impeditus*, *a*, *um*.  
 enemy (in war), *hostis*, *hostis*, *m.*  
 enough, *satis*, *adv. and indecl. noun w. gen.*  
 enter upon, *ined*, *inle*, *inil*, *initus*, *irreg.*, *tr.*  
 envoy, *legātus*, 1.  
 equip, *instruō*, *instruere*, *instrūxi*, *instrūctus*, 3, *tr.*
- eternal, *aeternus*, *a*, *um*.  
 everlasting, *aeternus*, *a*, *um*.  
 every, *omnis*, *e.*  
 exchange, *inter sē dd*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datus*, 1, *tr.*
- facing (towards), *adversus*, *a*, *um*; *w. dat.*  
 faith, *fideſ*, *fidel.*  
 faithfulness, *fideſ*, *fidel.*  
 fall, *cadō*, *cadere*, *cecid*, *cāsūrus*, 3, *intr.*  
 fame, *glōria*, *ae.*  
 far, *longē*, *adv.*; by far, *longe*, *adv.*  
 farther, *ulterior*, *ius*.  
 farthest, *ultimus*, *a*, *um*.  
 father, *pater*, *patris* (*patrum*),  
 favor, *grātia*, *ae.*  
 fear, *metus*, *uſ*; *timor*, *timoriſ*.  
 fear, timed, *timēre*, *timui*, 2, *tr.*; *w. infin.*; *vereor*, *verdri*, *veritus sum*, 2, *tr.*; *w. infin.*  
 feel, *sentid*, *sentire*, *sēnsi*, *sēnsus*, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*  
 field, *ager*, *agri*.  
 fight, *pugnō*, 1, *intr.*  
 fill (with), *compled*, *complēre*, *complēvi*, *complēfus*, 2, *tr.*; *w. abl.*  
 find, *reperiō*, *reperire*, *repperi*, *re-pertus*, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; having found, *nactus*, *a*, *um*.  
 find out, *cognōscd*, *cognōscere*, *cognō vi*, *cognitus*, 3, *tr.*; *explōrd*, 1, *tr.*; *reperid*, *reperire*, *repperi*, *re-pertus*, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*  
 finish, *cōnficiō*, *cōnficere*, *cōnficſi*, *cdn-fectus*, 3, *tr.*  
 fire to, *set*, *incendd*, *incendere*, *in-cendi*, *incēnsus*, 3, *tr.*  
 first, *primus*, *a*, *um*; *primum*, *adv.*  
 five, *quinque*.  
 flee, *fugid*, *fugere*, *fūgl*, *fugittirus*, 3, *tr.*  
 flight, *fuga*, *ae*; to put to flight, *in fugam dare*; to throw into flight, *in fugam conijcere*.  
 follow, *sequor*, *sequi*, *secſtus sum*, 3, *tr.*

foot (*part of body or measure of distance*), *pes*, *pedis*, *m*.

for (*conf.*), *enim*, *postp.*; *nam* (*when meaning is because and introduces a reason*).

for (*prep.*), *pro*, *prep. w. abl.*; *ad*, *prep. w. acc. (w. adj.)*,

for the sake of, *causa w. gen.*

force, *cogō*, *cogēre*, *coegit*, *coactus*, 3, *tr.*

forces (*a military term*), *cōpia*, *cōpiārum*, *f.*

foreign, *aliēnus*, *a*, *um*.

forest, *silva*, *ae*.

forever, in *saecula saeculorūm*.

fortification, *munītiō*, *munītidinis*.

fortify, *munio*, 4, *tr.*

fortune, *fortūna*, *ae*.

found, having, *nactus*, *a*, *um*.

four, *quattuor*.

France. *Use Gallia*, *ae*.

free, *liber*, *libera*, *liberum*; free

(from), *liber*, *libera*, *liberum*; *abl. of separ.*

free (from), *libero*, 1, *tr.*; *abl. of separ.*

French. *Use Galli*, *Gallorūm*.

fresh, integer, *integra*, *integrum*,

friend, *amicus*, *I*.

friendship, *amicitia*, *ae*.

from, *ab* (*a*), *prep. w. abl.*; *de*, *prep.*,

*w. abl.*; *ex* (*S*), *prep. w. abl.*

from all sides, *undique*, *adv.*

from the front, *a fronte*.

from the rear, *a tergo*.

from what place, *unde*,

front, from the, *a fronte*.

front, in the, *a fronte*.

front of, in, *pro*, *prep. w. abl.*

full, *plēnus*, *a*, *um*; *w. gen. or abl.*

furthermore, *praetere*, *adv.*

garrison, *praesidium*, *I*.

gate, *porta*, *ae*.

Gaul (*the country*), *Gallia*, *ae*.

Gaul (*an inhabitant of Gaul*), *Gallus*,

*I*.

general, *imperitor*, *imperitridis*.

get, *compard*, 1, *tr.*

get ready, *paro*, 1, *tr.*; *w. in fin.*

give, *do*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datus*, 1, *tr.*

give thanks, *gratias ago*, *agere*, *egL*, *actus*, 3, *tr.*

give up, *dēdō*, *dēdere*, *dēdidi*, *dēditus*, 3, *tr.*

give way, *cSdo*, *cedere*, *cessi*, *cessurus*, 3, *intr.*

glory, *glōria*, *ae*.

go, *eō*, *ire*, *ivi* (*ii*), *itum*, *irreg.*, *intr.*

go across, *transeo*, *transire*, *transit*, *transitus*, *irreg.*, *tr.*

go into, *ineō*, *inire*, *inii*, *initus*. *irreg.*, *tr.*

go out, *egredior*, *egredi*, *egressus sum*, 3, *intr.*; *exeō*, *exire*, *exii*, *exitum*, *irreg.*, *intr.*

go to, *aded*, *adire*, *adii*, *aditus*, *irreg.*, *tr.*

God, *Deus*, *Dei*.

good, *bonus*, *a*, *um*.

good will, *voluntas*, *voluntatis*,

grace (*in Christian Latin*), *gratia*, *ae*.

grain (*pl.*, crops), *frumentum*, *I*.

Grant. *Use the English form unchanged in Latin.*

great, *magnus*, *a*, *um*; how great,

*quantus*, *a*, *um*. *interrogative adj.*

greater, *maior*, *maius*.

greatest, *maximus*, *a*, *um*; *summus*, *a*, *um*.

greatly, *vehementer*, *adv.*

greatness, *magnitudo*, *magnitudinis*.

guard, *custos*, *custodis*.

guard, *servo*, 1, *tr.*

guide, *dūcō*, *dQcere*, *dūxi*, *ductus*, 3, *tr.*

habit, *mcō*, *mois*, *m*.

hail, *ave!* *interjection*.

halt, *cōsistō*, *cōsistere*, *cōstitit*, 3, *intr.*

hand, *manus*, *ūs*, *f*.

hand over, *trādō*, *trādere*, *trādidi*, *trāditus*, 3, *tr.*

Hannibal, *Hannibal*, *Hannibalis*, *m*.

harbor, *portus*, *ūs*.

harm to, *do*, *noced*, *nocdre*, *nocui*, *nociturus*, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat.*

- hasten, contends, contendere, contend!, 3, *intr.*; *w. in fin.*  
 have, habeo, 2, *tr.*  
 have accustomed, cōnsuēvi, cōnsuētus, 3, *tr.*; *lb.*; *infin.*  
 have become accustomed, cōnsuēvi, cōnsuētus, 3, *intr.*; *w. in fin.*  
 have mercy on us, miserere nobis.  
 he, *masc. of is, ea, id or of ille, ilia, illud.*  
 head, caput, capitis.  
 hear, audiō, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*  
 heaven, caelum, I.  
 heavy, gravis, e.  
 help, auxilium, I.  
 help, adjuvō, adjuvāre, adjūvi, adjūtus, I, *tr.*  
 Helvetians, Helvētīi, Helvētīōrum.  
 her (own), suus, a, um.  
 herself, sul.  
 high, altus, a, um.  
 higher, superior, ius.  
 highest, summus, a, um; suprēmus, a, um.  
 hill, collis, collis, *m.*  
 himself, sul.  
 hinder, impediō, 4, *tr.*  
 his (own), suus, a, um.  
 hold, obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus, 2, *tr.*; teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus, 2, *tr.*  
 hold back, retineō, retinēre, retinui, retentus, 2, *tr.*  
 hold in, contained, continēre, continui, contentus, 2, *tr.*  
 holy, sāctus, a, um.  
 hope, spēs, spei.  
 horseman (*pl.*, cavalry), eques, equitis.  
 hostage, obses, obsidis, *c.*  
 hour, hōra, ae.  
 how, quam, *interrogative adv.*  
 how great, quantus, a, um, *interrogative adj.*  
 how large, quantus, a, um, *interrogative adj.*  
 how many, quot, *indecl. adj.*  
 however, autem, *conj. postp.*  
 hundred, one, centum.  
 hurl, conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcl, conjectus, J, *tr.*  
 I, ego, mei.  
 immediately, statim, *adv.*  
 impede, impediō, 4, *tr.*  
 in, in, *prep. w. abl.*; in, *prep. w. acc.*  
 in all (*w. numerals*), omnino, *adv.*  
 in charge of, am, praesum, praesesse, praefui, praefuturus, *intr.*; *w. dat.*  
 in command of, am, praesum, praesesse, praefui, praefuturus, *sntr.*; *w. dat.*  
 in front of, pro, *prep. w. abl.*  
 in order that, ut, *conj. (in purpose clauses)*; quō, *conj. (before comparative)*. (GR., NO. 546.)  
 in order that not, nē, *conj. (in negative purpose clauses)*. (GR., NO. 546.)  
 in the beginning, in principiō.  
 in the front, a fronte.  
 in the presence of, apud, *Prep. w. acc.*  
 in the rear, a tergo.  
 in truth, vērbo, *adv.*, *postp.*  
 incite, incitō, 1, *tr.*  
 influence, auctōritās, auctōritātis; grātia, ae.  
 influential, am, valed, valēre, valui, valitūrus, 2, *intr.*  
 inform, certiofem <-es) facio, fācere, fēcī, factus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; *de w. abl.*; doceo, docēre, docui, doctus, 2, *tr.*; *two accs.*; *acc. w. in fin.*  
 inhabit, incolō, incolere, incolui, 3, *tr.*  
 injure, noceo, nocēre, nocui, nocitrus, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat.*  
 injustice, injūria, ae.  
 into, in, *prep. w. acc.*  
 it, is, ea, id; ille, ilia, illud.  
 Italy, Italia, ae.  
 its (own), suus, a, um.  
 itself, sul.  
 Japan, Japoñia, ae.  
 Japanese, Japo, Japoñis.

Jesus, Jēsuſ, ſ (declined: Jēsuſ, Jēsu,  
Jēsu, Jēsuſ, Jeſu).

Jew, Judaeus, I.

journey, iter, itineris, *n*.

judge, judico, *I, tr.; acc. w. infin.*

keep, retined, retinēre, retinui, reten-  
tus, 2, *tr.*; servo, *I, tr.*

keep in memory, memoria tened,  
tenēre, tenui, tentus, 2, *tr.*

kill, interficio, interficere, interfeci, in-  
terfectus, 3, *tr.*; occido, occidere,  
occidi, occisus, 3, *tr.*

kind, genus, generis, *n*.

king, rex, regis.

kingdom, regnum, *i*.

know, scio, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. in fin.*

Labienus, Labienus, *i*.

land, terra, *ae*.

large, magnus, *a, um*; how large,  
quantus, *a, um*, *interrogative adj.*

law, lex, legis.

lay waste, vasto, *I, tr.*

lead, ducō, ducere, duxi, ductus, 3, *tr.*;  
deducō, deducere, deduxi, deductus,  
3, *tr.*

lead across, traducō, traducere, trā-  
dūxi, traductus, 3, *tr.*; *two accs. or*  
*acc. and trans w. acc.*

lead away, deducō, deducere, deduxi,  
deductus, 3, *tr.*

lead on, adducō, adducere, adduxi,  
adductus, 3, *tr.*

lead to, adducō, adducere, adduxi, ad-  
ductus, 3, *tr.*

leader, dux, duds.

leading man, princeps, principis.

learn, cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi,  
cognit us, 3, *tr.*

leave, relinquo, relinquere, relinqui, re-  
lictus, 3, *tr.*

leave behind, relinquo, relinquere, re-  
llui, relictus, 3, *tr.*

legion, legio, legionis, *i*.

lest, ne, conj. (*in negative purpose*  
*clauses*).

letter (*an epistle*), litterae, litterarum,  
lieutenant, legatus, *i*.

life, vita, *ae*.

light, lux, lucis.

like, similis, *e*; *w. gen. or dat.*

Lincoln. *Use the English form un-  
changed in Latin.*

little, parvus, *a, um*.

long, longus, *a, um*; diu, *adv.*

long time, for a, diu, *adv.*

longer, diutius, *comparative adv.*

Lord, Dominus, *i* (*in Christian Latin*  
*used of God or Christ*).

love, diligō, diligere, dilexi, dilectus,  
3, *tr.*

MacArthur. *Use the English form un-  
changed in Latin.*

make, fadd, facere, feci, factus, 3, *tr.*

make a plan, consilium capid, capere,  
cepi, captus, 3, *tr.*

man, homō, hominis; vir, viri; band  
of men, manus, uſ, *i*.

manage, administrō, *I, tr.*

manner, ratio, rationis.

many, plural of multus, *a, um*; how  
many, quot, *indecl. adj.*

march, iter, itineris, *n*; to march, iter  
facere.

Mary, Maria, *ae*.

master, dominus, *I*.

meanwhile, interim, *adv.*

memory, memoria, *ae*; to keep in  
memory, memoria teneſe.

mercy on us, have, miserere nobis,

message, nuntius, *i*.

messenger, nuntius, *I*.

mile (literally, a thousand paces),  
mille passus; miles, milia passuum.

military tribune, tribunus (-i) mili-  
tum.

mind, animus, *I*; mens, mentis.

mine, meus, *a, um*.

mistake, peccatum, *i*.

more (*adj.*), pl tirēs, *a*; (*noun*), plūs,  
plūris, *n*; *w. gen.*

most, plurimus, *a, um*.

mother, miter, mitris (m&trum).  
 mountain, mōns, montis, m.  
 move, moved, movire, mdvl, mdtus,  
 2, tr.

much, multus, a, um.  
 my, meus, a, um.

name, ndmen, ndminis; named (by  
 name), nomine.

Napoleon. Use the English word un-  
 changed in Latin.

narrow, angustus, a, um.

nation, populus, I.

nature, nitufa, ae.

near, propinquus, a, um.

near to, draw, appropinquod, I, intr.;  
 w. ad or dat.

nearer, propior, ius.

nearest, proximus, a, um; w. dat.

necessary, it is, oportet, oportdre,  
 oportuit, 2, intr.; acc. w. in fin.

neighboring, finitimus, a, um; w. dat.

neither (of two), neuter, neutra, neu-  
 trum (GR., No. 88).

neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque,  
 confs.

never, numquam, adv.

nevertheless, tamen, adv.

new, novus, a, um.

next, finitimus, a, um; w. dat.; proxi-  
 mus, a, um; w. dat.

night, nox, noctis.

nine, novem.

no, nfillus, a, um (GR., No. 84).

no one, ndmd, ndminis, m.

noble, ndbOis, e.

none, nfillus, a, um (GR., No. 84).

nor, neque, con).

not, ndn, adv.

nothing, nihil, indecl. noun.

now, nunc, adv.; (at that time), jam,  
 adv.

number, numerus, I.

obtained, having, nactus, a, um.

occupy, obtined, obtindre, obtinul, ob-  
 tentus, 2, tr.

often, saepe, adv.

on, in, prep. w. abl.; in, prep. w. acc.

on account of, propter, &ref. w. acc.

on all sides, undique, adv.

on behalf of, prd, prep. w. abl.

once, at, statim, adv.

one, Onus, a, um; (of two), alter,  
 altera, alteram (GR., NO. 87).

one hundred, centum.

only, solus, a, um (GR., NO. 84).

onto, in, prep. w. acc.

opinion, sententia, ae.

opposite, contra, prep. w. acc.

or, aut, conf.

order, jubed, jubdre, jussl, jussus, 2,  
 tr.; acc. w. in fin.

other, alius, alia, aliud (GR., NO. 85);  
 (of two), alter, altera, alteram (GR.,  
 NO. 87).

ought. See oportet.

our (ours), noster, nostra, nostrum,

out of, ex (e), prep. w. abl.

outer, exterior, ius.

outermost, extrēmus, a, um.

overcome, supero, I, tr.

pace, passus, ūs.

pacify, piled, I, tr.

pain, dolor, doldris.

part, pars, partis.

Paul, Paulus, I.

peace, pix, pdds.

people, populus, I.

perceive, sentio, sentire, sdnsl, sdnsus,  
 4, tr.; acc. w. infin.

pertain to, pertined, pertindre, perti-  
 nul, 2, intr.; ad w. acc.

Peter, Petrus, I.

Pilate, Pilaŭs, I.

pitch, pdnd, pdnere, posul, positus, 3,  
 tr. (w. castra).

place, locus, I (pl., loca, loedram);  
 from what place, unde.

place, collocd, I, tr.; ednstitud, cōn-  
 stituere, cdnstitul, ednstitflus, 3, tr.;  
 w. infin.; pdnd, pdnere, posul, posi-  
 tus, 3, tr.



plan, cŇnsilium, I; to make a plan, cŇnsilium capere.

point out, dēmSnstrS, I, tr.; acc. w. *infin.*

position, take a, cŇnsists, cŇnsistere, cŇnstiti, J, *intr.*

power, imperium, I.

praise, laudS, I, tr.

pray, SrS, I, tr.

prayer, SrātīS, SrātīSnis.

prepare, comparS, I, tr.; parS, I, tr.; w. *infin.*

prepared (for), parātus, a, um; w. *ad or infin.*

presence of, in the, apud, *prep.* w. *acc.*

preserve, cŇnservo, I, tr.

press, premŃ, premere, pressl, pressus, 3, tr.

press hard, premŃ, premere, pressl, pressus, J, tr.

prevent, prohibeS, 2, tr.; *abl. of separ.*

promise, polliceor, poDicSrl, pollicitus sum, 2, tr.; acc. w. *future infinitive.*

proper, it is, oportet, oportSre, oportuit, 2, *intr.*; acc. w. *in fin.*

protection, praesidium, I.

prove, probd, I, tr.

province, prSvinda, ae.

put, pdnS, pSnere, posul, positus, 3, tr.

put to flight, in fugam dŃ, dare, dedi, datus, I, tr.

race, genus, generis, n.

raise (up), tolls, tollere, sustull, sublitus, 3, tr.

rampart, vallum, I.

rank (of soldiers), ŃrdŃ, Ńrdinis, m.

ravage, vastS, I, tr.

ready, parātus, a, um; w. *ad or infin.*; get ready, parS, I, tr.; w. *infin.*

rear, from the, & tergS.

rear, in the, a tergS.

reason, ratiS, ratiSnis.

receive, acdpīS, accipere, acripT, acceptus, 3, tr.; redpīS, redpere, recSpT, receptus, 3, tr.

reconnoiter, explSrS, I, tr.

recover, redpīS, redpere, recipi, receptus, 3, tr.

region, regiS, regiSnis.

reinforcements, auxilia, auxiliSrum.

reliability, fidSs, fidel.

remain, maneS, manSre, minsl, m&n-sQrus, 2, *intr.*

remaining, reliquus, a, um.

remember, memorik teneS, tenēre, tenui, tentus, 2, tr.

renowned, nobflis, e.

report, nuntiS, I, tr.; acc. w. *infin.*

republic, ris pŃblica, rei publicae.

repulse, pellS, pellere, pepull, pulsus, 3, tr.

request, petS, petere, petlvi, petitus, 3, tr.

rest of, the, reliquus, a, um.

restrain, contineŃ, continēre, continul, contentus, 2, tr.

return, redeS, redfire, redil, reditum, irreg., *intr.*

reward, praemium, I.

rise, orior, orfl, ortus sum, 4, *intr.*

river, flūmen, flūminis.

road, via, ae.

Roman fodJJ, RSmānus, a, um; (*noun*), RSm&nus, I.

Rome, RŃma, ae.

rout, pellS, peflere, pepuIT, pulsus, 3, tr.

route, iter, itineris, n.

royal power, rignum, I.

rule, regS, regere, rixT, rictus, 3, tr.

safe, tūtus, a, um; *abl. of separ.*

safety, saluŃ, saluffis.

said, he (she, it), inquit.

sail, nāvīgS, I, *intr.*

sailor, nauta, ae.

saint, sañctus, I; sañcta, ae.

sake of, for the, causa w. *gen.*

salvation, saluŃ, saluffis.

save (from), erīpīS, erīpere, SripuT, ēreptus, 3, tr.

say, dico, dlcere, dlxl, dictus, 3, tr.;

- acc. w. in fin.*; inquit (*w. direct quotations*).
- say . . . not, negō, *1, tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- says, he (she, it), inquit.
- scarcity, inopia, ae.
- Scipio, Scipio, Scipionis.
- sea, mare, maris (declined like gravis, grave).
- second, alter, altera, alterum; secundus, a, um (Gr., Nos. 87, 826).
- secretly, clam, *adv.*
- see, cerno, cernere, *3, tr.*; conspicio, conspiciere, conspexi, conspectus, *3, tr.*; video, viderē, vidi, visus, *2, tr.*
- seek, peto, petere, petivi, petitus, *3, tr.*; quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitus, *3, tr.*
- seize, occupo, *1, tr.*
- senate, senatus, uſ.
- send, mitto, mittere, misi, missus, *3, tr.*
- send away, dimitto, dimittere, dimisi, dimissus, *3, tr.*
- serious, gravis, e.
- servant, servus, i.
- set, pono, ponere, posui, positus, *3, tr.*
- set fire to, incendo, incendere, incendi, incensus, *3, tr.*
- set out, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, *3, intr.*; *ad w. acc.*
- set up, constitudo, constituere, constitui, constitutus, *3, tr.*; *w. in fin.*
- seven, septem.
- severe, gravis, e.
- she, *fem. of* is, ea, id *or of* ille, ilia, illud.
- ship, navis, navis.
- short, brevis, e.
- should. See oportet.
- shout, clamor, clamoris.
- shouting, clamor, clamoris.
- show, demonstro, *1, tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; ostendo, ostendere, ostendi, ostentus, *3, tr.*
- Sicily, Sicilia, ae.
- sides, from all, undique, *adv.*
- sides, on all, undique, *adv.*
- sight of, catch, conspicio, conspiciere, conspexi, conspectus, *3, tr.*
- sign, signum, i.
- signal, signum, i.
- similar, similis, e; *w. gen. or dat.*
- sin, peccatum, i.
- six, sex.
- size, magnitudo, magnitudinis.
- sky, caelum, i.
- slaughter, caedes, caedis.
- slave, servus, i.
- small, parvus, a, um.
- smaller, minor, minus.
- smallest, minimus, a, um.
- so, ita, *adv.*; and so, itaque, *conj.*
- soldier, miles, militis.
- son, filius, i.
- sorrow, dolor, doloris.
- soul, animus, i.
- spare, cōnservo, *1, tr.*
- speak, loquor, loqui, locutus sum, *3, tr.*
- speech, oratio, orationis.
- spirit, spiritus, uſ.
- standard, signum, i.
- state, civitas, civitatis; res publicae, rei publicae.
- station, colloco, *1, tr.*
- storm, expugno, *1, tr.*; oppugno, *1, tr.*
- storm, take by, expugno, *1, tr.*
- strengthen, confirmo, *1, tr.*
- stretch to, pertineo, pertinere, pertinui, *2, intr.*; *ad w. acc.*
- strive, contendo, contendere, contend!, *3, intr.*; *w. infin.*
- strong, fortis, e.
- strong, am, valeo, valere, valui, valitrus, *2, intr.*
- strongly, fortiter, *adv.*
- suddenly, subito, *adv.*
- suffer, patior, pati, passus sum, *3, tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- sufficiently, satis, *adv.*
- supply, copia, ae.
- sure, certus, a, um.
- surpass, supero, *1, tr.*

surrender, *dēdō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditus, 3, tr.*

sustain, *sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus, 2, tr.*

swiftly, *celeriter, adv.*

sword, *gladius, l.*

take, *capid, capere, cepi, captus, 3, tr.*

take a position, *cdnsisto, cōnsistere, cōnstiti, 3, intr.*

take away, *ēripio, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus, 3, tr.; tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus, 3, tr.*

take by storm, *expugno, 1, tr.*

talk, *loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, 3, tr.*

teach, *doceo, docere, docui, doctus, 2, tr.; two accs.; acc. w. infin.*

tell, died, *dicere, dixi, dictus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*

ten, *decern.*

terrify, *terreō, 2, tr.*

territory, *finēs, finium, m.*

than, *quam, adv., or GR. 777.*

thank, *grātiās ago, āgere, egi, āctus, 3, tr. (person thanked in dat.).*

thanks, *grātia, grātiarum; to give thanks, grātiās āgere.*

that (*con;*), *ut; quō (before comparatives in purpose clauses, GR., NO. 546).*

that (*demon, pronoun*), *is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; (relative pronoun), qui, quae, quod.*

that not, *ne, con; (in negative purpose clauses, GR., NO. 546).*

their (own), *suus, a, um.*

themselves, *suf.*

then, *turn, adv.*

there, *ibi, adv.*

therefore, *itaque, con;.*

thing, *rēs, rei.*

think, *aestimō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin.; arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin.; existimō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin.; putō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin.; sentio, sentire, sensi, sensus, 4, tr.; acc. w. in fin.*

third, *tertius, a, um.*

this, *hie, haec, hoc.*

thousand, *mille, indecl. adj.*

thousands, *milia, milium, neuter noun.*

three, *trēs, tria.*

through, *per, prep. w. acc.*

throw, *conicio, cōnjicere, conjeci, conjectus, 3, tr.*

throw into flight, *in fugam conicio, cōnjicere, cōnjēci, conjectus, 3, tr.*

thus, *ita, adv.*

Tiber, *Tiberis, is, m.*

time, *tempus, temporis, n.; for a long time, diū, adv.*

to, *ad, prep. w. acc.*

to what place, *quo, interrogative adv.*

together, come, *convenio, cōnvenire, convēni, conventum, 4, intr.*

toil, labor, *labōris.*

towards, *adversus, a, um; w. dat.;*

*in, prep. w. acc.*

town, *oppidum, l.*

treat, *agō, āgere, egi, āctus, 3, tr.*

tribe, *gens, gentis.*

tribune, *tribūnus, l; military tribune, tribūnus (-i) militum.*

troops, *cōpia, cōpiarum, l.*

true, *vērus, a, um.*

truth, *veritas, veritatīs; in truth, vērō, adv., postp.*

try, *Cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, 1, tr.; w. infin.*

two, *duo, ae, o.*

unable, *am, non possum, posse, potui, irreg., intr.; w. in fin.*

unfavorable, *adversus, a, um; w. dat. > aliēnus, a, um.*

uninjured, *integer, integra, integrum,*

*until, ad, prep. w. acc.*

upon, *in, prep. w. acc.*

urge, *hortor, hortari, hortatus sum, 1, tr.*

useful (for), *utilis, e; w. ad.*

Vandals, *Vandalii, Vandaliorum.*

very, *plūrimum, adv.*

- very great, *summus*, a, um; *maximus*, a, um.  
 very many, *plurimi*, ae, a.  
 very much, *plurimum*, *adv.*  
 victory, *victoria*, ae.  
 violently, *vehementer*, *adv.*  
 virtue, *virtus*, *virtutis*.  
 visit, *adeo*, *adire*, *adii*, *aditus*, *irreg.*, *tr.*  
 voice, *vox*, *voċis*.  
 vote, *sententia*, ae.
- wage, *gero*, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestus*, 3, *tr.* (*w. bellum*).  
 wait, *expecto*, I, *tr.*  
 wait for, *expecto*, I, *tr.*  
 wall, *muŕus*, I; *vallum*, i.  
 want, *inopia*, ae.  
 war, *bellum*, i.  
 ward off (from), *prohibeo*, 2, *tr.*; *abl. of separ.*  
 warn, *moneo*, 2, *tr.*  
 Washington, *Washingtonius*, I.  
 waste, lay, *vasto*, I, *tr.*  
 watch, *vigilia*, ae.  
 water, *aqua*, ae.  
 way, *via*, ae; all the way, *usque*, *adv.*; give way, *cēdo*, *cēdere*, *cessi*, *cessurus*, 3, *intr.*  
 we, *noŕ*, *noŕtri*.  
 wear out, *cōficiō*, *cōficere*, *cōnfēci*, *cōnfectus*, 3, *tr.*  
 welfare, *salus*, *salutis*.  
 well, am, *valet*, *valēre*, *valui*, *valitūrus*, 2, *intr.*  
 what (*interrogative adj.*), *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; (*interrogative pronoun*), *quis*, *quid*.  
 when, *cum*, *conj.*  
 whence, *unde*, *interrogative adv.*  
 where, *ubi*, *adv.*  
 where . . . from, *unde*, *interrogative adv.*  
 where ... to, *quo*, *interrogative adv.*
- which (*interrogative adj.*), *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; (*relative pronoun*), *qui*, *quae*, *quod*.  
 which (*of two*), *uter*, *utra*, *utrum* (GR., NO. 88).  
 whither, *quo*, *interrogative adv.*  
 who (*interrogative pronoun*), *quis*, *quid*; (*relative pronoun*), *qui*, *quae*, *quod*.  
 whole, *integer*, *integra*, *integrum*; *tōtus*, a, um (GR., NO. 84).  
 whole of, *tōtus*, a, um (GR., NO. 84).  
 why, *cūr*, *interrogative adv.*  
 wide, *lātus*, a, um.  
 will, *voluntas*, *voluntatis*.  
 wind, *ventus*, i.  
 winter quarters, *hiberna*, *hibernorum*.  
 with, *cum*, *prep. w. abl.*  
 withdraw, *discedo*, *discedere*, *discessi*, *discessurus*, 3, *intr.*; *me* (*te*, *se*) *rēcipiō*, *recipere*, *recēpi*, *receptus*, 3, *tr.*  
 without, *sine*, *prep. w. abl.*  
 withstand, *sustineo*, *sustinere*, *sustinui*, *sustentus*, 2, *tr.*  
 world, *mundus*, i; world without end, *in saecula saeculorum*.  
 worse, *pejor*, *pejus*.  
 worst, *pessimus*, a, um.  
 would that, *utinam* (used with the subjunctive in wishes),  
 wound, *vulnus*, *vulneris*, *n.*  
 wretched, *miser*, *miseria*, *miserum*.  
 write, *scribo*, *scribere*, *scripsi*, *scriptus*, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. in fin.*  
 wrong, *injūria*, ae.
- year, *annus*, I.  
 yield, *cēdo*, *cēdere*, *cessi*, *cessurus*, 3, *intr.*  
 you (*sing.*), *tu*, *tui*; (*pl.*), *vos*, *vēstri*.  
 your (yours), *tuus*, a, um (when referring to one person); *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum* (when referring to more than one person).

# INDEX<sup>1</sup>

## Ablative

- case, 24, 58, 77, 85, 115, 156, 168, 185, 194, 314, 345
- of accompaniment, 203
- of agent, 185, 199
- of cause, 319
- of comparison, 439
- of means, 194, 199
- of separation, 345
- of time, 386, 401
- with adjectives, 85
- with verbs, 156

## Accompaniment, ablative of, 203

## Accusative

- case, 13, 24, 57, 242, 253, 275, 363, 393, 414
- double, 275
- of extent of time and space, 393
- subject of infinitive, 363
- with infinitive, 414, 420

## Active voice, 179

## Adjectives

- agreement of, 73
- cases governed by, 85
- comparison of, 434, 440
- demonstrative, 331, 341
- interrogative, 274
- irregular, 374
- of first and second declensions, 72, 168
- of third declension, 82
- position of, 74
- possessive, 173, 305
- predicate, 75-76, 364, 417
- reflexive, 305, 306
- used as nouns, 241

## Adverbs

- comparative, 263
- interrogative, 115, 267
- position of, 15

## Agent, ablative of, 185, 199

## Agreement

- of adjectives, 73, 173, 305
- of nouns, 27, 39, 407, 417
- of perfect participle passive, 208
- of pronouns, 247
- of verbs, 10, 105

## Antecedent, 247

## Appositives, 38-39

## Causal clause, 31

## Cause, expressions of, 319

## Clauses

- adjective, 246
- adverbial, 227
- causal, 31
- main, 31, 226, 246, 414
- noun, 281, 414
- purpose, 226, 230, 237, 258, 263, 356
- relative, 246
- subordinate, 31, 226, 246, 309, 414
- temporal, 318

## Commands, 296

## Comparative degree, 263, 434, 440

## Comparison, ablative of, 439

## Conjugation, 101. *See also* Verbs

## Dative case, 22, 85, 407

## Declension. *See* Adjectives, Nouns

## Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, 331, 341

## Deponent verbs, 445, 450, 453

## Diagrams, 11, 14, 23, 27, 40, 227, 246, 275, 281, 353, 363, 364, 414

## Direct object, 13

## Direct questions, 114-15, 117, 267-74

## Direct quotations, 287

## Direct reflexives, 135, 305, 306

## Double accusative, 275

## *ed*, conjugation of, 457

## Exhortations, 300

<sup>1</sup> Short selections, stories, and prayers are listed only under *Readings* and *Prayers* in this index.

- Gender**  
 of adjectives, 72, 73  
 of nouns, 9, 17, 20, 35  
 of pronouns, 247
- Genitive case**, 16, 85
- Hortatory subjunctive**, 300
- Idiom study**, 242, 255, 275, 309, 382
- Imperative mood**, 296
- Impersonal verbs**, 255, 420
- Indicative mood**, 101, 225
- Indirect discourse**. *See* Accusative with infinitive
- Indirect object**, 22, 198
- Indirect questions**, 281-82, 309
- Indirect reflexives**, 309
- Infinitive**, 352-54, 355, 412, 428, 453  
 accusative with, 414, 420  
 future, 412, 453  
 perfect, 412, 428  
 present, 352  
 subject of, 363  
 used as nouns, 353, 363  
 with verbs, 355, 360, 414
- Interrogative**  
 adjective, 274  
 adverbs, 115, 267  
 particles, 117, 269  
 pronoun, 115, 271
- Mass, moments at**, 174, 297, 339, 346, 369, 373, 377
- Mastery review vocabularies**, 91, 217, 473
- Means, ablative of**, 194, 199
- Mood**  
 imperative, 296  
 indicative, 101, 225  
 subjunctive, 225, 237, 282, 286, 300, 317, 389
- Nominative case**, 10, 27, 407
- Nouns**  
 adjectives used as, 241  
 fifth declension, 62  
 first declension, 6-9  
 fourth declension, 56  
 infinitives used as, 353, 363  
 second declension, 17-20  
 third declension, 35-36
- Number**  
 of nouns, 4  
 of verbs, 100
- Numerals**, 370
- Object**  
 direct, 13  
 indirect, 22, 198
- Order of words**, 14, 15, 28, 59, 74, 117, 287, 294, 296
- Participle**  
 future, 326  
 perfect, 450  
 perfect passive, 208, 317, 325
- Particles, interrogative**, 117, 269
- Passive voice**, 179, 364, 428
- Person**  
 adjectives of first, second, third, 173, 305, 306  
 of verbs, 100  
 pronouns of first, second, third, 125, 128, 132, 135, 305
- Personal pronouns**, 125, 128, 132, 135
- Possessive adjectives**, 173
- Possessive case**, 16
- possum*, conjugation of, 351
- Prayers**  
 Anima Christi, 365  
 Doxology, 118  
 Hail Mary, 311  
 Our Father, 388  
 Sign of the Cross, 90
- Predicate accusative**, 275
- Predicate adjectives**, 75-76, 364, 417
- Predicate nominative**, 407
- Predicate noun**, 27, 417
- Prepositions**, 24, 57, 77, 185, 242, 253, 336  
 omission of, 115, 156, 168, 348, 37\*
- Primary sequence**, 282
- Primary tenses**, 228
- Principal parts**, 101
- Pronouns**  
 demonstrative, 331 332, 341

- interrogative, 115, 271
- personal, 125, 128, 132, 135
- reflexive, 135, 305, 306, 309
- relative, 246-47
- Punic War, 176, 188, 195, 200, 204
- Purpose clauses, 226, 230, 237, 258, 263
- Questions
  - direct, 114-15, 117, 267-74
  - indirect, 281-82, 309
- Quotations
  - direct, 287
  - indirect, 414, 420
- Readings
  - A Christian Sermon, 299
  - A Dream of Judgment, 157
  - A Gallic Captive, 277
  - A Lieutenant Addresses His Men, 308
  - A Roman "Spotter," 142
  - Assignment for the Intelligence Department, 404
  - Bataan, 290
  - Christian and Roman Virtues, 138
  - Columbus, 409
  - D-Day, 408
  - Eternal Rome, 171
  - Examination of Christians, 129
  - Hannibal Annihilates a Roman Army, 195
  - Hannibal in Italy, 188
  - Holy Kings, 358
  - Hostages, 244
  - Italy and Gaul, 167
  - Jesus Christ, 69
  - King David, 322
  - Letter from Marcus to His Mother, 126
  - Nathan Hale, 443
  - Peace and War, 378
  - Pictures from the Past, 213
  - Pilate's Reply, 425
  - Pyrrhus and Fabricius, 430
  - Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, 419
  - Report from the Front, 265
  - Roman Army on the March, 89
  - Roman Empire, 31
  - Scipio Invades Africa, 200
  - Second Punic War, 176
  - Slaughter of the Christians, 60
  - St. Peter Claver, 397
  - Tarpeia's Reward, 452
  - The Battle of Zama, 204
  - The Condemnation of Christ, 466
  - The Death of Brave Brothers, 239
  - The First Christians, 302
  - The Holy Trinity, 377
  - The Patriotism of Mucius Scaevola, 261
  - The Roman Camp, 66
  - The Senate, 150
  - The Theban Legion, 367
  - The War with Pyrrhus, 427
  - Through Our Lord Jesus Christ, 252
  - War Information, 285
  - "Woe to the Conquered!" 66
  - Woe to the Weak, 233
- Reflexive pronouns, 135, 305, 306, 309
- Relation, tense by, 414, 421
- Relative clauses, 246, 258
- Relative pronouns, 246-47
- Review vocabularies, 91, 217, 473
- Secondary sequence, 286
- Secondary tenses, 237
- Separation, ablative of, 345
- Subject, 10, 363
- Subjunctive mood, 225-27, 237, 282, 286, 300, 317, 389
- sum*, conjugation of, 28, 151
- Superlative degree, 434, 440
- Temporal clauses, 318
- Tense (Tenses), 100, 102, 155, 208
  - future, 112, 145
  - future perfect, 160, 208
  - imperfect, 108, 235
  - perfect, 155, 208
  - pluperfect, 160, 208
  - present, 102, 181, 225
  - primary, 228, 282
  - secondary, 237, 286
- Time, expressions of, 386, 393, 401
- Translation, notes on, 48, 232, 266, 378

**Verbs**

agreement of, 10, 105  
dative, 407  
defective, 326  
deponent, 445, 450, 453  
eō, 457  
first conjugation, 101-03, 108, 112,  
181  
followed by -ne, 117  
fourth conjugation, 147, 202  
impersonal, 255, 420  
infinitives with, 355, 360, 414, 420  
intransitive, 147, 326, 413  
position of, 14, 28, 117

*possum*, 351

second conjugation, 120-21, 192

*sum*, 28, 151, 208

third conjugation, 140, 143, 145, 197,  
381

transitive, 104

**Vocabulary**

English-Latin, 499

Latin-English, 489

review, 91, 217, 473

Vocative case, 293

Voice, 179

Wishes, 300





*The HENLE LAHN SERIES from Loyola Press*

Humanistic insight and linguistic training are the goals of this integrated four-year Latin course. Time-tested and teacher endorsed, this comprehensive program is designed to lead the student systematically through the fundamentals of the language itself and on to an appreciation of selected classic texts.

**LATIN GRAMMAR**

Designed for student use through all four years of Latin study.  
*Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-0112-1*

**FIRST YEAR LATIN**

*Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-1026-0*

**SECOND YEAR LATIN**

*Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-1027-9*

**THIRD YEAR LATIN**

*Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-1028-7*

**FOURTH YEAR LATIN**

*Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-1029-5*

ISBN-13: 978-0-8294-1026-6

ISBN-10: 0-8294-1026-0

**LOYOLA PRESS.**

3441 N. ASHLAND AVENUE  
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60657  
(800) 621-1008

